

**HISTORY OF REVOLUTIONARY
ACTIVITIES OF
CHAIRMAN KIM JONG IL**

**PYONGYANG, KOREA
JUCHE 104 (2015)**

**HISTORY OF REVOLUTIONARY
ACTIVITIES OF
CHAIRMAN KIM JONG IL**

**Foreign Languages Publishing House
Pyongyang, Korea
Juche 104 (2015)**



PREFACE

Kim Jong Il, who led the cause of the Juche revolution pioneered by Kim Il Sung along the road resplendent with victory, is the eternal General Secretary of the Workers' Party of Korea and the eternal Chairman of the National Defence Commission of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea.

Already in the 1960s he started administering unique Songun-based revolutionary leadership, Songun politics, and in the mid-1970s he began to lead the overall affairs of the Workers' Party of Korea, the Korean People's Army and the state, thus bringing about a radical turn in all the sectors of the revolution and construction and ushering in a heyday of the era of the WPK under the banner of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

After the death of Kim Il Sung in the mid-1990s, he formulated the mode of Songun politics in a comprehensive way. By so doing, he frustrated the ever-more undisguised schemes of the US-led allied imperialist forces to isolate and stifle the DPRK, defended his socialist country reliably and opened a new era of building a thriving socialist country.

Cherishing an ennobling sense of obligation to the destiny of his country and fellow people and the future of the Korean revolution, he provided a brilliant solution to the problem of inheriting leadership, the core in accomplishing the revolutionary cause.

With unshakeable commitment to implementing Kim Il Sung's instructions for national reunification, he led his fellow compatriots along the road of independence and great national unity and opened the June 15 era of reunification for achieving the ideal of By Our Nation Itself. Holding aloft the banner of anti-imperialist independence, he performed imperishable exploits for the accomplishment of the cause of the independence of humankind.

Having treasured and loved people most and shared weal and woe with them throughout his life, he was on super-intense forced march of on-site guidance for building the DPRK into a thriving country and improving its people's standard of living until the last moment of his life.

The history of his revolutionary activities is the history of activities of a

great revolutionary, who regarded it as his lifetime duty to carry forward the cause of the Juche revolution pioneered by Kim Il Sung and devoted his whole life to discharging it.

In reflection of the unanimous will and wish of the progressive peoples of the whole world to study and learn from the history of Kim Jong Il's revolutionary activities and the demands of the times and developing revolution, the Editorial Board publishes the English version of the supplemented edition of the *History of Revolutionary Activities of Chairman Kim Jong Il* which was published in January 2013.

Editorial Board

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1

BIRTH OF KIM JONG IL AND LEADING SCHOOLCHILDREN TO TRAIN THEMSELVES AS TRUE SONS AND DAUGHTERS OF GENERAL KIM IL SUNG

(February 1942-August 1960).....1

1. Birth of Kim Jong Il at the Paektusan Secret Camp
and His Growth as a Great Revolutionary1
2. Forming the Group for the Study of *Short Biography*
of *General Kim Il Sung* and Learning from
and Defending General Kim Il Sung.....6
3. Training Students to Be Builders of Socialism12

CHAPTER 2

STARTING SONGUN-BASED REVOLUTIONARY LEADERSHIP AND CARRYING THE REVOLUTIONARY CAUSE OF JUCHE TO COMPLETION

(August 1960-March 1964)17

1. Start of Songun-Based Revolutionary Leadership and
Declaration of Lofty Determination to Carry
the Revolutionary Cause of Juche to Completion.....17
2. Through Energetic Ideological and Theoretical Activities20
3. Assisting Kim Il Sung in His Guidance of the Revolution and Construction.....27
4. Training Students as Reliable Successors
to the Revolutionary Cause of Juche33

CHAPTER 3

ESTABLISHING THE WPK'S MONOLITHIC IDEOLOGICAL SYSTEM AND COMMENCING SONGUN POLITICS

(April 1964-February 1974).....40

1. Starting to Work at the Central Committee of the WPK and Reviewing the Preceding Revolutionary Ideology of the Working Class.....	40
2. Establishing the WPK's Monolithic Ideological System.....	44
3. Implementing the Self-Defensive Military Line of the WPK and Commencing Songun Politics.....	46
4. For a Revolutionary Turn in Art and Literature and Publication of <i>On the Art of the Cinema</i>	52
5. Bringing About a Fresh Revolutionary Upsurge in Socialist Construction and Carrying Out the Three Major Tasks of the Technological Revolution.....	57
6. Celebrating the 60 th Anniversary of the Birth of Kim Il Sung as the Greatest National Holiday.....	65
7. Improving Party Work.....	68
8. Implementing the Three Principles and Five-Point Policy of National Reunification.....	72
9. Bringing About a Fresh Turn in External Activities.....	76

CHAPTER 4

ORGANIZING AND LEADING THE WORK OF MODELLING THE WHOLE SOCIETY ON KIMILSUNGISM

(February 1974-October 1980).....	79
1. Acclaimed as Successor to President Kim Il Sung and Proclaiming the Programme of Modelling the Whole Society on Kimilsungism.....	79
2. Modelling the Entire WPK on Kimilsungism and Laying Firm Foundations of the WPK.....	82
3. Modelling the Entire KPA on Kimilsungism.....	86
4. Rallying the Broad Sections of the Masses Closely behind the WPK.....	90
5. Carrying Forward the Revolutionary Traditions of Juche in an All-Round Way.....	92
6. Developing the Three Revolutions—Ideological, Technological and Cultural—and Initiating the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement.....	97
7. Launching the 70-Day Campaign, Expediting Socialist Economic Construction under the Banner of Self-Reliance, and Advancing a Strategic Policy of Keeping to the Korean Lifestyle.....	102
8. Bringing About a Fresh Upswing in All Domains of Building Socialist Culture.....	111

9. Strengthening the Forces for National Reunification and Stepping Up the Movement of Koreans in Japan	119
10. Strengthening Anti-Imperialist Independent Forces.....	124
CHAPTER 5	
STEPPING UP THE MODELLING OF THE WHOLE SOCIETY ON KIMILSUNGISM (October 1980-December 1989).....	
	129
1. Leading the Effort to Celebrate the Sixth Congress of the WPK as a Meeting of Victors and Setting the Task of Stepping Up the Modelling of the Whole Society on Kimilsungism	129
2. Adding Brilliance to Kim Il Sung's Immortal Revolutionary Exploits to Mark His 70 th Birth Anniversary	133
3. Conducting Ideological and Theoretical Activities for Developing Kimilsungism and Publishing <i>On the Juche Idea</i>	137
4. Laying the Foundations of the WPK for Carrying Forward the Revolutionary Cause of Juche and Further Strengthening the WPK into a Juche-Type Revolutionary Party.....	143
5. Strengthening the KPA and Establishing the WPK's Command System in the KPA	149
6. Leading the Effort to Consolidate the People's Government and Further Improve the Working People's Organizations and the Work with the Masses.....	154
7. Bringing About a Fresh Upsurge in Socialist Economic Construction at the Speed of the 1980s and Improving the People's Living Standards	160
8. Further Consolidating the Successes Gained in Building Socialist Culture	170
9. Implementing the Plan for Founding the DFRK and Bringing About a Fresh Turn in the Movement of Koreans in Japan	177
10. Promoting the Cause of Global Independence	184
CHAPTER 6	
ORGANIZING AND LEADING THE STRUGGLE TO DEFEND PEOPLE-CENTRED SOCIALISM OF THE KOREAN STYLE (January 1990-July 1994).....	
	190

1. Ideological and Theoretical Activities to Defend and Advance the Socialist Cause	190
2. To Celebrate the 80 th Birth Anniversary of Kim Il Sung as a Grand Political Festival of the Korean Nation and the Humanity of the World	196
3. Enhancing the WPK's Leadership Role and Consolidating the Single-Hearted Unity of the Whole Society	200
4. Strengthening the KPA, Establishing a Social Climate of Attaching Importance to Military Affairs and Inheriting the Cause of Building Revolutionary Armed Forces	206
5. Speeding Up Socialist Economic and Cultural Construction	211
6. Frustrating the US Racket for Nuclear Inspection and Defending the Country's Sovereignty and the Korean Style of Socialism.....	219
7. Developing the National Reunification Movement into a Nationwide Campaign	224
8. Reconstructing the Socialist Movement under the Banner of the Pyongyang Declaration	229

CHAPTER 7

REALIZING THE CAUSE OF IMMORTALIZING THE LEADER, ALL-OUT ADMINISTRATION OF SONGUN POLITICS ON A HIGHER LEVEL, AND LEADING THE ARDUOUS MARCH AND FORCED MARCH TO VICTORY

(July 1994-December 1998).....	233
1. Realizing the Cause of Immortalizing the Leader	233
2. Establishing the Mode of Songun Politics and Elected to the Top Position of the WPK and the State	238
3. Strengthening the KPA and Launching the Movement for Winning the Title of O Jung Hup-Led 7 th Regiment.....	242
4. Fortifying the Political and Ideological Position of Korean-Style Socialism	246
5. Frustrating the Imperialists' Schemes to Isolate and Suffocate the DPRK.....	252
6. Providing a Springboard for the Building of a Thriving Nation by Placing the KPA at the Forefront.....	257
7. Bringing About a Radical Turn in the Construction of Socialist Culture.....	262

-
8. To Achieve National Reunification under the Banner of the Three Charters for the Country's Reunification and Develop the Overseas Compatriots' Movement onto a New, Higher Level.....268
 9. Publication of the Work *Socialism Is a Science* and for Successful Advance of the Socialist Cause and the Cause of Anti-Imperialist Independence.....274

CHAPTER 8

LEADING THE EFFORT TO BUILD A THRIVING SOCIALIST COUNTRY UNDER THE UNFURLED BANNER OF SONGUN

(January 1999-December 2011)279

1. Advancing the Line of Building a Thriving Socialist Country279
2. Making Public the Work Titled, *Our Party's Songun Politics Is a Powerful Political Mode of Socialism* and Conducting Ideological and Theoretical Activities to Develop the Songun Idea in Depth282
3. Greeting the 90th Anniversary of the Birth of Kim Il Sung286
4. Consolidating the Politico-Ideological Position of the Revolution291
5. Consolidating the National Defence Capabilities299
6. Advancing the Line of Economic Construction in the Songun Era and Laying Foundations for Building an Economic Giant.....303
7. Drastically Improving the People's Standard of Living to Mark the 100th Anniversary of the Birth of Kim Il Sung311
8. Sprucing Up the Appearance of the Country318
9. Ushering in a Heyday of Songun Culture.....323
10. Third Conference of the WPK and Brilliant Solution of the Problem of Inheritance of the Cause of the Songun Revolution331
11. For Achieving the Country's Reunification on the Principle of By Our Nation Itself336
12. Developing the Movement of the Overseas Korean Compatriots343
13. Raising the DPRK's International Profile.....347

THE GREAT LEADER COMRADE KIM JONG IL

WILL ALWAYS BE WITH US352

CHAPTER 1. BIRTH OF KIM JONG IL AND LEADING SCHOOLCHILDREN TO TRAIN THEMSELVES AS TRUE SONS AND DAUGHTERS OF GENERAL KIM IL SUNG

(February 1942-August 1960)

1. BIRTH OF KIM JONG IL AT THE PAKTUSAN SECRET CAMP AND HIS GROWTH AS A GREAT REVOLUTIONARY

Kim Jong Il was born in the Paektusan secret camp (in Samjiyon County, Ryanggang Province) on February 16, 1942.

From the latter half of the 1930s to the first half of the 1940s the Paektusan secret camp was the strategic base and central leadership base of the Korean revolution, where its headquarters was situated.

The period when he was born was a historic one, when people's anti-fascist liberation struggle was being waged fiercely across the world and when the Korean people had taken the initiative in greeting the great event of the liberation of their country.

The fighters of the anti-Japanese revolution called Kim Jong Il the Shining Star of Paektu, as he was born in the flames of the war against Japan as the son of guerrillas, the son of Mt. Paektu.

In reflection of their great expectation of the bright future of the country, they barked the trees around the secret camp and in other parts of the country and inscribed on them *O Korea and compatriots, we inform you of the birth of the Shining Star of Paektu; The Shining Star of Paektu, heir to General Kim Il Sung, was born on Mt. Paektu; Bright is the future of Korea lit by the Shining Star of Paektu, a great blessing for Korea to be liberated; and Let us, 20 million Koreans, be proud of the Paektu Sun shining on Mt. Paektu.*

Kim Jong Il's family was the most patriotic and revolutionary family.

His father Kim Il Sung was the founding-father of socialist Korea and the

great leader the Korean people acclaimed for the first time in their history spanning thousands of years. A genius of ideology and theory, he created the immortal Juche idea and Songun idea, thus ushering in the era of Juche and raising the masses' status to that of the masters of their destiny and the independent motive force of history. He was the pioneer of the Songun revolution and artist of creation and construction; he accomplished the historic cause of national liberation, safeguarded the sovereignty of the nation and led to victory the Fatherland Liberation War against the armed invasion by the US imperialists by dint of Songun-based revolutionary leadership, and built in Korea a socialist system, whose masters are the masses themselves. As the benevolent father of the Korean people, he devoted his all for the people, regarding the ideal, "The people are my God," as his lifetime motto since he had embarked on the road of the revolution.

Kim Jong Il's mother Kim Jong Suk devoted her whole life to the liberation of her country and the freedom and happiness of the people true to the Songun leadership of General Kim Il Sung. While performing revolutionary tasks and fighting numerous battles in the days of the war against the Japanese imperialists, she displayed outstanding leadership skills, unexcelled bravery and self-sacrificing spirit, thus fully demonstrating the traits becoming an anti-Japanese war heroine. In particular, she rendered an imperishable contribution to the building of a new Korea and its armed forces after its liberation. Having originated the succession of the causes of the Juche revolution and the Songun revolution, she laid until the last moment of her life a firm foundation on which the cause of the Songun revolution could be succeeded.

His great-great-grandfather Kim Ung U performed great feats in sinking the US aggressor ship *General Sherman* and fought bravely in the van of the battle for repulsing the aggression of *Shenandoah*.

His great-grandfather Kim Po Hyon and great-grandmother Ri Po Ik had their children embark on the road of the revolution and, while supporting them in their revolutionary struggle, fought with the Japanese imperialists.

His grandfather Kim Hyong Jik was an outstanding leader of the anti-Japanese national liberation movement in Korea and a frontrunner in the switch of the nationalist movement to a proletarian revolution as well as an indomitable revolutionary fighter, who dedicated his life to the independence of Korea and the freedom and liberation of his fellow people.

His grandmother Kang Pan Sok was an ardent revolutionary and a prominent leader of the women's movement in Korea, who fought devoting her

all for the liberation of Korea and the social emancipation of its women.

His granduncle Kim Hyong Gwon, his uncle Kim Chol Ju, and maternal uncles Kim Ki Jun and Kim Ki Song threw themselves in the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle from their early years and dedicated their lives to the cause of national liberation.

This patriotic and revolutionary family, whose members fought bravely generation after generation for the independence of their country and the freedom and liberation of its people, served as a base for Kim Jong Il to grow up learning the traits as befits a leader of the people and as a great son of the people from his early years.

Kim Jong Il grew up into a great revolutionary in the midst of arduous and severe circumstances of the anti-Japanese war, building of a new country and the Fatherland Liberation War.

He was extraordinary in his natural endowments from his childhood.

He was possessed of the power of keen observation, deep exploration and creative thinking. He observed everything or every phenomenon earnestly and carefully, approached it from a novel point of view and explored it to its bottom to learn its reason. At the age, when other children found it difficult to count one-digit numbers, he approached the quantitative nature of things from a fresh point of view, not from an arithmetical point, and would analyze and judge the social and natural phenomena in close relationship. People would call him a heaven-sent prodigy.

Kim Jong Il cherished high courage and strong will-power. Growing up in the blizzards of Mt. Paektu in his early years, he developed the mettle, spirit and temperament reminiscent of the mountain. When he conceived a thing, he would conceive it in a big and bold way; when he began to do a thing, he would see it through by his own effort; and when he made a determination, he would carry it out.

From his boyhood, he displayed humaneness, magnanimity and simple character. Broad-minded and generous when approaching others, he loved his friends; if it was envied by them, he would give them anything, however precious it may be to him, without hesitation, and when they were experiencing difficulties and mental suffering, he would do his best to help them.

He led a frugal life; he went to kindergarten and primary school in cotton socks, rubber or canvass shoes and simple clothes carrying books in a wrapper like other pupils.

He grew up under the revolutionary education and influence of his parents.

His father Kim Il Sung explained to him the deep meaning of "Aim High,"

a maxim his grandfather had cherished, and told him about the Mangyongdae family, whose members had dedicated their lives to their country and the revolution generation after generation, and about the anti-Japanese revolutionary forerunners and Children's Corp members, inculcating in his young son's mind the revolutionary spirit and class consciousness. He also gave him instructions on nature and society, on the Korean and world revolutions, on the famous persons of various social stages, and on the economic and military affairs, widening the young son's storehouse of knowledge.

Witnessing his father's unremitting activities for the country and people, he learned his outstanding leadership skills, his spirit of devoted service for the people and ennobling virtue.

Accompanying his mother to the Pothong River improvement project site and to the rural areas for rice-transplanting, he developed the feeling of affection for the working people and the spirit of devoted service to them and diligence.

Kim Jong Il's exceptional qualities were further cultivated by such revolutionary education and influence of his parents from his early days, and he equipped himself with the personalities becoming a great revolutionary.

Kim Jong Il developed his traits and personalities while experiencing the reality.

He made the start to life hearing the gunshots of the war against Japan, and he was upright, full of guts and precocious as he grew up among the anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters.

Accompanying his parents who were visiting the Pyongyang Institute, security cadres training schools and the 1st Central Military Academy to build regular armed forces, he learned the value of arms and the qualities and personalities proper to a Songun general.

And accompanying them to several towns and rural communities in the days of building a new Korea, he was greatly inspired by the people's enthusiasm and strenuous efforts to build a new country, their ardent will to follow his father and their unquenchable strength, and made up his mind to devote his all to his country and fellow people.

In the days of the Fatherland Liberation War in particular, he learned the most valuable thing which other people would find it difficult to learn for decades in their life.

In those days he cherished hatred against the US imperialists who were reducing the towns and villages into ashes and confidence in the victorious

future of the country while witnessing the heroic mettle of the fighting people. By planting two pine-nut trees with his younger sister in the Solmae Valley on Mt. Jangja greeting the fifth anniversary of the founding of the WPK (Workers' Party of Korea), he led the schoolchildren to take loving care of every tree and made a determination to turn all the mountains in the country green. His confidence in sure victory became firmer when he accompanied his father on the latter's on-site guidance trip at North Phyongan Province in June 1952, when he saw an air battle fought by the airmen of the KPA (Korean People's Army) and the peasants who turned out to the struggle for increased wartime agricultural production and he was told by his father about the ten WPK members in Ragwon.

From late June to mid-August 1952 he stayed at the Supreme Headquarters. On July 10 his father gave him a pistol; he received it as a baton of the revolution and made a firm determination to engage in the revolution to the end. By the operations table at the Supreme Headquarters, he learned the art of war, commanding skills, revolutionary optimism, and will and tactics for making headway against all odds.

He witnessed the outstanding and seasoned leadership and strong will-power of his father, who was leading the soldiers and people to victory in the war while shouldering all the wartime burdens, and his ennobling traits with which he was looking after their life even in the difficult wartime conditions. He was at the Supreme Headquarters at the time when it was thrown into a critical danger because the anti-WPK, counterrevolutionary elements guided enemy planes to bomb it.

Through these experiences, he keenly realized that the destiny of the country and nation depended entirely on his father and that the victory in the war and the future prosperity were in store for the country as it was led by him and made firmer his determination to defend and support him better.

In reflection of this faith and will, in August 1952 he composed a song, titled, *The Embrace of My Motherland*, in which he wrote that the land that glows under the radiant sun is the father General's embrace, and on June 1, 1953 he wrote a letter to his father, in which he wrote that the latter's safety meant happiness to all families in the country and only when the people supported and defended him well could their destiny and their country's destiny be saved.

This faith and will served as a cornerstone of all his later revolutionary activities.

Kim Jong Il tried hard to perfect the traits of a revolutionary through studying and organizational life.

During the grim days of the war he finished two-year studying course in one year true to his father's instruction that he should study and live in a militant way as befits a son of a fighting country.

Having been enrolled at the fourth grade of Mangyongdae Revolutionary School in November 1952, he avidly read Kim Il Sung's works, the books that introduced the WPK's lines and policies, newspapers and periodicals, and strove to master all the subjects taught at the school and acquire wide-ranging knowledge of nature and society. On January 25, 1953, when he was still attending the school, he advanced the slogan, "**Let's learn for Korea!**" leading his fellow students to study diligently, and enlisted them in the work of supporting the front and in artistic activities.

His parents' education and influence, the two revolutionary wars and tremendous social changes he experienced in his early days served as occasions for him to possess traits becoming a great revolutionary and a brilliant Songun commander.

2. FORMING THE GROUP FOR THE STUDY OF *SHORT BIOGRAPHY OF GENERAL KIM IL SUNG* AND LEARNING FROM AND DEFENDING GENERAL KIM IL SUNG

Kim Jong Il conducted energetic activities among students to learn from and defend Marshal Kim Il Sung.

Raising the studying of *Short Biography of General Kim Il Sung* as a matter of great importance in learning from Kim Il Sung, he formed a group for studying the book among students during the war, and operated the group positively.

Short Biography of General Kim Il Sung was published in April 1952 as a reflection of the unanimous desire of all the Korean people, greeting the 40th anniversary of the birth of Kim Il Sung.

When he was staying at the Supreme Headquarters, Kim Jong Il had already read the book. After being enrolled at Mangyongdae Revolutionary School, he met the instructor of the school's organization of the KCU (Korean Children's Union); presenting the book he had read at the Supreme Headquarters, he proposed forming a group for studying the book.

His proposal met active support and agreement of the teaching staff and students at the school.

In a bid to form the group, he explained the contents of the book to the students and frequently organized seminars on the book. At a meeting of the KCU members exemplary in studying the book and the active members of the KCU sub-branch organizations held on February 6, 1953, he reviewed the result of the studying and stressed the need to form the group at an early date to conduct the studying in an organized way.

On the basis of these preparations, he organized the Group for the Study of *Short Biography of General Kim Il Sung* at a meeting of the members of the KCU sub-branch organizations held on February 10 that year, and clarified the objective of the group and the tasks of its members.

Kim Jong Il said:

“The objective of our forming the Group for the Study of *Short Biography of General Kim Il Sung* today is to intensify the studying of the book so as to prepare all the students to be pillars of the Korean revolution faithful to the fatherly Marshal, in other words, to make them study in depth and learn from his revolutionary activities to train themselves to be true sons and daughters of the Marshal.”

He said that the first and foremost task of the group members was to master the contents of the book by studying it in depth, and that the other task was to explain to the others the book’s contents.

He set **“Let’s Arm Ourselves Firmly with the Revolutionary Ideology of Marshal Kim Il Sung!”** as the slogan of the group, and called on the members to stand, upholding the slogan, in the van of arming themselves with the Marshal’s revolutionary ideology and giving publicity to its contents.

This group was the first organization in Korea for studying Kim Il Sung’s ideas, achievements and virtues.

While running the group in a lively way, Kim Jong Il pushed ahead with the work of expanding its ranks.

He deepened the studying of *Short Biography of General Kim Il Sung* among the members of the group in various forms and by various methods, thus ensuring that they had a deep and profound understanding of the contents of the book. After making these preparations, he led them to give explanation of the contents of the book among the villagers living near their school by means of the photographs showing Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary activities in combination with singing and reciting poems.

As the group conducted its activities on a high level, Kim Jong Il made

preparations for expanding it in the school, and at a meeting of the active members of the DYK (Democratic Youth League of Korea) and KCU organizations held in mid-March 1953 proposed organizing a rally for all the students of the school to become members of the Group for the Study of *Short Biography of General Kim Il Sung* greeting the 41st anniversary of the birth of Kim Il Sung.

Later such a group was formed in every class of the school.

After the war was over, Kim Jong Il led the students to further intensify their efforts for learning from Kim Il Sung.

In the talk, *Let's Learn from the Boyhood of Marshal Kim Il Sung*, he had with the active KCU members at Pyongyang Middle School No. 1 on October 5, 1955, he said that the central task of the school's KCU committee was to push ahead with the work of learning from the boyhood of Marshal Kim Il Sung among its members, adding that the school should lead other schools across the country in learning from the Marshal's boyhood.

He initiated expedition to the revolutionary battle sites in the area of Mt. Paektu.

Education through expedition to the battle sites and other sites associated with Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities was of great significance in learning from him as people could understand his imperishable revolutionary achievements through vivid materials.

Based on his experience of having arranged visits to the Mangyongdae and Chilgol revolutionary sites in April 1955, in late May 1956 he suggested to the senior officials of the school organizing an expedition to Pochonbo and other battle sites in Ryanggang Province which is closely associated with Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities.

In late May 1956 Kim Jong Il broached the subject to Kim Il Sung.

Kim Il Sung supported his young son's idea and advised him to make the expedition with determination as it was the first of its kind.

In early June a party for the expedition to revolutionary battle sites was formed at a meeting of the KCU committee of Pyongyang Middle School No. 1. Kim Jong Il pointed out that the objective of the expedition was to learn, while marching along the course of the battle sites in the Mt. Paektu area associated with Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities, how challenging difficulties and hardships the anti-Japanese guerrillas had had to surmount to emerge victorious under the command of Kim Il Sung.

Leading the expeditionary party involving students from Pyongyang Middle School No. 1, Kim Jong Il conducted an expedition to the battle sites in Pochonbo, Samjiyon and Rimyongsu from June 5 to 14, 1956.

During the expedition he led the students to learn from the outstanding strategy and tactics of Marshal Kim Il Sung, the sagaciousness of his leadership and the fighting spirit and a high sense of organization and discipline possessed by the anti-Japanese guerrillas.

This expedition set up a new milestone for staunchly defending the glorious revolutionary traditions of the WPK and carrying them forward in the difficult post-war days.

Kim Jong Il encouraged the students to learn the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities not only through the expedition to the battle sites and other revolutionary sites but through the study of the traditions of the Korean revolution.

In September 1958 and again in April 1959, he told the members of the committees of the KCU and DYL primary organizations and other students that learning from the Marshal was the core in the studying of the revolutionary traditions. In September 1958 he proposed laying out a room for studying the history of the WPK at Pyongyang Middle School No. 1 (renamed Pyongyang Namsan Higher Middle School in April 1959) before the birth anniversary of Kim Il Sung and enlisting students to the work; he collected many materials to compile a book with them for education in the revolutionary traditions. Greeting the 47th anniversary of the birth of Kim Il Sung in 1959 the Room for Studying the History of the Workers' Party of Korea was laid out at the school for the education of students in the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities.

While arranging the studying of the revolutionary traditions by means of publications, Kim Jong Il saw to it that they read the *Reminiscences of the Anti-Japanese Guerrillas*, presented their impressions of the books and read many other books related with the revolutionary traditions. At the same time, he ensured that dissemination of revolutionary songs, revolutionary song chorus contest and meeting of appreciation of the art and literary works related with the revolutionary traditions were frequently organized.

Kim Jong Il conducted energetic activities to support and defend Kim Il Sung.

In the days after the war, modern revisionism appeared in the international communist movement, doing a great harm to the development of the world revolution. The anti-WPK, counterrevolutionary factionalists, toeing the line of modern revisionism, were scheming to impair the absolute prestige and authority of Kim Il Sung, oppose the Party's lines and policies and weaken and then obliterate the imperishable achievements performed by Kim Il Sung.

During the period from September 1953 to August 1960 when he attended Pyongyang Samsok Primary School, Pyongyang Primary School No. 4 and Pyongyang Middle School No. 1, he did his utmost to support and defend Kim Il Sung.

Kim Jong Il led the students to approach Kim Il Sung sincerely with a correct stand and attitude. In April 1954 when Kim Il Sung first greeted his birth anniversary after the war, Kim Jong Il initiated presenting in the name of the KCU members of Pyongyang Primary School No. 4 a congratulatory banner embroidered with the letters wishing him safety and good health, and ensured that this work was conducted with due respect.

He safeguarded the authority and prestige of Kim Il Sung.

Keeping vigil in the days before and after the August 1956 Plenary Meeting of the WPK Central Committee for the safety of Kim Il Sung, who was weathering the severe storm of the revolution, he made his determination firmer to devote his all for the sake of him, and wrote this determination on his pocketbook in these words, *Alive or Dead, For the Leader, September 10, 1956, Kim Jong Il.*

One April day in that year he told Choe Hyon and Ryu Kyong Su, veterans of the anti-Japanese revolution, that it would be good if newspapers and radio stations carry or broadcast articles on defending the Marshal. In May the anti-Japanese revolutionary veterans ensured that the army newspaper carried editorials, titled, *Marshal Kim Il Sung's Leadership Is the Decisive Guarantee of All Victories of Our Party and People* and *To Defend Marshal Kim Il Sung Politically, Ideologically and at the Cost of Our Lives Is a Noble Duty of the KPA Soldiers*, which dealt a heavy blow at the anti-WPK, counterrevolutionary elements and implanted in the hearts of the soldiers the spirit of defending the leader unto death.

Kim Jong Il led the students to defend Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology and its embodiment, the lines and policies of the WPK.

In May 1956 a public lecture on the prospects of the First Five-Year Plan was held at Pyongyang Middle School No. 1. At the lecture the school's headmaster distorted the WPK's basic line of economic construction in a cunning way. Kim Jong Il refuted the lecturer's argument there and then, defending the WPK's line. When factionalists were opposed to the education in the WPK's policies and fanning up regionalism, stressing the importance of the studying of the history of one's own region, he smashed their sophistry and encouraged students to study the history of the revolutionary activities of Kim Il Sung and his achievements.

Kim Jong Il organized the work of establishing the ideological system of the WPK among students.

With a keen insight into the requirements of the Korean revolution and the prevailing situation Kim Il Sung, at the First Conference of the WPK held in March 1958, reviewed the WPK's experience of the struggle for removing the remnants of factionalism and put forward the task of establishing the ideological system of the WPK.

Pursuant to this task Kim Jong Il directed primary attention to removing the remnants of factionalism among students.

While meeting members of the primary organization committees of the DYL of the higher course of Pyongyang Middle School No. 1 in April 1958, he laid bare the reactionary nature of factionalism, its historical origin in Korea, the anti-WPK, counterrevolutionary crimes factionalists had committed and the harmfulness of the crimes, and proved the righteousness of the WPK's measure of removing factionalists in an organized way. And he motivated them to explain among other students in various forms and by various methods the revolutionary stand the WPK had maintained in abolishing factions.

At a general meeting of the school's DYL committee held in September 1958 he made a concluding speech, titled, *On Some Tasks for Establishing the Ideological System of the WPK among DYL Members*.

At the speech he said:

“The ideological system of the WPK is, in essence, the ideological system of the great leader.

“Thoroughly establishing the ideological system of the WPK among DYL members is the most important task facing the DYL organizations. ‘Young people, thoroughly establish the ideological system of the WPK!’—this is a demand of the WPK at present and the first and foremost duty of DYL members.”

He went on to say that the basic task for establishing the system was to intensify education in WPK's policies among DYL members so as to ensure that they armed themselves firmly with the revolutionary ideas of Kim Il Sung, learned from the revolutionary spirit of the anti-Japanese fighters who had been faithful to Kim Il Sung, created a climate of combating all practices that ran against the WPK's ideology and strengthened the revolutionary organizational life.

In order to establish the ideological system of the WPK among students, he later made it his immovable main line in the ideological work to arm them with Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideas, WPK's policies which were their embodiment, and the revolutionary traditions. And he led the DYL

organizations at the school to conduct their work with the main stress on establishing the ideological system of the WPK.

As the work to learn from and defend Kim Il Sung was waged vigorously among students under the guidance of Kim Jong Il during and after the Fatherland Liberation War, they could be trained to be true sons and daughters of Kim Il Sung.

3. TRAINING STUDENTS TO BE BUILDERS OF SOCIALISM

By establishing the Juche orientation and intensifying organizational life and practical activities among students, Kim Jong Il trained them to be builders of socialism, knowledgeable and competent.

He led students to oppose worship of big countries and dogmatism and establish the Juche orientation among themselves.

Kim Il Sung, in his speech in front of the information and publicity officials of the WPK in December 1955, advanced the tasks for opposing worship of big countries and dogmatism and establishing the Juche orientation in all sectors of the revolution and construction.

Kim Jong Il made energetic activities to execute the tasks put forward by Kim Il Sung.

In his several talks, including those in September and December 1956, he explained the origin of worship of big countries and dogmatism in Korea, the reason why these ideological maladies became to linger on in the minds of students and the ways of surmounting them. He put to rights the inclination among students to interpret the original ideas and theories put forward by Kim Il Sung in the context of the conventional theories and the experiences of other countries, and led them to study the concrete realities of their country with pride in and self-respect for their own things.

He ensured that students established the Juche orientation in studying.

In his concluding speech titled, *Let Us Establish a Revolutionary World Outlook among Youth and Students*, delivered at a general meeting of a DYL primary organization of Pyongyang Middle School No. 1 on September 13, 1957 he stressed the need to wage a dynamic campaign to establish the Juche orientation in studying.

Kim Jong Il said:

“We should hold the slogan ‘Let us learn better our own things and exalt their brilliance!’ and strive to establish the Juche orientation in studying.”

To this end, he ensured that students studied in depth the history of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle conducted under the command of Kim Il Sung, zealously learned the history, culture, nature, geography and life customs and manners of Korea, and grasped the knowledge applicable to the revolution and construction in Korea.

He led students to establish the Juche orientation in the extracurricular activities.

Under his guidance members of the performing art and fine art groups in the school discarded the attitude of viewing the songs, dances and fine art works of other countries to be good, and sang songs and practiced dances which were congenial to the emotions of Koreans and learned the techniques of drawing traditional Korean paintings. The botanical group also established the Juche orientation in their activities.

Kim Jong Il tried hard to develop the work of the DYL committee of his school in a fresh way.

On December 12, 1956, Kim Jong Il joined the DYL; after working as chairman of the committee of a primary DYL organization, he was elected deputy chairman of the DYL committee of the school. The chairman was a teacher. He worked hard to develop the work of the school’s DYL committee in a fresh way so as to train students to be builders of socialism, knowledgeable and competent.

He first improved the functions and role of the DYL committee.

In his speech, titled, *On the Duty of the School’s DYL Organizations* delivered at a meeting of the school’s DYL committee held on February 6, 1957, he clarified the duty and task of the committee.

He said:

“To train all the DYL members to be revolutionaries boundlessly loyal to the WPK and the leader and to be reliable builders of socialism, knowledgeable and competent—this can be called the duty of the school’s DYL committee.”

He further said that the committee’s task was to rally DYL members behind the WPK and the leader, help them study effectively, intensify guidance over their organizational life and properly guide the work of the school’s KCU organization.

Kim Jong Il ensured that a fresh turn was brought about in the work of the school's DYL organizations.

He learned that the organizations had failed at that time to pay close attention to the work of improving the academic performance of students, and saw to it that they regarded helping students study effectively as one of its important tasks and as the main content of its guidance over their organizational life. In March 1957 he met an official of a primary DYL organization and said that a revolutionary view and way of studying should be established among students; to this end, he arranged several meetings to learn from the students exemplary in studying. He ensured that academic contests, seminars and book sessions were briskly organized to heighten the zeal for studying among students and help them consolidate the knowledge they had learned.

Extracurricular reading was an effective means for students to acquire knowledge in breadth and depth.

Kim Jong Il set a personal example in this regard; in addition to the school textbooks, he avidly read Kim Il Sung's works, Marxist-Leninist books, books on mechanical engineering, agronomy, animal husbandry and other disciplines of natural science and technology and even social science and art and literature.

Meanwhile, he led the DYL organizations to organize groups for extracurricular activities as suited to the special features of students so that they could learn practical knowledge. The school's DYL committee organized mathematics, musical, fine art and sports groups, set up a system whereby it could guide their operation, and arranged oratorical, poem recital and music appreciation sessions, shows of inventions and products and various other extracurricular activities.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the school's DYL committee channelled great efforts to establishing a climate of participating in the organizational life voluntarily among its members.

The DYL organizations educated them to participate in their organizational life voluntarily cherishing the honour of being DYL members, and helped them execute, by carrying a handbook on their organizational life, the decisions adopted by their organizations and the assignments entrusted to them. They also led them to establish a correct view of their organizations and revolutionary organizational discipline.

With close attention to the KCU work, Kim Jong Il led the DYL committee to take charge of the KCU work and give guidance to it.

During the winter holiday in 1957, DYL members went to KCU branch

organizations and gained experience in guiding the KCU members in their studying and extracurricular activities, and in February that year the post of an assistant instructor for a KCU branch organization was created so that a proficient DYL member from a higher class could help its regular instructor (the teacher in charge of that class) in his or her work. The system of guiding the work of the CU organizations by the school's DYL committee was further strengthened and measures were taken to improve the political and practical qualifications and role of the assistant instructors.

Kim Jong Il encouraged students to take an active part in socialist construction.

In the speech he made at a national meeting of young builders of socialism in March 1958, Kim Il Sung stressed that young people should become the most dependable workers of the WPK in the revolutionary struggle and staunch builders of socialism, calling on them to dedicate their enthusiasm, wisdom and abilities to socialist construction.

When the teaching staff and students of Pyongyang Middle School No. 1 held a rally on May 5, 1958 in support of Cabinet decision No. 17, Kim Jong Il made a speech under the title *Let Young People Go All Out in the Endeavour for Socialist Construction*. In the Speech and on several other occasions he said that young people should render labour and material support to socialist construction.

He urged students to take part in the construction of Pyongyang, the capital city. At an enlarged meeting of the school's DYL committee held on May 3, 1958 and at several other meetings Kim Jong Il made clear the objective and significance of the campaign for assisting the construction of the capital city and appealed to students to play the role of vanguard and shock force in the efforts to translate into reality Kim Il Sung's plan of capital city construction.

From early May to mid-June 1958 he personally took part, with his colleagues, in the production of prefabs for the building of 20 000 flats, during which he led them to train themselves in the practical labour, acquire excellent ideological and mental traits, consolidate their book knowledge and renovate techniques.

Later he participated in the construction of the Pyongyang Students and Children's Palace and the embankment of the Taedong River, encouraging students to labour feats through skilful political and organizational work and his personal examples.

He also encouraged students to be actively involved in the do-good-deeds

campaign for socialist construction and in the information work for motivating the working people to increased production.

Kim Jong Il ensured that students armed themselves firmly with a Juche-oriented view of war.

Having realized more keenly the necessity of giving importance to arms, to military affairs, while accompanying his father on the latter's inspection of numerous military units after the war, he wrote on one of his higher middle school notebooks the slogan, **“Let us wipe out to the last one the US imperialist aggressors, the sworn enemy of the Korean people, and reunify the country”** and deepened his study of military affairs, learning the military ideas of Kim Il Sung. While reading various military books, he got a wide-ranging knowledge, including the missions and tasks of the arms, services and corps of a regular army.

On September 23, 1959 and several other occasions he said to the students of Pyongyang Namsan Higher Middle School that they should have a correct understanding of the WPK's principled stand to war and peace and reject war phobia and war weariness.

Through his energetic activities to prepare students politically, ideologically and militarily, Kim Jong Il grasped Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideas, got a wide-ranging knowledge of nature and society and rich military knowledge and possessed traits and qualities as befitting a great revolutionary, an outstanding Songun commander, like capabilities and skills for leading an organization and the masses.

CHAPTER 2. STARTING SONGUN-BASED REVOLUTIONARY LEADERSHIP AND CARRYING THE REVOLUTIONARY CAUSE OF JUCHE TO COMPLETION

(August 1960-March 1964)

1. START OF SONGUN-BASED REVOLUTIONARY LEADERSHIP AND DECLARATION OF LOFTY DETERMINATION TO CARRY THE REVOLUTIONARY CAUSE OF JUCHE TO COMPLETION

Entering the 1960s the situation in the Korean peninsula urgently demanded that the defence capabilities of the country be strengthened.

Having successfully laid foundations for building socialism under the wise leadership of Kim Il Sung, the northern part of Korea was now faced with the task of pushing forward with socialist construction full steam.

Meanwhile, the United States egged on the south Korean interim government to block the advance of the progressive forces as it encountered crisis in its rule in south Korea following the April 19 popular uprising. On the other hand it made a desperate bid to provoke a new war by shipping various kinds of new weaponry including ground-to-air missiles and a great number of troops into south Korea from its mainland and conducting military exercises on a large scale.

In view of the prevailing situation it was urgent to build up the national defence capabilities in every aspect holding fast to the line of giving importance to force of arms, military affairs.

Kim Jong Il deeply studied Kim Il Sung's ideas of the military and laid a firm basis for carrying forward the Songun-based revolutionary leadership through practical activities.

Born as the son of guerrillas he grew attached to arms. During the grim days of the Fatherland Liberation War he took over from his father Kim Il Sung the

idea of attaching importance to force of arms and a pistol as a baton of the revolution. He also learned his outstanding tactics and the art of command. During the postwar rehabilitation period he learned from Kim Il Sung's exploits in building and leading the army and his art of command while frequently accompanying the latter in his on-site inspection of army units. In particular, he accumulated a great store of military knowledge on modern warfare and regular army through his energetic study, inquiry and revolutionary practice.

Kim Jong Il started his Songun-based revolutionary leadership with his visit to the Seoul Ryu Kyong Su Guards 105th Tank Division of the KPA (the then KPA 105th Mechanized Division) on August 25, 1960.

Having been formed when the KPA was organized as a regular army under the wise leadership and meticulous care of Kim Il Sung, the division was awarded the title of honour for its heroic feats in many battles including those to liberate Seoul and Taejon during the war and made tangible contributions to guaranteeing the postwar rehabilitation and socialist revolution by force of arms.

When he visited the unit in company of Kim Il Sung, Kim Jong Il highly appreciated the brilliant feats performed by it during the war and stressed that it should hasten the final victory of the Korean revolution holding aloft the slogan "Let us defend with our very lives the Party Central Committee headed by the respected Comrade Kim Il Sung!"

Together with April 25 when Kim Il Sung started his Songun-based revolutionary leadership with the founding of the KPRA, August 25, when Kim Jong Il started his Songun-based revolutionary leadership, was a historic day in the history of building the revolutionary armed forces of Korea.

Kim Jong Il entered Kim Il Sung University on September 1, 1960 with an ambitious plan for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche, the revolutionary cause of Songun.

Kim Jong Il said:

"It is our ennobling obligation for the times, the revolution, the country and the people to carry on the cause of the leader as the masters of the Korean revolution.

"Add eternal brilliance to Korea, the country of the great sun, generation after generation—this is my unshakeable faith and will."

Kim Il Sung University is the country's first centre for training national cadres which was built shortly after the liberation of the country under the guidance of Kim Il Sung who realized the importance of training national cadres.

Kim Jong Il had decided to study at Kim Il Sung University many years previously.

When he visited a socialist foreign country in January 1959 an official of that country asked him to study at a university of his country. He answered he would study at Kim Il Sung University.

It was his firm stand that if he was to become a true revolutionary carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche, the revolutionary cause of Songun, he should deeply study the revolutionary ideas of Kim Il Sung and acquire knowledge applicable to the Korean revolution with his feet firmly planted in the reality of his country.

For him to study at Kim Il Sung University was an intention of Kim Il Sung and an earnest request of his mother Kim Jong Suk.

Kim Il Sung wanted him to study in Korea so that he could prepare himself as a genuine revolutionary who would shoulder the revolutionary cause of Juche, the revolutionary cause of Songun.

When she visited the construction site of Kim Il Sung University on Ryongnam Hill with Kim Il Sung and young son Kim Jong Il after the liberation of the country, Kim Jong Suk told her son that he should study at Kim Il Sung University named after his father when he grew up, and support the leadership of Kim Il Sung faithfully.

On September 1, 1960 Kim Jong Il, through his poem *O Korea, I Will Add Glory to Thee*, declared on Ryongnam Hill his lofty determination to carry forward the revolutionary cause of Juche true to the earnest wish of Kim Il Sung.

This determination he made on Ryongnam Hill by reciting the poem *O Korea, I Will Add Glory to Thee* was a manifestation of his will and faith in hastening the final victory of the Juche idea and an inheritance of the determination of Kim Hyong Jik on Nam Hill to achieve the independence of his country by fighting generation after generation true to the idea of “Aim High” and the determination made by Kim Il Sung at Phophyong Ferry not to return home unless the country became independent before he crossed the Amnok River after trekking the 1 000-*ri* journey for national liberation.

On August 29, 1962 Kim Jong Il declared through his poem *I Will Carry on the March Started from Mt. Paektu* his resolve to carry forward the revolutionary cause pioneered by Kim Il Sung in its pure form by holding fast to the Songun idea.

The poem reflects in a condensed way his unshakeable faith and will to train the revolutionary armed forces into an invincible revolutionary army of

Mt. Paektu by carrying forward the revolutionary traditions of Songun originated in the forest of Paektu and to turn his country into a thriving socialist country no enemy dared attack by dint of the might of Songun.

In his firm determination the Korean people saw that the final victory of the revolutionary cause of Juche, the revolutionary cause of Songun, was fully guaranteed.

2. THROUGH ENERGETIC IDEOLOGICAL AND THEORETICAL ACTIVITIES

During his days at Kim Il Sung University Kim Jong Il conducted energetic ideological and theoretical activities to defend and further develop the revolutionary ideology of Kim Il Sung.

At Kim Il Sung University Kim Jong Il showed his traits and qualifications as an outstanding ideological theoretician through his energetic ideological and theoretical activities to defend and further develop the revolutionary ideology of Kim Il Sung.

He put all his energies into fully grasping Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology as well as accumulating all-round knowledge of nature and society.

He delved into Kim Il Sung's works and instructions in a systematic way he had studied in his days at junior and senior middle schools in a chronological order and in an all-round way. He also studied his reports, concluding speeches, speeches at important meetings and instructions given to various sectors. In particular, while accompanying Kim Il Sung on his inspection tours he studied hard to grasp the ideas and theories of Kim Il Sung who was solving all problems of the revolution and construction in an original way by putting the masses of the people at the centre and taking account of the specific conditions of the country.

Proceeding from the Juche-based point of view Kim Jong Il also made a profound study and analysis of the heritage of progressive ideas and theories left by mankind and particularly the preceding revolutionary thoughts and theories of the working class, and pointed out their limitations.

Since his early university days Kim Jong Il had read many preceding classics such as *The Communist Manifesto*, *The Capital*, *Anti-Duhring*, *Imperialism, the Highest Stage of Capitalism*, *State and Revolution* and *Marxism*

and the *National Question*, sometimes noting their limitations and his opinions like **“This theory does not suit our era,”** and **“It only outlined the matter, but failed to unfold any further.”**

Kim Jong Il read many books on not only political economy, his specialized field, but also other fields such as social sciences including philosophy and history, natural sciences, art and literature, and military science, thereby acquiring a wide range of knowledge.

Through this ceaseless study and enquiry he improved his qualifications becoming a prominent ideological theoretician.

Kim Jong Il conducted energetic ideological and theoretical activities to defend Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary ideology.

He paid primary attention to elucidating the originality and greatness of his revolutionary ideology.

In his works like ***On Correctly Understanding the Validity of the Basic Line of Socialist Economic Construction, Some Problems Arising In Socialist Economic Construction, Let Us Resolutely Defend Our Party’s Line of Self-Reliant National Economic Construction and The Taean Work System Is an Original System for Managing Socialist Economy*** and on many occasions Kim Jong Il proved in an all-round way the originality of Kim Il Sung’s ideas and theories of the socialist construction including the basic line of socialist economic construction, the line of building a self-supporting national economy, the Taean work system, the theory of the nature of labour in socialist society, the theory on combining the political and moral incentives with material one and the theory on simultaneously building up the economy and defences. In particular, in a talk titled, ***On Having a Correct Theoretical Understanding of the Characteristics of Agricultural Cooperativization in Our Country*** given to the students at Kim Il Sung University on May 4, 1962, he explained that the WPK’s policy of cooperativizing agriculture was based on a new theory of social transformation and that the line of reforming the economic forms of agriculture along the socialist line prior to technical transformation was Kim Il Sung’s historic and unique discovery which had brought about a great change in the development of the theory on social transformation.

In a seminar on the preceding classics held in January 1962 Kim Jong Il clarified that Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary ideology was an original one which reflected the requirements of the higher stage of the developing revolution when the task of destroying exploitative society and building socialism throughout the world posed a pragmatic problem, and that the guiding principle

for carrying out the revolution and construction with success in the present historical conditions should be found in Kim Il Sung's great revolutionary ideology.

In his talk titled, *A New Era Requires a New Idea*, given to the Kim Il Sung University students on July 19, 1963 Kim Jong Il proved in depth that Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology was the guiding principles of the working class in the present era and that it was a new, original and great ideology that surpassed those of Marx and Lenin.

Saying that his revolutionary ideology was new guiding principles that reflected the requirements of the present era, Kim Jong Il highlighted that Kim Il Sung had authored a revolutionary ideology that reflected the demands of the present era, a new historic era, and, on this basis, put all the theories of the revolution and construction onto a higher level.

His theoretical explanation of the originality and the greatness of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology served as an ideological and theoretical basis and a starting point in his later effort to formulate the revolutionary ideology as Kimilsungism.

Kim Jong Il waged energetic ideological and theoretical activities against opportunism.

In his talk *On the Reactionary Nature of Modern Revisionism and Our Party's Revolutionary Stand in the Anti-Revisionist Struggle* given to the students of Kim Il Sung University on December 29, 1962 and on other occasions, Kim Jong Il comprehensively analyzed the origin of modern revisionism, its reactionary nature and harmful effects.

Saying that because surviving elements of the overthrown exploiter classes engaged in insidious plots and old ideas lingered in the minds of the people even after the establishment of the socialist society, there might appear betrayers who gave way to the pressure by the imperialists, Kim Jong Il explained that modern revisionism had come into being because such a betrayer of the revolution had usurped the supreme power of the party and state and dictated revisionism. He pointed out that the reactionary nature of modern revisionism was that it rejected the revolutionary principles of the working class and gave up revolutionary struggle in the interests of the imperialists and reactionary classes, whereas its harmful effect was that it calumniated the authority and prestige of the leader, denied the party's leadership of the revolution and construction, class struggle and dictatorship of the working class, surrendered to the US imperialists, intimidated by their nuclear threat, spread worship of imperialism, backed down in

anti-imperialist struggle and undermined the unity of socialist countries and the international communist movement. He also stated that modern revisionism was dangerous in that it appeared in the leadership of a big country which had struggled for the revolution for a long time and was being forced upon its party members and other working people through organizations, and that it hindered the development of relations between countries.

Kim Jong Il proved the validity of the revolutionary stand maintained by the WPK in the struggle against revisionism and emphasized that if one was to overcome revisionism one should arm oneself firmly with Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology.

He also waged brisk ideological activities to develop Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology in width and depth.

He cast a new light on the position and role of the leader in the revolutionary struggle of the working class and the importance of the problem of the successor to the leader.

In his talk titled, *The Leader of the Working Class Plays a Decisive Role in the Revolutionary Struggle*, given to the students of Kim Il Sung University on June 12, 1963 and many other works, he proved that the leader of the working class is the supreme representative of the interests of the masses of the people, holds the position of the "brains" in relation with the people and plays a decisive role in the revolutionary struggle of the working class.

Kim Jong Il enriched the fundamental principles of the Juche-oriented theories of the revolution.

As regards the essence of a social revolution which is a logic starting point of revolutionary theories, he expounded that the revolution should not be considered as a mere change of social systems and that it is necessary to define the concept of revolution in a fresh manner by adding ideological, technological and cultural revolutions which would be waged after the establishment of a socialist system. Noting that the forms of revolution, too, should be newly defined on the basis of the practical experience of the times, not by mechanically following previously established theories, he pointed out that the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution in colonial or semi-colonial countries should not be regarded as a form of a bourgeois revolution or a socialist revolution, but an independent form of revolution.

Kim Jong Il further developed the Juche-oriented military ideas and theories.

Of particular importance in this regard was his ideological and theoretical

activities conducted during military manoeuvres he took part in his days at Kim Il Sung University.

In talks given to his fellow trainees from Kim Il Sung University, he clarified that Kim Il Sung's Juche-oriented military ideas and theory were original in that they were evolved with the man at the centre.

He defined the essence of war as an organized armed struggle performed by a certain social group or a social force to realize its fundamental demands and elucidated the factors that underlie the victory of the war.

The decisive factor for victory in war is not weaponry but man and therefore all the problems arising in army building and movements should be solved with man at the centre. He also explained that decisive of victory in war for every country are not external factors but internal ones and that between human and material factors and between politico-ideological and military-technological factors, human and politico-ideological factors play a decisive role. He gave a clear definition of the main characteristics and superiority of the Juche-oriented tactics and dealt with the matters of principle in applying them into practice.

He also clarified the character and mission of the revolutionary army and said that the revolutionary principle in building a revolutionary army is correctly combining political work and military-technological one while giving precedence to the former.

In his talk titled, *On the Invincible Might of the All-People Defence System*, given to his fellow trainees on September 18, 1962 and other works he substantiated the justness and originality of Kim Il Sung's theory on building self-reliant defence capabilities and further developed its contents.

In his university days Kim Jong Il developed Kim Il Sung's Juche-oriented ideas and theories on art and literature.

He clarified the matters of principle arising in creating revolutionary art and literature and the direction of developing opera.

He set principles in creating revolutionary art and literature as unearthing and representing large numbers of literary and artistic works produced in the days of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, masterpieces created by Kim Il Sung in particular, portraying the leader of the working class, and selecting the prototype of a character of our era, independent man boundlessly faithful to Kim Il Sung, as the hero and depicting his life in width and depth.

With a deep insight into essential limitations of operas on stage in Korea at that time he elucidated the direction of creating the Korean-style revolutionary operas.

Those matters of principle in building revolutionary art and literature and instructions on the need to create the Korean-style operas constituted a firm ideological and theoretical basis for the revolution in art and literature brought about between the late 1960s and early 1970s.

Kim Jong Il paid great efforts to developing the Juche-oriented theories on imperialism and national liberation struggle against colonialism.

He deeply studied modern imperialism, which was an important matter in making correct tactics and strategies for the world revolution and anti-imperialist revolutionary struggle and hastening its victory. By systematizing his study results he published a treatise titled, *The Characteristics of Modern Imperialism and Its Aggressive Nature* on January 15, 1962.

In the treatise he made a comprehensive analysis of modern imperialism in several aspects—political, economic and military—and on this basis gave a definition of the characteristics of modern imperialism.

Kim Jong Il said:

“Modern imperialism is imperialism based not merely on monopolistic domination but whose political and economic basis is state-controlled monopolistic capitalism, depending not on old colonialism but on neo-colonialism, existing not in parallel with each other but reorganized in subordinate relation with US imperialism as the ringleader, and not growing in strength but making a last-ditch effort even while declining rapidly to its downfall.”

Based on this scientific definition of the characteristics of modern imperialism Kim Jong Il unveiled the vicious nature of the US double-dealing tactics, “peace strategy” in particular, emphasizing that aggressive and predatory nature of imperialism had never changed but grown more heinous and crafty.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to developing the theories on national liberation struggle in colonial countries from the Juche-oriented point of view. In a talk titled, *On the Inevitability of the Collapse of the Imperialist Colonial System* he gave to the students of Kim Il Sung University on March 9, 1961 he illuminated the position and role of national liberation struggle against colonialism in the world revolution.

He described national liberation struggle in colonial countries in view of the world revolution as follows: an independent, mighty revolutionary force for cutting down the lifeline of imperialism, a new political force changing the balance of force in favour of socialism and the revolution in the international

arena and a powerful force for maintaining peace throughout the world. He added: Changes brought about in the position and role of this struggle demand for a radical turn in the deployment of forces in the struggle for the world revolution and peace; it is essential in forming forces for victory in the world revolution and the peace movement to attach equal importance to the national liberation struggle in colonial countries as the struggle of the working class for socialism and exert all efforts to support and develop the struggle.

Kim Jong Il also strived to solve urgent theoretical and practical problems arising in socialist construction.

The rural question was one of the most important problems in the mid-1960s and also a pressing one in the social and economic development in Korea.

With a keen insight into this demand of the times Kim Il Sung published the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country* in February 1964.

On March 18, 1964 Kim Jong Il made public his treatise *The Status and Role of the County in Socialist Construction* in which he further developed the ideas and theories on regional base and its role in the socialist construction clarified by Kim Il Sung in his theses.

In the treatise he substantiated the revolutionary essence and justness of Kim Il Sung's ideas and theories on regional base, elucidated the position and role of the county as the regional base mainly from the economic point of view and advanced scientific ways for enhancing its role in keeping with the development of the revolution and construction.

First, he dealt with the necessity for establishing the regional base of socialist construction in keeping with its development and stated that as the regional base of socialist construction, the county is an all-embracing unit in the development of the local economy and the base for establishing economic ties between urban and rural areas. He also predicted that the county would play a very important role as the regional base in the distant future of socialism and communism, to say nothing of the period of socialist construction.

The ideological and theoretical activities conducted by Kim Jong Il in his university days were aimed, to all intents and purposes, at defending and developing Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology. They also embraced various sectors of the revolution and construction such as politics, the economy, culture, the military and international affairs. They were all directed to solving the problems arising in carrying out the Korean revolution.

That Kim Jong Il defended and enriched Kim Il Sung's revolutionary

ideology in his university days consisted in his immortal exploits in adding glory to Korea and carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche, the revolutionary cause of Songun.

3. ASSISTING KIM IL SUNG IN HIS GUIDANCE OF THE REVOLUTION AND CONSTRUCTION

Kim Jong Il sincerely assisted Kim Il Sung in leading the revolution and construction.

Though he was busy with scientific research, ideological and theoretical activities and public political activities at university, he often accompanied Kim Il Sung on his on-site guidance tour.

Kim Jong Il assisted him in formulating the lines and policies of the WPK.

Around that time Korea, after victorious socialist revolution resulting in the establishment of socialist system, forcefully pushed ahead with socialist construction at full steam. This strongly demanded that lines and policies be drawn up in keeping with the developing realities.

With a keen insight into the requirements of the developing revolution Kim Il Sung strived to make up such lines and policies.

Kim Jong Il helped him in this work by acquainting himself with actual conditions of the sectors concerned in advance and reporting them to Kim Il Sung.

He assisted him in making a report to the Fourth Congress of the WPK. Prior to the congress he collected data and documents on various sectors such as politics, the economy, culture, the military and international relations and classified them for him. He also made a fair copy of Kim Il Sung's report to the Fourth Conference of the WPK.

Kim Jong Il helped Kim Il Sung with his preparations for the Changsong Joint Conference of Local Party and Economic Officials.

In July 1962 Kim Il Sung was preparing for this conference in order to popularize throughout the country the experience gained by Changsong County, which he had held up as a model unit for developing the economy and improving the people's standard of living in mountainous regions.

Kim Jong Il went down to Changsong and Sakju counties to enquire into the actual conditions of their local-industry factories and cooperative farms

which were included in the visiting programme of the participants in the conference.

Based on his understanding of the conditions there he wrote a treatise titled, *The Validity of Our Party's Policy of Developing Local Industry*, on August 5, 1962.

In this treatise he wrote that the experience of Sakju County showed that if a county mobilizes its forces to carry out the Party's policies, it will be able to develop its industry and rural economy and improve the people's standard of living, and proved this with figures and data.

The data analyzed in his treatise were of great help to Kim Il Sung in his preparations for the Changsong joint conference.

Later Kim Il Sung recollected that though he himself was busy creating a model unit and preparing documents for the conference, the meeting was a success as he had desired, because Kim Jong Il had helped him beforehand by reading his intentions and thought.

Kim Jong Il also assisted Kim Il Sung in writing his work titled, *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country*.

In January 1964 Kim Jong Il visited workteam No. 7 of the Onchon County Town Cooperative Farm in company with Kim Il Sung and acquainted himself with the situation in the farm.

Kim Jong Il told Kim Il Sung that while listening to Kim Il Sung talking with a workteam leader of the cooperative farm, he had realized once again that the questions that were to be dealt with in the rural theses were urgent ones which reflected the actual situation of the rural areas and law-governed requirements of the developing socialist rural economy, and gave his opinions on some problems arising in building the socialist rural areas.

By referring to his opinions Kim Il Sung set it forth in his rural theses as immediate tasks to abolish the agricultural tax in kind once and for all within a few years and to build dwelling houses and major structures in the rural areas at the expense of the state.

As seen above, during his university days Kim Jong Il whole-heartedly assisted Kim Il Sung in working out the WPK's lines and policies.

Kim Jong Il also assisted Kim Il Sung in his guidance over the Party work and major political events.

He paid primary attention to helping him in his effort to improve Party work.

When he accompanied Kim Il Sung on his on-site guidance tour in North Hwanghae Province in February 1963, Kim Jong Il told the Party officials

there that the priority in Party work was to carry out Kim Il Sung's instructions. Later on his visit to other provincial, municipal and county Party committees of the WPK he emphasized again that all Party officials should study Kim Il Sung's instructions in depth and focus on carrying them out to the letter and clarified detailed directions and ways to this end.

He also led the WPK officials to turn the WPK's work into a political work, work with people, by applying the Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method in their work.

When he visited Nampho Municipal Committee of the WPK in March 1963 Kim Jong Il saw to it that its officials went down to the shop floor and helped their subordinates organize labour properly and conduct technical and equipment management efficiently as required by the Chongsanri method. When he visited Sinchon County in August he stressed the need for the officials of ri committees of the WPK to take stock of realities of their farms and play a proper leading role in farm work. Moreover, he led the WPK committees at all levels to inspire their members and masses of the people to carry out the WPK's policies by giving precedence to political work and educate them by political methods, particularly by means of positive influence, explanation and persuasion.

In his effort to assist Kim Il Sung, Kim Jong Il paid special attention to the preparations of important political events.

When he accompanied Kim Il Sung on his on-site guidance in Ryanggang Province in August 1963 he guided the preparations for celebrations of the 18th anniversary of the liberation of Korea which was to be held in presence of Kim Il Sung.

He ensured that the platform was laid out in such a way as to give Kim Il Sung all due respect, and modified the formation of the columns of the public procession, their order and direction of the march. He set it as a principle to accord the leader due respect at the same time as providing convenience to the people in solving the problems rising in the preparations. He also guided the rehearsal of mass gymnastics and the preparations for a banquet.

Thanks to his guidance the celebrations, though held in Hyesan, a provincial seat, took place on a high political and ideological standard as a national event.

Kim Jong Il also assisted Kim Il Sung in his work to strengthen the country's defence capabilities.

Kim Jong Il said:

“Without building up the national defence capability it is impossible to guarantee the safety of the country and the people and carry out economic

construction with success. Strengthening national defence capabilities is a requirement decisive of the destiny of the revolution and construction.”

Together with Kim Il Sung on the road of Songun-based revolutionary leadership, Kim Jong Il energetically led the effort to develop the KPA into invincible revolutionary armed forces.

He did his utmost to bring home to the KPA service personnel the essence of the slogan “**a-match-for-a hundred**” put forth by Kim Il Sung and ways of implementing it.

When he visited a frontline post on Mt. Taedok in company with Kim Il Sung in February 6, 1963 he gave a talk to KPA commanding officers under the title, *Let Us Strengthen the People’s Army to Make It a-Match-for-a-Hundred Revolutionary Armed Force*. Explaining that the slogan required in essence that each soldier of the army should be prepared to be equal to a hundred foes not only in defence but also in attack, he said that in order to implement the slogan it was important to conduct brisk political and ideological work among soldiers, fully prepare them militarily, technically and physically and fortify positions.

Later Kim Jong Il inspected many other army units in company with Kim Il Sung, ensuring that soldiers were prepared politically and ideologically, militarily and technically true to the slogan.

On his visit to an air-force unit in July 1963 Kim Jong Il told the pilots there that their foremost duty was to defend the sky over Pyongyang where Kim Il Sung was. Whenever he inspected army units Kim Jong Il underlined the need to infuse the soldiers with burning hatred for the class enemy and fully prepare them for war by intensifying education in loyalty to the leader, revolutionary traditions, class awareness and correct viewpoint on war.

In order to make soldiers fully prepared militarily and technically, Kim Jong Il ensured that all the military drills were waged on the basis of the country’s actual conditions, demands of modern warfare and Juche-oriented tactics. While inspecting several air-force units he emphasized that they should perfect their combat readiness by relying on revolutionary ideology and high techniques and explained that the pilots could destroy the enemy by exploiting their weak point only when they were well acquainted with the enemy planes as well as their own.

Meanwhile, he visited the frontline units and led them to fortify their positions.

Kim Jong Il wholeheartedly assisted Kim Il Sung in leading the effort to arm the entire population and fortify the whole country.

When he visited several provinces, cities and counties including Sinchon

County, South Hwanghae Province, in company with Kim Il Sung in August 1963, Kim Jong Il saw to it that they carried out the policy of arming all the people to the letter. During his visit to Rinsan County, North Hwanghae Province, in December 1963 he reiterated the need to step up the work of fortifying the whole country.

Kim Jong Il helped Kim Il Sung in his work to build up the socialist economy and improve the people's living standards.

Kim Jong Il, first of all, paid great attention to accelerating the overall technical reconstruction of the national economy, one of the major tasks of the first seven-year plan put forth by Kim Il Sung.

When he visited the then Hwanghae Iron Works together with Kim Il Sung in September 1961 he stressed that it should step up the modernization of all the production lines and make preparations for comprehensive automation. When he accompanied Kim Il Sung on his visit to the then Nampho Smeltery and other factories and enterprises in February 1963 he took measures to turn harmful production lines into harmless ones and to mechanize and semi-automate painstaking labour. Later, visiting many other factories and enterprises he roused the officials and working people there to a mass-based technical innovation campaign.

When he visited the then Saenal Agricultural Cooperative in Sinchon County in August 1962 he acquainted himself with the level of mechanization of the cooperative and inspired it to take the lead in the mechanization of the rural economy. Visiting the Rihyon Cooperative Farm in Sadong District and other farms he presented the orientation and ways for raising the level of mechanization in threshing and stressed to the officials that machines should be introduced also into farm work on sloping fields.

Kim Jong Il also assisted Kim Il Sung in his effort to improve the people's living standards.

When he visited in company with Kim Il Sung Changsong and Sakju counties in July 1962 and mountainous counties including Toksong and Phungsan (the present Kim Hyong Gwon County) in South Hamgyong and Ryanggang provinces in August the following year, he ensured that officials took necessary measures to raise the living standards of the people.

As part of his effort to improve the supply work of commodities Kim Jong Il visited many shops in the capital and provinces, ensuring that they secured high-quality goods and supplied them to the people. Of particular importance in this regard was his talk titled, *Commercial Workers Should Constantly Improve their Service for the People*, given to officials on May 5, 1961 while

looking round the then Central Department Store No. 1. When he dropped in at the then Phungsan County Town General Shop in August 1963 Kim Jong Il got familiar with the supply of soy sauce and bean paste and tasted them. He brought their samples to Kim Il Sung, so that he could take measures to provide the people with quality goods.

Kim Jong Il's assistance to Kim Il Sung involved his guidance of the construction of socialist culture.

He focused on translating into practice Kim Il Sung's ideas and intentions of developing art and literature into the Juche-based one which served the WPK and the working class.

When he went to the National Theatre in March 1961 he familiarized himself with the dramas it was preparing before stressing the need to create many dramas delineating the working class in a heroic struggle to bring about a revolutionary upsurge in the socialist construction. In early June 1963 he visited the Korean Film Studio and gave instructions on effecting a drastic change in film creation by putting main emphasis on making films vividly depicting independent man who is boundlessly faithful to the leader.

Kim Jong Il strived to implement Kim Il Sung's plan for starting TV broadcasting service in the country.

He encouraged manufacturers of TV broadcasting equipment to work hard in the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude that they would make them by their own efforts. He enlisted broad masses of the people in this work and solved problems of the shortages of technical literature and raw materials, regarding himself as one of the manufacturing team. Once he went out to a suburb of the capital city in the middle of the night to command the trial transmission.

Under his leadership preparations for starting TV broadcasting service were brought to completion and in March 1963 TV broadcasting service started in Korea, to a great pleasure of Kim Il Sung.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention also to making sports mass-based and developing the sporting skills and mass gymnastics.

In his talk titled, *A Juche Orientation Should Be Firmly Established in Physical Culture and Sports and a Revolutionary Upswing Brought About in the Production of Mass Gymnastics*, given to a senior official of the Physical Culture and Sports Guidance Commission under the Cabinet on July 5, 1961, he expounded the ways for developing sports and creating the mass gymnastics *Era of the Workers' Party* as a model of mass gymnastics.

While assisting Kim Il Sung in leading the revolution and construction

Kim Jong Il acquired his traits and art of leadership in all aspects and developed wide ranging knowledge and qualifications as befitting the leader of the people.

4. TRAINING STUDENTS AS RELIABLE SUCCESSORS TO THE REVOLUTIONARY CAUSE OF JUCHE

Kim Jong Il directed his great efforts to training students as reliable successors to the revolutionary cause of Juche, the revolutionary cause of Songun, who were possessed of revolutionary outlook on the world and combined both the power of pen and sword.

He ensured that political and ideological education was intensified among students with the main emphasis on establishing the WPK's ideological system.

He attached prime importance to the education of students in loyalty to Kim Il Sung.

In his several talks to students including that given in December 1960 and at seminars he elucidated the absolute position and decisive role of the leader in the struggle of the working-class and expounded in an all-round way the greatness of Kim Il Sung who had made imperishable contributions to the Korean and world revolution.

On the occasions of political ceremonies held in presence of Kim Il Sung including the military parade in celebration of 30th founding anniversary of the Korean People's Revolutionary Army in April 1962 Kim Jong Il led students to uphold and follow Kim Il Sung with all their heart by setting personal examples showing what attitude and stand his revolutionary fighters should be possessed of.

Kim Jong Il pushed ahead with the work to impart Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology and the WPK's policies to students.

He saw to it that students eradicated the tendency to idolize the preceding classics and dogmatic and formalistic attitude towards studying and brought about a radical turn in studying Kim Il Sung's works.

First of all, he encouraged them to have proper viewpoint of and stand towards the works and study them intentionally with a clear target and plan.

On several occasions including the talks given on October 8, 1960 and on February 22, 1962 he pointed out that merely committing to memory the

propositions from preceding classics of foreign countries was not the way to contribute to the Korean revolution and that students should study in depth Kim Il Sung's works which gave answers to all the problems—political, military, economic and cultural—arising in the revolution and construction in the present era.

He said that students should set the target of making excerpts from all the works contained in *Kim Il Sung's Selected Works* during the first and second years and studying them again in combination with their major fields of study in the third and fourth years and that they should make a detailed plan for each year to this end.

On the basis of this he helped them study the works in a substantial way.

In December 1960 and on several other occasions Kim Jong Il familiarized himself with the studying of the works by students and told them to study their full texts, understand the quintessence and general idea of the works and, on this basis, grasp their ideological and theoretical contents. He informed the students in time of the instructions Kim Il Sung gave at important meetings, including WPK Congress or plenary meeting of the WPK Central Committee, and during his on-site guidance.

He regarded it as a major method of studying the WPK's policies to read its newspaper and ensured that students established a climate of reading it every day.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to the education of the students in the revolutionary traditions, class awareness and anti-revisionism.

Under his guidance education in the revolutionary traditions was intensified among students in various forms and by various methods, so as to encourage them to learn the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities in depth and emulate the loyalty to the leader of the anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters and their indomitable revolutionary spirit. Great efforts were directed to education in class awareness and anti-revisionism, thus leading students to maintain the working-class stand and revolutionary principles at any adversity and live a revolutionary life all the time.

Kim Jong Il also led students to acquire a high level of scientific knowledge.

In his talks to the students on September 7 and November 16, 1960 he emphasized that the major task of students was to study hard and that they should be always mindful of their task and study diligently saving every second and every minute.

To establish a revolutionary climate of studying among students he made

sure that WPK and DYL organizations focused on their studying and they gave full rein to collectivism in their study effort. He took concrete measures for the students who were lagging behind others to be given individual assistance.

To encourage students to acquire diversified and profound knowledge Kim Jong Il, in March 1961, kindled the flames of the movement to read 10 000 pages of books a year.

He said that he had wracked his brains for ways to raise students' enthusiasm for studying and make them acquire wide-ranging and rich knowledge during their university days, and in this course he had reached a conclusion that the movement to read 10 000 pages of books a year should be launched among them.

It was a mass-based movement for encouraging students to study Kim Il Sung's works in a systematic and comprehensive way and read as many books as possible on various fields as well as their major fields of study. It was aimed at training students as revolutionary talents who were equipped firmly with the revolutionary world outlook and possessed of a profound knowledge on their major fields of study.

To push ahead with this movement Kim Jong Il ensured that the WPK and DYL organizations intensified political work among students and led them to overcome formalistic tendencies that had been revealing in the movement. He also saw to it that this movement continued during the internship period and secondment. On his suggestion a song about this movement was created and disseminated to fan their enthusiasm for study.

Kim Jong Il paid attention to training students into revolutionary talents prepared both theoretically and practically.

He led them to conduct socio-political activities during their after-school hours and vacations and consolidate the knowledge they had acquired in the university and train themselves in a revolutionary way during internship and through participation in socialist construction.

From April 21 to May 8, 1961 he took part in the production process at the Pyongyang Textile Machinery Manufactory (the present Pyongyang Textile Machinery Factory). During this period Kim Jong Il encouraged his fellow students to master skills of operating machines, acquire an in-depth knowledge of how to manage the socialist economy, learn from the revolutionary spirit, sense of organization and discipline possessed by the working class and conduct brisk socio-political activities among workers. He himself handled lathe No. 26, showing an example of good maintenance of equipment and inspiring the workers to launch a model machine movement.

From May 15 to June 4, 1961 he took part in a project to widen a road between Wasan-dong and Ryongsong. He was in the vanguard of the most painstaking labour and led students to train themselves organizationally, ideologically and physically through labour.

Kim Jong Il pushed ahead with the work to make students well-versed in the military.

He directed attention to having students take part in military training earnestly with a correct viewpoint on war.

He disclosed the reactionary nature of bourgeois pacifism advocated by modern revisionists and explained the WPK's principled attitude towards war. Then he stressed that students should be fully prepared for battles so as to defeat the US imperialists at one blow and achieve the cause of national reunification should they ignite a war of aggression recklessly. And on several occasions he gave instructions that students should take part in military training with correct attitude towards it and acquire military knowledge for practical use.

During military manoeuvres he joined at Oun-dong, Ryongsong District, Pyongyang from mid-August to early October, 1962 Kim Jong Il directed his great efforts to making his fellow student trainees fully prepared militarily.

Drillmasters and his fellow trainees advised him to serve on the battalion's political department. But he participated in military drills and followed daily routine as required by military rules and regulations together with other trainees. He always took the lead in all kinds of drills including tactical and firing training, setting personal examples.

In particular, he deeply studied the Juche-based military ideas and tactics evolved by Kim Il Sung and analyzed biographies and war experiences of famous generals of Korea and other countries and books on military science, in the course of which he developed art of command that suited the country's actual conditions and the characteristics of modern warfare.

He also taught students original tactics created by Kim Il Sung and the methods of applying them and led them to take an active part in tactical training and learn abundant military knowledge and ability to command that were applicable in real battles. His efforts were also directed to making all the trainees skilfully handle various types of weapons and possess excellent marksmanship and to establishing strict army discipline among them.

Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into training students into revolutionaries through organizational life.

Kim Jong Il joined the WPK on July 22, 1961. Since then he worked more

energetically among students with full awareness of the duties of a WPK member and high sense of his mission for the WPK and the revolution.

He led Party cells of students to push ahead with the work to achieve ideological and volitional unity based on Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology.

In September 1962 he convened a Party cell meeting for this purpose at military camp in Oun-dong and led the meeting to progress on a high political and ideological level. At the meeting he made a concluding speech titled, *Let Us Consolidate the Ideological and Volitional Cohesion and Unity of Party Members Based on the Leader's Revolutionary Ideology*.

In the speech he said:

“Unity and cohesion of a working-class Party should be based on one and only ideology, that is, the ideology of its leader. A party without this unity and cohesion is, in fact, not a party but no more than a mob.

“Our Party must be united on the basis of the great revolutionary ideology of Comrade Kim Il Sung, its founder and leader.”

Kim Jong Il ensured that revolutionary organizational life was intensified among students.

He led through his personal examples WPK-member students to participate in organizational life in good faith with right viewpoint on the WPK organizations, and ensured that the WPK and DYL organizations of students intensified organizational life among their members.

Kim Jong Il paid efforts to improving education at the university.

He directed his primary attention to improving the content and methods of education at university proceeding from the Juche-oriented standpoint.

He said that solving all the problems arising in education as demanded by the Korean revolution and in the interests of the Korean people was establishing the Juche principle in the educational work.

He pointed out that to this end main stress should be placed on teaching what were Korean—the revolutionary ideology of Kim Il Sung, WPK policies, and history and geography of Korea—and in case of foreign ones, they should be taught in such a way that they could be applied in the Korean revolution.

Kim Jong Il exerted himself to improve the content of education from the standpoint of Juche.

In his early days at university dogmatism and sycophancy were predominant in the structural system and content of political economy. With a keen insight into this Kim Jong Il, in December 1960, initiated compiling a new textbook of political economy that suited the reality of Korea and clarified

matters of principle in the compilation in September 1961 and December 1962.

He advised that the system and content of the new textbook should be based on the ideas and theories of Kim Il Sung, his report to the Fourth Congress of the WPK in particular. Explaining that the textbook should be compiled based on the Juche idea and the mass line, he stressed that it should deal in an all-round way with all the issues resolved by Kim Il Sung in an original way—the WPK’s policy on carrying out cooperativization of agriculture prior to socialist industrialization, the Chollima movement as a general line of socialist construction, relations between speed and balance in the economic development and combination of political and moral incentives and material ones to labour.

Kim Jong Il also paid close attention to putting to rights the history of Korea starting from the Juche-oriented viewpoint.

Until the early 1960s the history of Korea remained distorted in many parts and was taught in schools as it was.

Noting that the study of the history of Korea could not be put into right track without getting rid of sycophantic and dogmatic way of thinking, Kim Jong Il elucidated that Juche-oriented approach must be established in studying and analyzing such historical matters as the existence of the Old Stone Age and formation of slave-owning states in Korea, unification of the three kingdoms, the 1884 Kapsin coup and the problem related with the origin of the Korean nation.

Kim Jong Il focused on examining from the Juche-oriented point of view the theory of unification of the three kingdoms by Silla, which had thus far been regarded as a *fait accompli* in academic circles, and correctly resolving the problem of the formation of a unified state in Korea.

In *On Re-examining the Issue the Unification of Three Kingdoms* he made public on October 29, 1960 he proved the impropriety of the theory of the unification of the three kingdoms by Silla and the doctrine of orthodoxy of Silla.

Kim Jong Il laid emphasis on improving the educational content of philosophy.

He regarded defining the correct mission and objective of philosophy as an issue of vital importance in correcting the structural system and content of philosophy and putting the subject on a scientific footing.

Explaining that because cognitive and practical activities are performed by man, they can be conducted in a correct way when they are aimed at carving out his destiny, he noted that if viewed from this angle, the mission of

philosophy is to indicate the ways to shape man's destiny rather than to serve the practice.

Besides, Kim Jong Il threw fresh light on the ways to improve the educational content of the social subjects, including laws, literature and linguistics, from the Juche-oriented standpoint while paying much concern to upgrading the educational content of natural sciences in keeping with the development trend of modern science and technology.

His attention was directed also to closely combining theory and practice in education so as to foster the practical ability of students.

Recognizing the great significance of specialized training, Kim Jong Il elucidated in late February 1963 matters of principle in ensuring its success and paid heed to its progress.

He saw to it that the tendency to put the stress only on the theoretical education was done away with in the education of natural sciences and scrupulous preparations and planning for experiment were made so that students could consolidate what they had learnt at university.

In his talks to students in March 1961 and September 1962 he emphasized the importance of composition and said that only when they practised writing a lot during their university days could they cultivate the ability to analyze and generalize the reality, heighten their zeal for studying and be good at writing various types such as scientific thesis, report and presentations after graduation. He helped students produce Juche-based and articulate articles, sometimes selecting titles of theses for them, advising them on the direction of writing and structural planning and polishing what they had written.

As seen above Kim Jong Il enjoyed boundless respect and trust of the people, service personnel, youth and students for his outstanding wisdom and leadership ability, noble virtues and immortal exploits he performed for the WPK and the people.

CHAPTER 3. ESTABLISHING THE WPK'S MONOLITHIC IDEOLOGICAL SYSTEM AND COMMENCING SONGUN POLITICS

(April 1964-February 1974)

1. STARTING TO WORK AT THE CENTRAL COMMITTEE OF THE WPK AND REVIEWING THE PRECEDING REVOLUTIONARY IDEOLOGY OF THE WORKING CLASS

After graduating from Kim Il Sung University, Kim Jong Il started to work at the Central Committee of the WPK.

Kim Il Sung wanted him to accumulate rich experience for leading the WPK and the revolution and carry forward the revolutionary cause of Juche in its pure form by dealing with WPK and state affairs including various fields of the revolution and construction at the Central Committee of the WPK, the General Staff of the Korean revolution.

True to Kim Il Sung's intention, Kim Jong Il decided to work at the WPK Central Committee in order to develop the WPK into the eternal party of Kim Il Sung and a revolutionary party of the Juche type and assist the former in his work close to him.

He was appointed on the WPK Central Committee on April 1, 1964. The first thing he did at the WPK Central Committee was to grasp the state of overall Party and national affairs—from the WPK Central Committee itself to local WPK organizations, the military, the economy, culture, youth league and all other sectors. For him, it was not a simple study, but a process of creative and innovative thinking and exploration for analyzing the state of all sectors and advancing socialist construction in line with Kim Il Sung's intentions and plans. During this period he was not cooped up in his office, but always on on-site guidance tours.

Then he started to work at the WPK Central Committee on June 19, 1964.

On June 20, he said to officials: As I was appointed by the leader to work at the Party Central Committee yesterday, I feel quite moved and at the same time feel a greater sense of responsibility for the Party and revolution; now I am firmly determined to further strengthen the Party as intended by the leader.

Having started as an instructor, he was promoted to a section chief, a deputy department head in September 1970, a department head in July 1973 and a secretary in September the same year and elected a member of the WPK Central Committee in October 1972.

From the first days when he started to work at the WPK Central Committee, Kim Jong Il paid primary attention to fixing a correct major line in WPK's work and its activities.

In his talk titled, *Let Us Develop Our Party into the Party of Comrade Kim Il Sung for Ever*, given to officials of the WPK Central Committee on June 20, 1964, he scientifically clarified the major line in the WPK's work and activities.

Kim Jong Il said:

“The major line in our Party's work and activities is to thoroughly establish the leader's ideological system throughout the Party. Establishing his ideological system throughout the Party is a fundamental principle of the building and activities of our Party and the most important undertaking that should be consistently held fast to as long as our Party exists and acts.”

He said that in order to establish the major line thoroughly in the WPK's work and activities it was essential to implement Kim Il Sung's instructions to the letter, consolidate the unity and cohesion of the WPK to be rock-solid, radically enhance the work system and method of the WPK and intensify guidance over the organizational life of the WPK members.

Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into setting up a correct major line in the WPK's work.

Under his guidance a network of disseminating Kim Il Sung's instructions was set up across the WPK and a revolutionary climate of implementing his instructions without fail prevailed across the WPK.

On several occasions including April 1 and 6, 1964, he said to officials of the WPK Central Committee that officials of the WPK Central Committee should be exemplary in faithfully supporting Kim Il Sung and make it a central task in the WPK's work to implement his instructions to the letter.

In 1964 and the following year Kim Jong Il gave on-site guidance to

various provinces and the sector of art and literature and the press to acquaint himself with how Party work was carried on there. On the basis of this he ensured that efforts were concentrated on establishing a well-knit network of correctly disseminating Kim Il Sung's instructions and a revolutionary climate of carrying out them unconditionally across the Party.

Meanwhile, Kim Jong Il paid attention to improving the method and style of the WPK's work and making it work with people as intended by Kim Il Sung.

Having created Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method and led officials to apply them to Party work, Kim Il Sung, at the Tenth Plenary Meeting of the Fourth Central Committee of the WPK in December 1964, stressed the need again for officials to improve their method and style of work.

However, some WPK officials failed to do away with formalistic method and style of work.

In his talk titled, *Let Us Make Party Work Thorough Work with People*, to officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 8, 1965, Kim Jong Il set forth principles in turning the WPK's work into work with people by improving the method and style of work.

After he started his work at the WPK Central Committee, Kim Jong Il set down to reviewing the preceding revolutionary ideology of the working class through his energetic ideological and theoretical activities.

Having decided to make an all-round analysis and review of the preceding revolutionary ideology of the working class from the Juche-oriented standpoint, he started this work with social scientists in May 1966.

In his talk titled, *On Correctly Analyzing and Reviewing the History of the Preceding Revolutionary Ideology of the Working Class*, to social scientists on May 20, June 17 and September 30, 1966, he clarified the matters of principle in studying Marxist-Leninist classics.

He said that the main purpose for making a comprehensive analysis and review of Marxism-Leninism was to clarify the historical position of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideas in the human history of ideology and their originality, and referred to the need to analyze and evaluate the merits and limitations of Marxism-Leninism from the Juche-oriented standpoint.

He pointed out where the main emphasis should be put in studying the preceding classics.

In studying and analyzing the works of Marx and Engels, consideration should be given to the requirements of the times and social basis when Marxism was evolved, the demands and level of the revolutionary struggle of

the working class represented by the ideology, and the characteristics of the course of its evolution and development. And, points to be taken into account in studying the works of Lenin were: first, that Leninism was a theory that analyzed the historical environment of the imperialist era and reflected the demands of a revolutionary struggle in the initial period when the working class seized the power; second, that Lenin, like Marx and Engels, had not experienced the construction of socialism and communism; and, third, that it was difficult to distinguish between Marxism and Leninism in terms of their qualitative features.

Kim Jong Il selected about 30 works from among Marxist-Leninist classics for the study and review of the preceding ideology of the working class, and they included *Communist Manifesto*, *The Capital*, *Dialectics of Nature*, *Anti-Duhring*, *Philosophical Notebooks*, *Materialism and Empirio-Criticism*, *The State and Revolution* and *On the Fundamentals of Leninism*.

He set questions on extensive fields ranging from the fundamental principles and methodologies on which the preceding theories were based to the construction of socialism and communism, and made a profound study of Marxist-Leninist classics from an anatomical point of view, having earnest discussions and talks with social scientists on scores of occasions. In this course he ascertained the essence and limitations of the preceding theories and gave answers to many problems which had remained unsolved.

When he concluded the enormous undertaking of analyzing and reviewing the history of the preceding revolutionary ideology of the working class on July 1, 1969, he noted that Marxism-Leninism could not give correct answers to the theoretical and practical problems arising in the revolutionary struggle of the masses of the people and in the building of socialism and communism owing to its historical limitations and ideological and theoretical immaturity and that the Juche idea, Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology, was the sole guiding ideology for the revolution and construction in the present era.

Saying that Kim Il Sung's ideology, the guiding ideology of the present era, could not be called a creative application of Marxism-Leninism to the realities of Korea or a version of Marxism-Leninism of the present era, he stressed that his ideology was a new and original one which could be named only after him.

Through his ideological and theoretical activities for reviewing the history of the preceding revolutionary ideology of the working class Kim Jong Il made ideological and theoretical preparations for formulating Kim Il Sung's ideology in a scientific way.

Later, the Rules of the WPK, amended and supplemented at its Fifth Congress, stipulated that the Juche idea authored by Kim Il Sung was its guiding ideology.

2. ESTABLISHING THE WPK'S MONOLITHIC IDEOLOGICAL SYSTEM

While fixing a correct major line in the WPK's work and activities, Kim Jong Il wisely led the struggle to establish the WPK's monolithic ideological system.

Saying to officials of the WPK Central Committee that he had come to a firm conclusion that it was essential to establish the WPK's monolithic ideological system within the Party, he noted: The need to set up the Party's ideological system has been stressed on many occasions; by the Party's ideological system we mean the Party's monolithic ideological system, that is, the leader's ideological system in the true sense of the word.

Kim Jong Il made great efforts to ensure that the 15th Plenary Meeting of the Fourth Central Committee of the WPK served as a major occasion for bringing about a turn in establishing the WPK's monolithic ideological system across the WPK.

Kim Jong Il said:

“The recent 15th Plenary Meeting of the Fourth Party Central Committee was a historic event of great importance in the struggle of our Party to establish the Party's monolithic ideological system and strengthen the unity and cohesion of Party ranks based on the revolutionary idea of the leader.”

Kim Jong Il paid special attention to briskly conducting education in the WPK's monolithic ideology on a new, higher level among the WPK members and other working people.

In August 1967 he underlined the need to solidify the system for correctly and promptly conveying Kim Il Sung's instructions to the WPK organizations at all levels from its Central Committee to grass-roots organizations.

In December 1967 he adopted concrete measures to publish large numbers of Kim Il Sung's works including *Kim Il Sung's Selected Works*, and books dedicated to systematizing his revolutionary ideas on the revolution and

construction on a scientific and theoretical basis. He guided the publication of the books, sometimes examining their contents.

Under his guidance bases for the education in the WPK's monolithic ideology were laid out well so as to conduct this education in a substantial way.

In late April 1968 Kim Jong Il set forth the policy of renaming the halls for studying the history of the WPK the halls for studying the history of Comrade Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities as required by the developing realities and ensured that new pictorial records of the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities (in 65 boards) were made for putting up in the halls in 1969. The compilation of the new pictorial records raised the education in the WPK's monolithic ideology onto a higher level.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that monuments to Kim Il Sung's on-site instructions and revolutionary museums were erected in the units honoured with his on-site guidance as bases for the education in the WPK's monolithic ideology so as to intensify the education through them.

While looking round the revolutionary battle sites in Ryanggang Province in July 1968 and August the following year, he set forth it as a fundamental principle to lay out the revolutionary battle sites and historic places with Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities as the main content and specified the problems arising in turning the revolutionary battle sites and historic places in Pochonbo, Samjiyon, Phophyong and other areas in Ryanggang Province as bases for the education in revolutionary traditions and intensifying the education through them.

Thus excellent bases were set up for substantial education in the WPK's monolithic ideology.

Kim Jong Il also directed great efforts to consolidating the unity and cohesion of the WPK centred around Kim Il Sung and establishing his monolithic leadership system.

In a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee in May 1967 he stressed the need for officials and other WPK members to regard it as their foremost task to achieve the ideological and volitional unity and cohesion of the WPK and energetically led them to this end.

Under his concern active measures were taken to consolidate the WPK organizations, enhance their fighting efficiency, intensify organizational life of WPK members and admit into the WPK those progressive elements of the new generations who worked devotedly at their posts.

In this way the ranks of the WPK were built up into the ranks of those who supported only the ideology and leadership of Kim Il Sung with a single heart

and the unity and cohesion of the WPK was strengthened than ever before. A well-organized work system and order were established in the WPK in which all its work was subordinated to realizing Kim Il Sung's monolithic leadership and a rigid discipline was set up under which administrative and economic work was conducted in accordance with his instructions.

Thanks to Kim Jong Il's wise leadership over the effort to establish the WPK's monolithic ideological system a great progress was brought about in developing the WPK into the party of Kim Il Sung and achieving the unity and cohesion of the WPK centred on him and based on the Juche idea.

The Fifth Congress of the WPK held in November 1970 proudly summed up the historic successes it had gained in establishing its monolithic ideological system and, on this basis, consolidating its unity and cohesion.

3. IMPLEMENTING THE SELF-DEFENSIVE MILITARY LINE OF THE WPK AND COMMENCING SONGUN POLITICS

Entering the latter half of the 1960s Kim Jong Il wisely led the effort to strengthen the country's defence capabilities in conformity with the requirements of the developing revolution and prevailing situation, and he started his epoch-making Songun politics in the late 1960s.

Strengthening the country's defence capabilities was a requisite for smashing the imperialists' moves to unleash a war and building socialism more successfully. It was of particular importance in view of the complicated situation in the latter half of the 1960s, when the US moves to ignite a new war against the DPRK became more pronounced with each passing day.

To cope with the prevailing situation, Kim Il Sung convened a conference of the WPK in October 1966, at which he defined it as a strategic line of the WPK to simultaneously develop economic construction and defence upbuilding and stressed the need to implement the line to the letter.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the struggle to carry out the self-defensive military line of the WPK as required by the line of simultaneously developing economic construction and defence upbuilding.

In a talk, *Let Us Make Full Preparations to Mobilize for Battle and Oppose the US Imperialists' Moves to Provoke a War*, given to officials of

the WPK Central Committee on February 2, 1968 and on several other occasions he advanced the task of consolidating the country's defence capabilities by thoroughly implementing the self-defensive military line of the WPK.

He said:

“We should have great pride and the confidence to continue with the implementation of the self-defensive military line of our Party, and thereby strengthen the defensive power of the country still further, and if the enemy dares to invade us, we should fight bravely, thereby once again demonstrating to the whole world the invincible might of the heroic Korean people.”

Kim Jong Il paid primary attention to implementing the policies of making the entire army a cadre army and a modern army to the letter so as to strengthen it to an invincible revolutionary army.

Since his first visit to Seoul Ryu Kyong Su Guards 105th Tank Division of the KPA on August 25, 1960, he inspected KPA units on hundreds of occasions till the late 1960s. In this course he trained the KPA to be a vanguard detachment and model of the Songun revolution and developed his Songun-based revolutionary leadership onto a new high, thus laying a firm foundation for administering Songun politics.

In his talk titled, *The People's Army Should Be a Vanguard Detachment of the Revolution Boundlessly Faithful to the Great Leader and the Workers' Party of Korea*, given to a commanding officer of the General Staff of the KPA on June 23, 1964, he said that it was his firm determination and will to train the KPA to be a vanguard detachment of the revolution unfailingly faithful to Kim Il Sung and the WPK and that to this end the commanding officers of the army should be the first to be boundlessly loyal to him and the WPK.

Kim Jong Il also paid close attention to enhancing military education.

When he gave on-site guidance at a military academy on several occasions between April and May 1966, he stressed that the academy should continue to strive to train its cadets as officers faithful to Kim Il Sung and to be exemplary in organizing their daily routine and training its cadets. Afterwards, he visited other military academies so as to generalize promptly among military academies at all levels the experience gained by the former in its military training and administration.

When he visited the then Kim Il Sung Military Academy on February 8, 1973, he urged the academy to establish the Party's monolithic ideological

system in it more strictly and further improve the education of its cadets, and thus train a larger number of competent officers who were faithful to the WPK and the leader.

Kim Jong Il also directed great efforts to making the KPA a modern army.

To this end, he ensured that combat training was intensified among service personnel.

While guiding the training at many KPA units, including air-force subunits on October 18, 1964 and in 1966, naval units on the west and east coasts in May 1965 and August the following year, a tank subunit on the forefront across Chol Pass in May 1965 and a coast artillery company on the east coast in July 1967, he saw to it that they implemented their training programmes without fail and put the main emphasis in combat training on imparting the Juche-oriented tactics to the service personnel.

Kim Jong Il led the work to modernize the military hardware of the KPA as suited to the actual conditions of the country and the physical features of the Korean people.

He gave on-site guidance at a munitions factory on several occasions from 1964 to 1970 and stressed that it should produce weapons that were suited to the physical features of Koreans. And when he inspected another munitions factory in August 1967 he led it to key its products into the actual conditions of the country, most of whose territory is mountainous.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to setting up an all-people defence system by stepping up arming all the people and fortifying the whole country.

On January 23, 1967 he pointed out the importance of making the whole country an impregnable fortress.

Measures were taken to expand the ranks of the Worker-Peasant Red Guards, improve its command system and raise its military and technical level to that of the KPA by intensifying its military training.

While visiting the places of military importance on the east and west coasts, Kim Jong Il stressed the need to build strong defence positions by using the geographical features of the areas.

The 1960s was a period when Kim Jong Il, through his Songun-based revolutionary leadership, gained influence over the KPA to realize his politico-ideological leadership of it and exercise the command of its military operations, and laid foundations for administering his Songun politics.

Kim Jong Il started his Songun politics in the late 1960s. During this period he showed his unexcelled political and military qualifications and performed

imperishable exploits in army building and various other fields of the revolution and construction, for which he commanded the absolute trust and respect of the Party, people and service personnel of Korea. The anti-Japanese revolutionary veterans and commanding officers of the KPA felt his great personality through their life experience and regarded him not only as their leader but also the Supreme Commander of the KPA.

Later, recollecting those days, he said that Kim Il Sung had entrusted him with the task of directly leading the affairs of the WPK and the KPA from the period between the late 1960s and early 1970s.

He said to the commanding officers of the KPA that he intended to pay more attention to the affairs of the KPA and that he was convinced that they would strive together with him to put Kim Il Sung's intentions into reality.

He began his Songun politics with the effort to realize his political and military leadership throughout the KPA.

With an enlarged meeting of the Fourth Plenary Meeting of the Fourth KPA Committee of the WPK held in January 1969 as a momentum, Kim Jong Il's WPK-based leadership, that is, political leadership, was established in an all-round way across the KPA.

Kim Jong Il paid great efforts to enhancing the role of the WPK organizations and other political organs in the KPA and intensifying the education in the WPK's monolithic ideology, true to Kim Il Sung's instructions at the meeting.

In a talk titled, *On Enhancing the Role of Party Organizations and Political Organs in the People's Army*, given to officials of the WPK Central Committee and the General Political Bureau of the KPA on January 19, 1969, Kim Jong Il advanced important tasks for enhancing the functions and role of the WPK organizations and other political organs in the KPA.

He ensured that the ranks of political officers of the KPA were fortified and the newly-instituted system of political commissar and political instructor fully paid off. Meanwhile, he took measures to improve the training of reserve political officers and give refresher courses to on-duty political officers at regular educational institutions, and met many political officers on several occasions including in October 1972 and taught them how to conduct efficient political work.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the education in the WPK's monolithic ideology was drastically intensified in the KPA.

He paid primary attention to conducting briskly the education through Kim Il Sung's exploits in army building.

On June 25, 1969 and several other occasions he gave instructions on briskly conducting in the KPA the education through Kim Il Sung's exploits in army building.

Later he sent the marshal's uniform worn by Kim Il Sung and other historic relics to the Fatherland Liberation War Museum which had been newly built on the site where the Supreme Headquarters of the KPA had been located during the Fatherland Liberation War. In July 1971, two months after the inauguration of the museum, he visited the Fatherland Liberation War Revolutionary Site and gave detailed instructions on important matters arising in the education in the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities.

Under his meticulous guidance the KPA conducted brisk education in the WPK's monolithic ideology putting the main emphasis on the education through Kim Il Sung's exploits in army building.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the KPA conducted all forms of ideological education in close combination with that in loyalty to the leader.

During his inspection of the KPA units he stressed the need to intensify education of the service personnel so that they would learn from the loyalty of the anti-Japanese revolutionary forerunners to Kim Il Sung. At the same time he ensured that the KPA conducted education in the WPK's policies, revolutionary traditions and class consciousness in a substantial manner and directed great efforts to imbuing the service personnel with a right view on war as required by the prevailing tense situation.

Kim Jong Il firmly secured the command of the KPA's military operations.

Having showed close concern over the affairs of the General Staff of the KPA since long before, he skilfully commanded several military operations of the KPA through its General Staff in the late 1960s.

He victoriously led the operations to capture the US armed spy ship *Pueblo* in January 1968 and the ensuing fierce showdown with the enemy.

On January 23, 1968, the US spy ship intruded deep into the territorial waters of the DPRK committing acts of espionage.

On receiving a report of the KPA General Staff that an unidentifiable ship had intruded deep into the sea off Wonsan, he ordered it to check the ship immediately. Explaining that the plan for capturing the ship should anticipate its resistance or flight, he advised the officers of the KPA General Staff how to counter the case.

The capture of the spy ship by the Navy of the WPA was a legitimate self-defensive measure of the DPRK and a merciless punishment for invaders.

However, the United States, clamouring for "retaliation," massed huge

armed forces around the Korean peninsula, driving the situation to the brink of war.

When the situation came to such a pass, Kim Il Sung asked Kim Jong Il to decide how he would deal with the *Pueblo* if he was the Supreme Commander.

Kim Jong Il answered in a determined voice: I will not release the crew of the *Pueblo* unless the Americans submit a letter of surrender; and since the ship is our spoils, I will not return it even if they present a letter of surrender to us; I will have the US armed spy ship, which has been captured by our People's Army, displayed at an exhibition to tell posterity that this is the spy ship we seized from the Americans.

On January 24, 1968, he visited the then Ministry of National Defence. On receiving the situation report from an official concerned, he said that there was no knowing to what limit the United States might go with the capture of the ship as an excuse and it might start even a war and that the KPA should be fully prepared for any enemy moves. Then he presented operational plans for forestalling the enemy's "retaliatory" manoeuvres.

In pursuance of his operational plans all the units of the KPA and the Worker-Peasant Red Guards assumed full combat readiness and all the people pushed ahead with production and construction, each with a rifle in one hand and a sickle or a hammer in the other. The DPRK's mass media engaged in intensive reporting campaigns to lay bare the US brigandish moves for aggression before the world, throwing the enemy onto the defensive. Against this as a background several rounds of negotiations were held at Panmunjom between the DPRK and the United States. Finally, the United States had no option other than to submit a letter of apology, virtually a letter of surrender, which meant a victory on the part of the Korean army and people in their showdown with the United States.

Kim Jong Il's brilliant commandership was also demonstrated in the EC-121 incident.

Far from drawing a lesson from its disgraceful defeat in the *Pueblo* incident, the United States sent a spy plane EC-121 several times into the territorial airspace of the DPRK over the East Sea of Korea on reconnaissance missions.

On March 23, 1969 Kim Il Sung ordered the KPA to shoot down the plane.

That day Kim Jong Il said to a commanding officer of the KPA that the enemy spy plane should be disposed of with planes as was instructed by Kim Il Sung and gave his opinions on what kinds of planes should be scrambled for the operation and what tactics they should apply.

On April 15, 1969, pilots of the Air Force of the KPA shot down the spy plane over the sea together with its 30-odd crew.

As seen above, Kim Jong Il provided a basic guarantee for carrying forward and steadily developing Kim Il Sung's Songun-based revolutionary leadership by pursuing the original Songun politics.

4. FOR A REVOLUTIONARY TURN IN ART AND LITERATURE AND PUBLICATION OF *ON THE ART OF THE CINEMA*

By sagaciously leading the effort to effect a revolution in art and literature, Kim Jong Il ushered in a great heyday of the Juche-oriented arts.

An enlarged meeting of the Political Bureau of the WPK Central Committee was held in presence of Kim Il Sung on December 8, 1964 at the Korean Film Studio. The meeting authorized Kim Jong Il to take charge of the art and literary sector.

In a talk titled, *On Effecting a Revolution in the Art and Literary Sector*, given to officials of the WPK Central Committee on March 3, 1965 and in a talk to officials of the WPK Central Committee on December 11, 1965 and in October the following year, Kim Jong Il put forward a policy of ushering in a new socialist renaissance by conducting a revolution in art and literature.

Kim Jong Il said:

“In order to create a model of the revolutionary art and literature in the 20th century, we need to effect a sweeping revolution in the art and literary sector. By conducting a sweeping revolution in the art and literary sector we will usher in a renaissance in our country. While studying the world trend of development of art and literature these days I have made up my mind to effect a new socialist renaissance by bringing about a revolution in art and literature in our country.”

Making a revolution in art and literature and effecting a new socialist renaissance meant building throughout the fields of art and literature a new kind of art and literature of the Korean style, a genuine Juche-oriented art and literature, that conformed with the requirements of the times and the aspirations of the masses of the people.

In effecting a revolution in art and literature Kim Jong Il directed primary

efforts to adapting to the cinema and other various artistic and literary forms the works Kim Il Sung had created during the anti-Japanese struggle.

He resolved to achieve a breakthrough in the revolution in art and literature by giving priority to the cinematic art.

He paid special attention to building up the ranks of the film artists, who were direct undertakers of the revolution in the cinematic art, and enhancing their political and professional qualifications.

Under his guidance the film artists held a study session of Kim Il Sung's ideas on art and literature on a regular footing. He chaired many meetings in the sector of the cinematic art, at which he stressed the need for film artists to train themselves through organizational life and transform themselves along revolutionary and working-class lines through their creative endeavours. He ensured that they intensified training in acting and art of narration and study of aesthetic theories and took part in artistry presentations and performances on a regular basis.

Then Kim Jong Il buckled down to the work to effecting a revolutionary turn in film making.

To this end he organized the Paektusan Production Company on February 26, 1967 and led it to produce films adapted from the reminiscences of the anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters, including *Comrades, Take This Rifle*, and other revolutionary masterpieces like *Five Guerrilla Brothers*. In the course of this the production company accumulated rich experiences in creating works with the revolutionary traditions as the theme.

On the basis of these preparations, in April 1968 Kim Jong Il tasked the creative workers in the film-making sector with adapting to the screen *The Sea of Blood*, a classic work produced by Kim Il Sung during the anti-Japanese struggle. He clarified the principles to be observed in this work—remaining faithful to the original in adaptation and at the same time sustaining the characteristic features of the cinematic art—and gave several rounds of guidance to the adaptation project. Under his guidance the creative workers in the film-making sector produced the film *The Sea of Blood* with a success and then adapted *The Fate of a Self-Defence Corps Man* to the screen in only 40 days, thus kindling the flames of speed campaign in the film-making sector. Following this *The Flower Girl* was also adapted to the cinema splendidly.

In the course of adapting Kim Il Sung's productions to the cinema, new and well-ordered systems of conducting creative work and guiding it were established.

In a talk titled, *Let Us Produce a Larger Number of Revolutionary Films*

Which Reflect the Socialist Reality, given to scriptwriters and directors on June 18, 1970, Kim Jong Il advanced the task of creating a larger number of films with the socialist reality as the theme which would contribute to transforming the whole society on revolutionary and working-class patterns, and gave answers to the theoretical and practical problems arising in implementing the task. He personally selected seeds for such works and provided scrupulous guidance to the creation of each film. As a result, scores of excellent feature films including *The Flourishing Village* were produced in 1970 alone.

Meanwhile, fine documentary films dealing mainly with the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities and the WPK's history were produced and remarkable progress was made in creating science films and children's films.

Following the revolution in the cinematic art, Kim Jong Il focused on overhauling the art of opera.

For doing away with the outdated pattern lingering in the field of the operatic art and creating innovations, he put forward the policy of bringing about a revolution in opera in September 1969. He set it as the main task of the revolution in the art of opera to make operatic art modern and popular on the basis of its revolutionary content and national form. He also presented several new principles for producing operas—making the songs, a basic means of depiction in opera, stanzaic, introducing the *pangchang* (off-stage singing), ensuring that dancing was appropriate to the drama and introducing a three-dimensional revolving stage that changed continuously with the development of the plot.

In March 1971 he gave the officials and creative workers in the sector of art and literature the task of adapting the revolutionary masterpiece *The Sea of Blood* and, in the course of this, making a revolution in opera. He saw to it that a Korean-style libretto was written in such a way that it would not undermine in the least the profound ideological content of the original work, before undertaking its adaptation. Then he formed a team with competent creative workers and artists selected from the capital and provinces.

During the days when the opera was created Kim Jong Il often found himself among the creative workers and artists, leading them to apply the principles of creating opera of the Korean style in all the creative endeavours ranging from seed selection, method of its delineation, words and melodies of songs, dance to stage art. In this course the outmoded system of creation was abolished and a new one was established whereby the overall processes of creating the opera were put under the collective guidance of the WPK committee

concerned so that all efforts could be focused on the creation of the opera.

The revolutionary opera *The Sea of Blood* was produced in July 1971, four months after its creation had started.

The production of the revolutionary opera was recorded in the history of the development of the art of opera as the starting point of the creation of *Sea of Blood*-style operas.

After the production of the opera a dynamic campaign was launched to create a series of revolutionary operas with it as the model.

In a talk to officials in the sector of art and literature on October 28, 1971, Kim Jong Il advanced the task of creating revolutionary operas of high ideological and artistic qualities by applying the principles for creating *Sea of Blood*-style operas. Subsequently, he guided the creation of revolutionary operas *A True Daughter of the Party*, *Tell O Forest*, *The Flower Girl* and *The Song of Mt. Kungang*.

Under his energetic guidance five major revolutionary operas were produced in no less than a year.

Following the creation of the five revolutionary operas many operas including *The Fate of a Self-Defence Corps Man* were produced one after another, consolidating the success gained in the revolution in opera.

Kim Jong Il viewed producing works portraying Kim Il Sung as the most important task in creating artistic and literary works, and directed primary efforts to it.

In a talk titled, *On Developing a New Type of Revolutionary Literature*, given to the chairman of the Central Committee of the Writers Union of Korea on February 7, 1966 Kim Jong Il set forth the task of developing a new type of revolutionary literature, that was devoted to portraying the leader, in reflection of the requirements of the times and developing revolution and the aspirations of the people and writers.

Advancing a militant slogan, **“Let us develop a new type of revolutionary literature!”** he explained that by a new type of revolutionary literature he meant a literature devoted to portraying the leader.

He clarified ways for solving theoretical and practical problems arising in producing literary works portraying the leader—creating a large number of revolutionary masterpieces unfolding a full picture of the revolutionary career of the leader as a great thinker and theoretician, an iron-willed and ever-victorious brilliant commander and a great man, extending the scope of a campaign for the purpose on a gradual basis starting from a certain preparatory stage, setting up a proper system of guidance of the creation of a

new type of revolutionary literature and building up the ranks of writers.

Then Kim Jong Il gave meticulous guidance to the production of literary works devoted to portraying the leader. For this he arranged meetings between Kim Il Sung and writers so that they could hear from him the first-hand account of the glorious history of his revolutionary activities. After meeting him the writers were enchanted by his great personality and keenly realized that only the literary works portraying him could be the textbook for the Korean people in the revolutionary struggle.

After the 15th Plenary Meeting of the Fourth Central Committee of the WPK Kim Jong Il defined the creation of literary works portraying the leader as the foremost task. On June 20, 1967 he organized the April 15 Literary Production Company whose main mission it was to create works portraying the leader and in May 1970 resolved theoretical and practical problems in creating the novels in the cycle *Immortal History* devoted to depicting the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities. He personally read the manuscripts of the novels and gave his opinions for improving their ideological and artistic qualities.

In this way many novels in the cycle *Immortal History* were produced including *The Dawn of the Revolution* and *The Year 1932*.

Kim Jong Il paid attention also to transcribing the works created by Kim Il Sung during the anti-Japanese struggle in the form of novel and producing in larger numbers literary works on the themes of revolutionary traditions, the Fatherland Liberation War, socialist realities and national reunification that depicted in a profound way the ennobling ideological and mental qualities of the people in the Songun era.

Kim Jong Il ushered in a heyday of music, dance, fine arts, acrobatics and other realms of art and literature.

Under his guidance Korea achieved great successes in all fields of art. Musical pieces that sustained traditional melodies and at the same time, were mild, soft and easy for the masses of the people to understand were produced in large numbers, orchestra of the Korean style was created by combining Korean traditional instruments with Western ones and light music seasoned with national flavour was developed. Many excellent dance pieces which sustained national characteristics and catered to the noble ideological emotions and modern aesthetic tastes of the Korean people were created. Among them were *The Snow Is Falling*, *Azaleas of the Homeland*, *Winnowing Dance* and *A Rich Apple Harvest*. Comprehensive headway was made in various forms of fine arts including sculpture and industrial art on the basis of what are Korean, with the main emphasis on the Korean painting, and art and sculpture for monumental

structures were developed along with embroidery, ceramic workmanship and handicraft. And the Korean form of acrobatics was created in which Juche-based principles were fully embodied and socialist content and national form were properly combined.

By generalizing and systematizing in a theoretical order the successes and experiences he had gained while guiding the revolution in art and literature including cinema, he made public *On the Art of the Cinema* on April 11, 1973. In the work he cast fresh light on all theoretical and practical questions arising in developing Juche-oriented art and literature including the theory on communist humanics, theory on the seed of literary and artistic work, theory on speed campaign in literary and artistic creation, theory on the essence of revolutionary masterpiece, theory on turning the creative work into a process of transforming the creative workers and artists along revolutionary and working-class lines, theory on revolutionary creative system and system of guidance to creative work and Juche-based theory on directing, acting, as well as filming, fine art and music.

The work is an encyclopaedia of Juche-based art and literature which systematizes all the theoretical problems and principles in developing Juche-based art and literature, and it is a great guideline for developing the art and literature in the era of independence

5. BRINGING ABOUT A FRESH REVOLUTIONARY UPSURGE IN SOCIALIST CONSTRUCTION AND CARRYING OUT THE THREE MAJOR TASKS OF THE TECHNOLOGICAL REVOLUTION

The latter half of the 1960s saw a fresh revolutionary upsurge in socialist construction in the DPRK under the leadership of Kim Jong Il.

At the 16th Plenary Meeting of the Fourth Central Committee of the WPK held from late June to early July 1967, Kim Il Sung advanced a policy of bringing about a new revolutionary upsurge in socialist construction.

Kim Jong Il energetically pushed ahead with the struggle to implement this policy.

In a talk titled, *On Having a Correct Understanding of the Political, Moral and Material Incentives*, given on June 13, 1967, he provided scientific

solutions to the theoretical and practical problems arising in socialist economic construction.

He viewed finding a correct solution to the problem of combining the political, moral and material incentives not as a mere theoretical problem but as an important matter related with the successful promotion of socialist construction.

Warning of the danger of the tendencies of overestimating the material incentive while underestimating the political and moral incentive and vice versa, Kim Jong Il said:

“Putting the main stress on the political and moral incentive and properly augmenting this with the material incentive is the absolutely correct way for promoting the energetic building of socialism. This will encourage the revolutionary zeal of the masses of the people and their enthusiasm to increase production.”

Criticizing the misguided theories on the interrelations between the speed and equilibrium in socialist economic construction, he explained that stress should be put on speed and equilibrium should be adjusted on the principle of ensuring speed, proceeding from the fundamental objective of socialist economic construction, the essential superiority of socialist system and the practical experiences in socialist economic construction in the country.

Kim Jong Il initiated a dynamic ideological campaign to rouse all the people to an effort for a fresh revolutionary upsurge.

In a talk, *On the Intensification of Ideological Information Work for a Revolutionary Advance in the Building of the Economy and Strengthening of Our Defences*, given to officials of the WPK Central Committee on July 3, 1967, he showed the orientation of ideological work to arouse all the people to bring about an upsurge.

He noted that in order to bring about a great upsurge in the building of the economy and defence capabilities it was necessary to make radical improvements first in the WPK's ideological work and that the primary effort in the WPK's ideological work should be directed to encouraging all the working people to give full play to the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude, increase production and economize to the maximum, conduct a vigorous technical revolution and wage the Chollima workteam movement more briskly.

Kim Jong Il went deep among the working masses to arouse them to a fresh revolutionary upsurge.

In July 1967 he visited the then Kangson Steel Plant in company with

Kim Il Sung and called on the workers there to stand in the vanguard of the march for a revolutionary upsurge and thus continue to exalt their honour of being the pacesetters in the Chollima workteam movement.

In August the same year he visited a factory in Ryongsong which Kim Il Sung had stood in the vanguard of the campaign for a revolutionary upsurge, and explained in detail to the workers there the essence and significance of the WPK's new policy of making a revolutionary upsurge and urged them to redouble their efforts.

The workers at Ryongsong appealed to the workers across the country to bring about an upsurge in the effort to implement the line of simultaneously developing the economic construction and defence upbuilding and they themselves overfulfilled their quota of the national economic plan for 1967 before October 10, about 80 days ahead of schedule.

In October 1967 dynamic organizational and political work was launched among the WPK organizations at all levels to induce their members and other working people to actively respond to the appeal of the workers at Ryongsong. The WPK's newspaper and other publications and media gave wide publicity to the feats of the workers at Ryongsong and other parts of the country.

As a result all the sectors of the national economy overfulfilled the yearly economic plan by October 10, the founding day of the WPK, in a campaign to emulate the workers at Ryongsong.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the effort to carry out the historic task of socialist industrialization by effecting a new upswing in all fields of socialist economic construction.

His primary attention was directed to stepping up the building of a self-supporting, modern industry which was a central task in socialist industrialization.

He visited the Jangjingang Power Station and the Pyongyang Thermal Power Station and the construction site of the Pukchang Thermal Power Station, encouraging the workers there to speed up the construction and raise the power generation capacity of the country. He also visited the then Kim Chaek Iron Works, the Chongjin Steel Works and the then Hwanghae Iron Works and led them to make a big stride in the metallurgical industry by perfecting new method of iron production. When he gave on-site guidance at the then February 8 Vinalon Factory and the then Hungnam Fertilizer Factory he underscored the need to put the chemical industry on a firmer Juche basis and rapidly increase production. At various machine-building factories he led them to mass-produce large-sized and precision machines by conducting a brisk

technological innovation campaign. Looking round light-industry factories in Pyongyang, Hamhung and Kusong and various local-industry factories he ensured that they turned out quality products in large quantities by using domestically-available raw and other materials.

In order actively to push ahead with technological reconstruction in the industrial sector, he provided on-site guidance at many factories and enterprises in the sector of basic industry and various local-industry factories, encouraging them to wage a brisk mass-based technological innovation campaign so as to put their production lines on a mechanized, semi-automated or full-automated footing and quickly upgrade the technical equipment of the locally-run industry.

In an effort to make the Taean work system pay off he visited the then Taean Electrical Machinery Plant several times and ensured that the plant set an example in implementing the work system. When he gave on-site guidance at the then Materials Supply Commission in April 1968 he led the commission to enhance materials supply as required by the work system.

Kim Jong Il also directed close attention to the development of the rural economy.

With a view to bringing into full play the superiority of the new agricultural guidance system established by Kim Il Sung he visited many counties and cooperative farms associated with Kim Il Sung's leadership exploits, in the course of which he saw to it that the county cooperative farm management committees concentrated their efforts on consolidating technical guidance over agricultural production and gave free rein to the vitality of the sub-workteam management system.

In 1967 and 1968 he visited major breadbaskets on the west coast and stressed the need to concentrate all efforts on farming and conduct farming scientifically in conformity with the geographical features so as to increase agricultural production. He also led the cooperative farms in the mountainous areas to develop stockbreeding, fruit growing, sericulture, bee farming and other sectors of the rural economy by making effective use of mountains.

Under his guidance measures were taken to produce large numbers of farm machines including rice-harvesters and mini-tractors suited to the actual conditions of the country supply them to rural areas, enhance their utility rate and step up the introduction of irrigation system. Meanwhile he encouraged young people to take the lead in the effort to carry out agricultural technological revolution.

Amid the flames of a new revolutionary upsurge the DPRK implemented

the task of socialist industrialization, resulting in it becoming a socialist industrial country with self-sufficient industry and advanced rural economy.

After the Fifth Congress of the WPK, Kim Jong Il channelled great effort to dynamically carrying out the three major tasks of the technological revolution.

Kim Jong Il said:

“At present the most important thing in freeing the working people from difficult and hard labour is to implement the three major tasks of the technological revolution. By successfully carrying out the three major tasks we should creditably realize the lofty intention and far-reaching plan of the leader for freeing the working people from difficult and hard labour.”

At the Fifth Congress of the WPK Kim Il Sung set forth the three major tasks of the technological revolution—narrowing the difference between heavy and light labour and agricultural and industrial labour remarkably and relieving women of heavy burden of household chore.

Kim Jong Il’s major concern in carrying out the tasks was directed to eliminating heat-affected and harmful labour and diminishing the distinction between heavy and light labour.

Regarding automation of production lines as the main link in this he wisely led the effort for the comprehensive automation in the industrial sector.

In early August 1972 he explained to officials that whereas the technological revolution in the period of socialist industrialization was aimed at converting manual labour into mechanized labour, the technological revolution subsequent to the industrialization was characterized by the fact that machine was operated by machine.

On October 23, 1972 and several other occasions he advanced a revolutionary policy of comprehensive automation.

He said that in order to free the working people completely from difficult labour it was necessary to automate production, that is, automate the national economy in an all-round way.

According to him, automation of production was not merely a technical and economic task for upgrading production lines but an important political task for freeing from difficult and hard labour the working people who had been emancipated from exploitation and oppression.

Kim Jong Il designated the Hwanghae Iron Works as a unit to be made a model for the effort to realize comprehensive automation.

To this end he dispatched a team staffed with competent technicians to the

works in January 1973, and in a talk titled, *Let Us Introduce Automation into Production and Free the Working People from Heavy Labour*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 28, instructed that it was important to build up the works as a model unit in the automation effort and generalize its experiences across the country, so as to kindle the flames of automation in all sectors of the national economy.

He defined it as the objective of the automation process in the Hwanghae Iron Works to attain the highest possible level of automation and clarified stage-by-stage tasks for its realization: The first stage was aimed at bringing officials and working people home to the advantages of automation by introducing closed-circuit TV and remote-control systems to the steel workshop; the second one was at inspiring them with confidence that they could fully introduce automation by their own efforts and helping them to accumulate experience related with automation process by setting up remote-control system in such relatively simple production lines as the sieving yard; and the third one was at freeing the working people completely from heat-affected and harmful labour by introducing remote-control system into the workshops composed of more than two production lines and, furthermore, into blast and open-hearth furnaces.

A meeting of the Political Committee of the WPK Central Committee held in March 1973 took detailed measures for stepping up the automation project at the Hwanghae Iron Works and rendering Partywide and nationwide assistance to the project. Political work was intensified among the workers and technicians to maintain the principle of self-reliance with confidence that they could fully carry out the automation project by their own efforts as others did. A group from the central broadcasting station and art troupes went down to the iron works to inspire the people there to innovation and all the factories, enterprises and research institutes related with its automation project gave active assistance to it.

Kim Jong Il gave instructions on the automation project of the enterprise scores of times and sent automation apparatuses, devices and equipment to it on several occasions.

As a result the Hwanghae Iron Works was refurbished as a model unit for comprehensive automation in a little over a year.

Following this, Kim Jong Il energetically led the effort to generalize its example throughout the country.

To this end a demonstration lecture was held for senior officials and heads of three-revolution teams of major factories and enterprises, and technicians

who had accumulated experiences in automation effort were dispatched to major factories and enterprises to help them. The then Komdok Mine and various other mines were provided with complete sets of devices for remote-controlling their dressing plants, automation apparatuses, equipment and designs. Meanwhile, the WPK's organ carried a leading article titled, *Ours Is an Era of Automation: Let Us Make the Flames of the Drive for Semi- and Full-Automation Sweep the Whole Country Following the Torch of the Hwanghae Iron Works* and other mass media launched a brisk information and motivation work for generalizing the successes gained in the effort to introduce automation. The flames of automation effort kindled at the Hwanghae Iron Works swept the whole country resulting in the introduction of closed-circuit TV and remote-control systems into production lines at many factories and enterprises in the sectors of the metal, chemical, mining, building materials industries.

Kim Jong Il directed close attention also to the comprehensive mechanization of difficult and labour-intensive work. Large-sized and high-speed extracting equipment and transportation means were introduced into coal and other mines and large numbers of modern machines and equipment into various sectors like forestry and construction, raising their mechanization onto a higher level.

Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into the rural technological revolution for diminishing the distinctions between agricultural and industrial labour.

Kim Jong Il said:

“What we should concentrate our efforts on in the rural technological revolution at the present stage is to dynamically step up with the mechanization of the rural economy. In order to free the farmers from difficult and back-breaking labour, it is necessary to mechanize the rural economy.”

Under the guidance of Kim Jong Il the Kumsong Tractor Plant and the then Sungni General Motor Works introduced the successes gained by the Hwanghae Iron Works in the automation effort to modernize their production lines and increase their production capacities, resulting in the improvement of the material and technological means of the rural economy. In November 1973 motivational teams were dispatched to the factories to conduct intensive motivation campaign for increased production there for about 40 days. The year 1973 witnessed overfulfillment of the year's tractor production and production of 10 000 lorries.

Meanwhile, Kim Jong Il ensured that all provinces set up farm machine

factories, counties established spare parts production bases and repair shops and cooperative farms laid material and technical foundations for manufacturing and repairing simple farm implements.

He selected Chongsan-ri as a role model in the rural technological revolution and popularized its successes and experiences across the country.

He set forth this policy in his talk titled, *On Helping Chongsan-ri Well*, given on site on May 12, 1971 to the chairwoman of the management board of the then Chongsan Cooperative Farm in Kangso County and artists seconded to help rice transplanting at the farm. He took measures to supply new farm machines to the farm on a preferential basis and intensify material, technical and labour assistance to it. And he stressed that the leading officials of the farm should be exemplary in learning how to operate farm machines and the farm be the first to mechanize rice transplanting. Under his guidance the farm mechanized all farm work including ploughing, sowing, weeding, harvesting and threshing as well as rice transplanting.

Then Kim Jong Il ensured that wide publicity was given to the experiences of the farm in mechanizing farm work and applying chemicals in agriculture.

Kim Jong Il attached importance to enhancing the role of tractor drivers in carrying out the rural technological revolution. The national conference of tractor drivers held in February 1971, the first year of the Six-Year Plan, marked a major occasion in enhancing the role of tractor drivers. When he met tractor drivers at Yangdong and Okhyon cooperative farms in Unpha County in March 1972, Kim Jong Il told them to keep in mind the high honour and sense of responsibility as pacesetters in mechanizing the rural economy and stand in the vanguard of the rural technological revolution.

At the same time Kim Jong Il paid close attention to implementing the task of the technological revolution for relieving women of heavy burden of household chore.

Under his guidance cities and counties set up noodle factories, rice cookeries, corn-ricing factories and other food processing factories in a short span of time in a mass drive, putting the production of staple foods on an industrial basis. Vegetable, fish and fruit processing factories were also built in various parts of the country and the production of refrigerators, washing machines and other household utensils boosted. And projects for introducing tap-water services into rural villages were stepped up and work of nurseries and kindergartens improved.

Successes in the effort to implement the three major tasks of the

technological revolution greatly contributed to freeing the Korean people from hard and back-breaking labour and providing them with a more independent and creative life.

6. CELEBRATING THE 60TH ANNIVERSARY OF THE BIRTH OF KIM IL SUNG AS THE GREATEST NATIONAL HOLIDAY

The year 1972 marked Kim Il Sung's 60th birthday. Kim Jong Il paid close attention to making this day a major occasion in encouraging all the people to harden their determination to devote their all to the struggle for carrying the revolutionary cause of Juche, the revolutionary cause of Songun, pioneered by him to completion down through generations by cherishing loyalty to Kim Il Sung.

Celebrating his 60th birthday as the greatest national holiday was the ardent desire of all the Korean people and the unanimous wish of the progressive people the world over.

In a talk on Mt. Paektu, the sacred mountain of the revolution, in August 1971, in a talk given in April 1972 to the attendants in the celebrations of Kim Il Sung's 60th birth anniversary, in a talk given on April 22, 1972 to senior officials of the General Political Bureau of the KPA titled, *The KPA Commanding Officers of the New Generations Should Be Prepared for Carrying On the Lineage of Our Revolution*, and other occasions Kim Jong Il stressed the need to carry the revolutionary cause of Juche, the revolutionary cause of Songun, pioneered by Kim Il Sung to completion down through generations.

Explaining that doing so was a sacred mission the Korean people assumed for the times, he said that to this end they should staunchly defend and implement Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology and safeguard and carry forward the traditions of Juche revolution created by him and his exploits in the revolution.

Kim Jong Il pushed ahead with the preparations for celebrating Kim Il Sung's 60th birth anniversary as the greatest national holiday.

He set forth tasks related with this in a talk titled, *For Celebrating the 60th Birthday of the Leader as the Greatest National Holiday*, given to officials of the WPK Central Committee on October 29, 1971.

He underlined the need to push forward the preparations for greeting the anniversary and intensify political and ideological work among WPK members and other working people so as to inspire them to a fresh revolutionary upsurge.

He said that efforts should be focused on the work to hand down and glorify Kim Il Sung's great exploits in the revolution forever, that ideological education should be intensified to rally the entire WPK and all the people firmly around him, that information and motivation work should be strengthened to rouse WPK members and other working people to socialist economic construction and that good preparations should be made for the celebrations.

Kim Jong Il channelled his primary efforts into handing down and adding lustre to Kim Il Sung's greatness and immortal revolutionary exploits forever.

He proposed erecting a statue of Kim Il Sung and building the Korean Revolution Museum on Mansu Hill in Pyongyang to mark the day in such a way as to show comprehensively the revolutionary exploits of the great persons of Mt. Paektu, and led WPK members and other working people to carry out the projects by displaying a high sense of loyalty.

While looking round the revolutionary battle sites in Ryanggang Province in September 1971, he advanced the task of building up revolutionary battle sites and historic places as monuments of everlasting value. Consequently, revolutionary battle sites and historic places were renovated throughout the country, monuments to Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities erected and museums of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities built in all provinces.

In this way many revolutionary battle sites and historic places including the Grand Monument on Mansu Hill with the statue of Kim Il Sung at the centre and the Monument to the Victorious Battle in the Musan Area were built in 1971 and the first half of the following year.

And Order of Kim Il Sung, Kim Il Sung Prize, Kim Il Sung Youth Honour Prize and Kim Il Sung Children Honour Prize were instituted and watches inscribed with Kim Il Sung's autographed name were awarded to those attending the celebrations of the 60th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth. Badges bearing Kim Il Sung's portrait were presented to the people across the country.

In September 1970 Kim Jong Il suggested creating a paean wishing good health for Kim Il Sung and energetically directed its creation. When the song was produced he saw that it was popularized across the country.

He proposed building an excellent exhibition house for preserving as national

treasures the gifts presented to Kim Il Sung by foreign state and party leaders and people from various social strata and handing them down through generations.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the work for rallying the entire WPK and all the people closely around Kim Il Sung was conducted more briskly in the lead-up to his 60th birthday.

Kim Jong Il said:

“If Party ideological work goes well and unites the Party and all the people more solidly behind the leader, this will be the most precious present to be offered to the leader on the occasion of his 60th birthday.”

He saw to it that main emphasis in ideological education among Party members and other working people was put on imbuing them with the greatness of Kim Il Sung’s ideology, sagacity of his leadership and his lofty virtues so that they would remain faithful to him.

He attached great importance to issuing large numbers of publications dealing with his great revolutionary ideology, wise leadership, undying exploits and noble virtues.

In October 1971 he formed a committee for compiling Kim Il Sung’s short biography and provided meticulous guidance to its compilation.

As a result, *Biography of Kim Il Sung, For the Freedom and Liberation of the People* (in chronological order) and many other books on the history of Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary activities and revolutionary literary and artistic works were published and disseminated.

In April 1972 a national conference of social scientists, sector-specific seminars, lectures were held with Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary ideology, the Juche idea, as the theme and documentary films about his external activities were produced.

Kim Jong Il attached importance to bringing about a fresh upswing in socialist economic construction to greet the 60th anniversary of Kim Il Sung’s birth.

In order to encourage all the sectors and units of the national economy to carry out the first two years’ task of the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule, Kim Jong Il ensured that an intensive political work was launched among WPK members and other working people, so as to inspire them to effect new innovations in the technological revolution.

The spearhead of the motivation campaign was directed to producing 30 000 machine tools before the 60th anniversary of Kim Il Sung’s birth by bringing about a turn in machine-tool production, the main link in the whole

chain of the Six-Year Plan, and to boosting production in coal-mining, fishing and other key sectors of the national economy. Artists were dispatched to machine-tool factories, coal mines and fishing stations to inspire the workers with zeal for production through intensive motivation work.

Kim Jong Il did his best to ensure the success of the celebrations of the 60th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth on a high political and ideological level.

He considered it most important in the process of the celebration events to glorify Kim Il Sung's achievements in the revolution and to demonstrate the unity and cohesion of the WPK and the people behind him.

Under his guidance a national art festival and national performance of art troupes in different sectors as well as a national sports festival took place in a grand style. Especially spectacular was the mass gymnastics display titled, *Under the Banner of the Workers' Party*, performed by 50 000 youth and students. And all other celebration events were held on an unprecedentedly grand scale.

The world's progressive people presented Kim Il Sung with messages, letters, banners and gifts in congratulation of his 60th birthday and organized various celebration events.

Later it has become a tradition in the DPRK to celebrate April 15 as the most auspicious holiday of the nation.

7. IMPROVING PARTY WORK

Following the Fifth Congress of the WPK Kim Jong Il channelled efforts into improving Party work as required by the WPK itself and the developing revolution.

He paid his primary attention to improving the WPK's organizational work radically.

At his instance a new system of reviewing Party life was introduced throughout the WPK.

As part of his effort to create an example he saw to it that several Party cells in the sector of art and literature conducted reviewing the Party life of their members in a fresh way on a trial basis from the early 1970s. Then he ensured

that the new system of reviewing Party life was introduced in all the WPK organizations in this sector in August 1972.

In a speech titled, *On Establishing a New System of Reviewing Party Life throughout the Party* delivered at a consultative meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on August 21, 1973, he advanced the task of introducing throughout the WPK the new system whose validity had been proved through practice.

In order to establish a new system of reviewing Party life throughout the WPK, he said, it was necessary to give the WPK members a clear understanding of its essence, advantages and vitality, and enhance the role of Party cell secretaries and primary Party organizations.

Kim Jong Il made sure that the work of increasing the WPK's membership and improving its composition in terms of quality was done in a substantial manner.

He set forth the principles to be adhered to in increasing the WPK's membership—this work should be done briskly in the direction of consolidating the WPK's strength in major sectors, large numbers of progressive elements from among new generations, working youth in particular, should be admitted into the WPK, and main emphasis should be put on the current ideological merits of the applicants.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention also to improving the WPK's ideological work radically.

In a speech titled, *On the Main Duties of the Information and Publicity Department*, delivered at a meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on August 17, 1973 and in other works he clarified tasks and ways for radically improving the WPK's ideological work.

Kim Jong Il put the contents of the WPK's ideological work to rights.

He defined it as the main point, major line, in the WPK's ideological work to arm the WPK members and other working people with Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology and took measures to make the education in that ideology run through the contents of the WPK's ideological work.

In March 1973 he acquainted himself with how the Party's educational network was being operated. Then he ensured that study groups under different names were all renamed the Kim Il Sung's Revolutionary Ideology Study Group and all the groups organized study sessions with the main emphasis on the study of Kim Il Sung's works. In December that year he advanced a policy of revising, as required by the developing realities, the pictorial records of the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities made shortly after the 15th Plenary Meeting of the Fourth WPK Central Committee.

Subsequently, he took measures of merging the room for studying the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities and the room for studying Kim Il Sung's instructions into the room for studying Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology and laying it out properly for profound education in the theory of the Juche idea and loyalty to Kim Il Sung.

Kim Jong Il paid due attention to improving WPK's ideological work methods in line with the requirements of the developing revolution.

In the spring of 1973 he gave a senior official of the then Ministry of Culture and Art a task of setting an example in applying question-and-answer method of studying and in June that year he organized a question-and-answer contest of central artistic troupes so that they could accumulate experiences. At his initiative the first national question-and-answer contest of artists was organized from late October to early November that year.

In a speech delivered at the first national question-and-answer contest of artists on November 5, 1973 Kim Jong Il clarified the advantages of the method of studying in question-and-answer form and ways for applying them.

Following the contest the WPK organizations at all levels devised methods for organizing question-and-answer study sessions and provincial, city and county Party committees created role models and disseminated their experiences.

Kim Jong Il directed a great effort to enhancing the way of giving public lecture.

To this end he took measures of staffing the ranks of lecturers with competent persons and improving their qualifications. He had demonstration lectures, lecturing contests and lecturing tours organized on a regular basis, superior lecturing methods generalized and the contents and forms of public lecture diversified, at the same time as providing meticulous guidance to writing the texts for public lectures.

As part of his effort to improve the Party's ideological work, Kim Jong Il saw to it that the method of motivation for increased production was adapted to the style of motivation work of the anti-Japanese guerrillas.

In June 1973 he sent motivation squads to Jaeryong and Unryul mines on a mission to boost the mining industry and accumulate experiences in applying the anti-Japanese guerrillas' style of motivation into the motivation work for increased production. On this basis, in November that year, he organized a large-scale motivation work at the Kum Song Tractor Plant and the then Sungni General Motor Works and set an example in the

anti-Japanese guerrillas' style of motivation work for increased production.

To generalize the method of the anti-Japanese guerrillas' style of motivation work across the country, he formed motivation forces and led them to conduct motivation work for increased production in various forms and by various methods. Pyongyang, provinces and working people's organizations including the General Federation of Trade Unions and the youth league organized art troupes specializing in motivation work for increased production and major factories, enterprises and cooperative farms their own itinerary squads which were supposed to conduct motivation work while working. Motivation work for increased production was intensified by means of newspapers, radios, TV and films and Party, economic and administrative officials were dispatched to the sites of socialist construction for motivation purpose.

Kim Jong Il directed close attention to enhancing the WPK's work system and method.

Kim Jong Il said:

“We should further improve the work system and method in conformity with the requirements of the developing realities.”

Kim Jong Il ensured that terms of reference were formulated as required by the revolution and a strict discipline of working in accordance with them was established.

In September 1973 he advanced the task of formulating new terms of reference and clarified the basic direction and ways for doing so. He examined draft terms of reference for the departments of the WPK Central Committee, making necessary corrections. Then he saw to it that a system was introduced whereby all the WPK organizations worked in accordance with the new terms of reference and reviewed their work results by assessing the implementation of the terms of reference. He also paid attention to perfecting the terms of reference.

Kim Jong Il established a well-regulated system whereby Party officials went down to their subordinate units to help them.

At a meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee held in August 1973, he stressed the need to establish the system and defined how many days officials should go down to lower units a month. On November 8, at a consultative meeting of senior instructors who had been to local Party organizations true to the new system, he clarified the tasks for making the system pay off and took necessary measures.

Meanwhile, he reformed the institutional system of Party organs so as to

facilitate the visit of their officials to their subordinate units, redefined the duties and responsibilities of officials and led them to work in a substantial manner always mixing themselves with the masses.

Kim Jong Il ensured that Party officials did away with the practice of conducting Party work in an administrative way and made Party work work with people.

At a consultative meeting of senior instructors of the WPK Central Committee held in November 1973 he advanced the task of doing away with the practice of conducting Party work in an administrative manner and stressed the need for all officials to give precedence to ideological work, political work, in doing anything and thus make Party work work with people in the true sense of the word.

Under the wise leadership of Kim Jong Il the WPK could be developed into a revolutionary, militant and lively party.

8. IMPLEMENTING THE THREE PRINCIPLES AND FIVE-POINT POLICY OF NATIONAL REUNIFICATION

Kim Jong Il wisely led the effort to implement the three principles and five-point policy of national reunification.

Kim Il Sung proposed a policy for wide-ranging negotiation between the north and south in a speech on August 6, 1971, opening a road to north-south dialogue, and on May 3, 1972 advanced the three principles of national reunification at a talk with south Korea's representative who was on a visit to Pyongyang for north-south high-level political talks.

On July 4, 1972 a north-south joint statement was made public whose main content is the principles of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity.

After the publication of the joint statement Kim Jong Il led the struggle for national reunification to be waged strictly abiding by and relying on the three principles.

In his talk, titled, *Let Us Struggle Resolutely to Implement the Three Principles of National Reunification*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on July 14, 1972 Kim Jong Il said that in the struggle for

national reunification the main effort should be directed to implementing the three principles of national reunification presented by Kim Il Sung and confirmed in the north-south joint statement.

Kim Jong Il said:

“We must firmly maintain the three principles of national reunification no matter how difficult and complex the situation may be in the future, and struggle to reunify the country on these principles.”

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to expanding and developing dialogues and negotiations between the north and south.

He showed deep concern for the talks between the Red Cross societies of the north and south.

In July 1972 he explained to north's delegates to the 23rd preliminary north-south Red Cross talks the principles to be adhered to at north-south talks and negotiations. On July 19 he visited Panmunjom, the venue of the talks, to inquire into how the talks were going on, and gave his opinions on the ways for bringing the talks to a successful conclusion.

Consequently, the preliminary talks which had been drawn out to nearly a year were concluded, and the full-dress Red Cross talks were held in Pyongyang and Seoul alternately from late August that year.

Kim Jong Il directed great efforts to widening the scope of north-south dialogue and negotiations.

He ensured that a north-south coordination commission was formed and operated as was stipulated in the north-south joint statement and problems of key importance in improving inter-Korean relations and achieving national reunification were discussed and solved by the commission. And he led the DPRK to launch a drive to develop north-south political negotiation into multilateral negotiations and turn the struggle for national reunification into a nationwide undertaking.

On August 19, 1972 the WPK, the then Korean Democratic Party, Chondoist Chongu Party and social organizations of the DPRK made public a joint statement proposing to political parties and social organizations of south Korea that a north-south joint conference of political parties and social organizations be held. And the government of the DPRK proposed expanding the scope of north-south talks by involving the representatives of various political parties and social organizations and people from different social strata from the north and south. The proposals evoked an enthusiastic support and approval from all the Korean people at home and abroad.

The struggle to develop north-south dialogues and negotiations bore fruit:

From October 1972 meetings of co-chairmen of the north-south coordination commission were held three times resulting in the formation of the commission as a standing joint organization of the nation; consequently the commission met in Pyongyang and Seoul alternately.

Kim Jong Il also wisely led the effort to implement the five-point policy of national reunification.

Kim Il Sung advanced the five-point policy in his speech, titled, *Let Us Prevent a National Partition and Reunify the Country*, on June 23, 1973.

The key aspects of the policy were: To remove military confrontation and ease tensions between the north and south; to realize many-sided collaboration and exchange between the two sides; to convene a great national congress composed of representatives of people from all walks of life and political parties and social organizations from the north and the south; to institute a federation under the single nomenclature of the Federal Republic of Koryo; and to enter the UN under the single name of the Federal Republic of Koryo.

As part of an effort to implement the five-point policy, Kim Jong Il ensured that a sweeping explanation and information campaign was launched.

He said that of paramount importance in information work for the present was to give wide publicity to the spirit of the three principles and five-point policy of national reunification.

An intensive information campaign was waged through newspaper, radio and other types of the mass media to give wide publicity to them at home and abroad and mass rallies were held in Pyongyang and all other parts of the country to support them and expose and condemn the south Korean authorities who had turned against the north-south joint statement.

Kim Jong Il regarded the convening of a great national congress as the main link in the whole chain of solving the problem of national reunification and took active steps for the purpose.

The 59th enlarged meeting of the Central Committee of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea held in July 1973 discussed the matter of convening a great national congress as soon as possible and issued an appeal to the south Korean political parties, social organizations, people from all social strata and to the overseas Korean compatriots and their organizations.

In November the same year the WPK, Korean Democratic Party and Chondoist Chongu Party sent a letter to the Democratic Republican Party, New Democratic Party, Democratic Party for Reunification and the Revolutionary Party for Reunification in south Korea proposing immediate convening of the great national congress to be attended by representatives of people from all

walks of life and of political parties and social organizations in the north and south.

The appeal and the letter received support and sympathy from the south Korean people from all social standing, political parties and social organizations and leavened the atmosphere of national reunification. Greatly encouraged by them, the south Korean people and overseas Korean compatriots including those in Japan actively turned out in the struggle for national reunification.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to creating international environment favourable for the implementation of the three principles and five-point policy.

Under his leadership a brisk diplomatic offensive was launched to consolidate international support for and solidarity with the three principles and five-point policy, with the result that many international meetings including the fourth summit of the non-aligned countries held in September 1973 adopted decisions, declarations and resolutions in support of them.

At the same time the DPRK intensified its activity in UN and other international arenas. In September 1973 a mission of the DPRK to UN was established in New York, marking a turning point in the struggle to create favourable international environment for Korea's reunification.

Kim Jong Il told the DPRK's delegation to the 28th Session of the UN General Assembly to make a positive effort to dissolve the UN Commission for the Unification and Rehabilitation of Korea, an obstacle to Korea's reunification, and frustrate the enemy's scheme to bring the issue of withdrawing the UN forces from south Korea to the UN Security Council and veto their withdrawal, and strongly argue that Korea should be reunified on the basis of the three principles and five-point policy.

In October 1973 the 28th Session of the UN General Assembly discussed the Korean issue with the attendance of the representative of the DPRK for the first time in the history of UN. The session reaffirmed the validity of the three principles of Korea's reunification and adopted a resolution on immediately dissolving the UN Commission for the Reunification and Rehabilitation of Korea, which had served the United States as a means of its interference in the internal affairs of south Korea.

Thanks to the wise leadership of Kim Jong Il the forces for national reunification were strengthened in all aspects and, by relying on them, a dynamic struggle was waged to implement the basic programme for national reunification, thus creating a bright prospect and favourable conditions for Korea's independent and peaceful reunification.

9. BRINGING ABOUT A FRESH TURN IN EXTERNAL ACTIVITIES

Under the sagacious leadership of Kim Jong Il a fresh turn was made in the country's external activities.

He clarified the basic mission of the WPK's external activities and the ways to carry it out.

In his talks to officials in the sector of foreign affairs on October 23, 1964 and in April the following year and on other occasions he pointed out that the basic mission of the WPK's external activities was to give wide publicity to the greatness of Kim Il Sung and the sagacity of his leadership.

He defined it as a major task of the sector of foreign affairs to put main emphasis on propagating the greatness of Kim Il Sung and the Juche idea and cement the country's relations with newly-emergent countries by widening the scope of foreign relationship. And he explained that officials in the sector of foreign affairs should be possessed of high political qualifications, versatile and profound knowledge and noble virtues.

Kim Jong Il led the effort to bring about a fresh turn in external activities.

He actively assisted Kim Il Sung in his external activities.

When he accompanied Kim Il Sung on the latter's visit to Indonesia in April 1965, he energetically led officials to implement Kim Il Sung's policy of strengthening unity with newly-emergent countries.

He expounded to officials the matters they should pay special attention to while assisting Kim Il Sung in his external activities, and personally checked beforehand on the route to the places where Kim Il Sung was supposed to go and took all the necessary precautionary measures.

Meanwhile, external information work was intensified through films and artistic performances in foreign countries.

In March 1965 Kim Jong Il pointed out the problems arising in intensifying external information work through films. And according to measures he took, the DPRK sent art troupes to west European and newly-emergent countries in the 1970s.

This inspired the world's progressive people with a greater enthusiasm to follow and learn the Juche idea. Many social campaigners and scholars from

various countries visited the DPRK to learn the Juche idea and the country's experiences in applying the idea in practice and returned home to study the idea systematically and by various methods and publicize it widely. Many countries established committees or printing plants for publishing Kim Il Sung's works and published translated versions of Kim Il Sung's works and periodicals under various titles including *The Juche Idea*. Kim Il Sung Library, Pochonbo Library and other institutions were established in foreign countries to disseminate Kim Il Sung's works. In Mali Kim Il Sung's Works Study Group was organized in 1969 as the first of its kind. By the end of that year scores of similar organizations were formed such as Kim Il Sung's Revolutionary Ideology Study Group and Kim Il Sung's Juche Idea Study Group in about 20 countries, involving prominent figures in the political, social and press circles, professors, doctors and other people from various walks of life. Seminars on the Juche idea, Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology, were organized on an extensive scale. Seminar on the Juche idea was held frequently on a nationwide scale in Japan and many other countries and its scale was gradually expanded from regional and continental to worldwide scale.

In order to expand and develop the country's foreign relations, Kim Jong Il ensured that the main emphasis in external activities was put on consolidating friendship and unity with newly-emergent countries.

In his talk, titled, *Let Us Strengthen Friendship and Solidarity with the Newly-Emergent Countries*, delivered to officials in charge of foreign affairs on May 9, 1965 he clarified matters of principle in consolidating friendship and unity with newly-emergent countries.

He said that the non-aligned movement which embraced many newly-emergent countries was a progressive movement which represented the common aspirations and desires of their people to defend their national independence in opposition to imperialist domination and subjugation and it had become an independent political force in the international arena. He added that the movement, as it reflected a major trend of the times towards independence, would become a powerful driving force of historical development in the near future.

Referring to the need to direct great efforts to cementing friendship and unity with newly-emergent countries, he said:

“Improving work with the newly-emergent nations is an important foreign policy of our Party at the present moment. Our country has not advanced much so far beyond the range of socialist countries in its foreign relations. From now on it must direct lots of effort to the development of its relations with the newly-emergent nations.”

He explained that what was important in strengthening friendship and unity with newly-emergent countries were to faithfully observe the principles of mutual relations between countries, give active support and encouragement to the struggle of their people, develop economic and cultural cooperation and exchange with them on a wide scale and give wide publicity to the experiences gained by the DPRK in the revolution and construction.

When he met political and social figures from newly-emergent countries who were on a visit to the DPRK, Kim Jong Il explained to them the country's experiences in building a new society as well as matters of principle in waging the revolution by relying on one's own strength.

Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into creating a favourable international environment for the Korean revolution through intensive anti-imperialist, anti-US struggle.

He ensured that the DPRK gave unstinted support and encouragement to Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia and other Asian countries in their anti-imperialist, anti-US national-salvation struggle, African countries in their national liberation struggle and Latin-American countries including Cuba in their anti-US struggle.

Under the guidance of Kim Jong Il the DPRK cemented relations with many countries and entered various international organizations.

It established and developed trade and other economic relations with north and west European capitalist countries, intensified its external activities to cement its relations with their progressive political parties and social organizations and gradually developed those relations into diplomatic relations.

As it consolidated friendship and unity with newly-emergent countries and expanded the scope of its foreign relations, the DPRK, who had not advanced much beyond the range of socialist countries in its foreign relations until the 1950s, established diplomatic relations at ambassadorial level with 37 countries by the late 1960s and about 60 by the mid-1970s, had economic and cultural exchanges with about 100 countries and entered more than a hundred international organizations by that time.

CHAPTER 4. ORGANIZING AND LEADING THE WORK OF MODELLING THE WHOLE SOCIETY ON KIMILSUNGISM

(February 1974-October 1980)

1. ACCLAIMED AS SUCCESSOR TO PRESIDENT KIM IL SUNG AND PROCLAIMING THE PROGRAMME OF MODELLING THE WHOLE SOCIETY ON KIMILSUNGISM

To inherit the cause of the leader is a matter of vital importance arising in carrying out the revolutionary cause of the working class.

That the revolution and construction will be thrown into disarray if the problem of the leader's successor is not solved properly is a serious lesson drawn from the history of the international communist movement spanning over a century.

In the historic period that urgently required to solve the problem of inheriting the revolutionary cause, the Korean people acclaimed Kim Jong Il as successor to President Kim Il Sung.

Kim Jong Il assisted the President in his work from his university days and, after graduation, started working at the WPK Central Committee—first as an instructor, then section chief, vice-director and director of a department and secretary of the Central Committee. At these important posts he displayed his outstanding personality and abilities and made remarkable achievements for the WPK and the revolution. That's why the WPK members and all other people revered him. As they came to realize through their life experiences how great his achievements were, they respected and followed him as their leader.

In the 1960s when he started to lead the revolution, the people wished that he be acclaimed as the only successor to Kim Il Sung, and in the early 1970s it became a general trend of public opinion.

The people trusted and supported him with absolute loyalty, calling him

“dear leader,” and composed and sang songs in praise of him. And officials at the WPK Central Committee, in the sector of art and literature and in many other sectors strived to establish a climate of working as instructed by him.

In the meanwhile requests and letters to the effect that Kim Jong Il should be the successor to Kim Il Sung were sent to the WPK Central Committee from all over the country—organizations of the WPK, government organs, administrative and economic organs, working people’s organizations, KPA units, people’s security organs, organs in the sectors of science, education, culture and the press, factories, enterprises and cooperative farms. In particular, the anti-Japanese war veterans who belonged to the first generation of the Korean revolution were loud in their praise of Kim Jong Il.

In reflection of the unanimous wish of the WPK members and all other people, the Eighth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the WPK held on February 13, 1974, elected Kim Jong Il Member of the Political Committee of the WPK Central Committee and acclaimed him as the one and only successor to President Kim Il Sung.

The news threw the whole country into a festive mood. The WPK and working people’s organizations held celebrations and adopted letters showing their pledge to entrust their destiny to him and carry through the revolutionary cause of Juche, the revolutionary cause of Songun, under his leadership. The anti-Japanese war veterans expressed their firm determination to remain as faithful to him as they had been to Kim Il Sung.

After being acclaimed as the successor to Kim Il Sung, Kim Jong Il formulated the former’s revolutionary ideology in a scientific way and, on this basis, made public the programme of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

From his early days, regarding it as his lofty mission, he had made a close study of the Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary ideology.

Since he started working at the WPK Central Committee he had made a comprehensive review and analysis of the preceding revolutionary ideas of the working class from the standpoint of Juche. He was engrossed in thinking and writing to formulate Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary ideology even in the course of his on-site guidance trips as well as in his office.

In September 1971, when he was giving on-site guidance in Ryanggang Province, he had talks with the officials of the central and local organs during the day and burned the midnight oil to formulate Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary ideology.

On September 4, at an angling site in Mupho, he had a talk with the officials under the title, *The Revolutionary Ideology of the Great Leader Is an Original One That Can Be Called Only after Him*. In this talk he said that now a firm basis was laid for scientifically formulating Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology in association with his name and proclaiming it to the world. He stated that in near future he would define the Juche idea, a revolutionary ideology authored by him, as Kimilsungism and proclaim it to the world, adding that the banner of Kimilsungism would be held aloft in the vanguard of the struggle of the present times.

In the summer of 1973, he reaffirmed his unshakeable determination to this end.

On February 19, 1974 he proclaimed the birth of Kimilsungism in his work titled, *On Some Immediate Tasks to Be Tackled in the Party's Ideological Work for Modelling the Whole Society on Kimilsungism*.

He said:

“In a nutshell, Kimilsungism is a system of Juche-oriented ideology, theories and methods. In other words, it is an integrated system of the Juche idea and the theories and methods of the revolution and construction expounded by this idea. The great Juche idea, the first of its kind in the history of human thought, constitutes the essence of Kimilsungism and, on the basis of it, the revolutionary theories and the methods of leadership are integrally systematized. Herein lies its characteristic feature which makes it different from the preceding revolutionary theories of the working class. Kimilsungism is the genuinely right system of ideology, theory and method which serve as guidelines in making the revolution in our era, Juche era.”

He defined modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism as the ultimate programme of the WPK.

He said with regard to the essence of the programme:

“Modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism means advancing our revolution with Kimilsungism, the great revolutionary ideology of the leader, as the only guiding principle and building and bringing communist society into complete shape on the basis of Kimilsungism. In other words, it means training all members of society to be genuine Kimilsungists with boundless loyalty to the leader and seizing ideological and material fortresses for the building of communism by thoroughly transforming society in keeping with the requirements of Kimilsungism.”

He specified the reasons why the modelling of the whole society on

Kimilsungism was set as the ultimate programme of the WPK; it contains the WPK's final objective and the fundamental ways to attain it.

He pointed out the problems arising in modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism and the principles and ways for resolving them.

In order to model the whole society on Kimilsungism, it was important to train all members of society to be ardent Kimilsungists by intensifying education in the monolithic ideology and revolutionary education among the WPK members and other working people, transform all sectors of society including the economy and culture in keeping with the requirements of Kimilsungism, and strengthen the WPK and bring about a radical turn in its work.

The programme of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism threw fresh light on the essential content of the ultimate programme of a party, its indispensable components and the theoretical and methodological basis for formulating it.

2. MODELLING THE ENTIRE WPK ON KIMILSUNGISM AND LAYING FIRM FOUNDATIONS OF THE WPK

Kim Jong Il led the effort to model the entire WPK on Kimilsungism and lay firm foundations for its development to meet the requirements of the developing revolution and times when the problem of inheriting the revolutionary cause was solved and the modelling of the whole society on Kimilsungism came to the fore.

In his concluding speech titled, *Let Us Vigorously Push Ahead with the Modelling of the Whole Society on Kimilsungism by Improving Party Work Drastically*, made at the National Short Course for the WPK's Organization Workers on August 2, 1974, he advanced a policy of modelling the entire WPK on Kimilsungism.

He elucidated the revolutionary essence of the work of modelling the entire WPK on Kimilsungism, and the basic principle and way to this end.

He said:

“To model the whole Party on Kimilsungism means to train all Party members as elite Kimilsungists and conduct Party building and Party

activities thoroughly based on the ideology, theories and methods of the leader. This is aimed at completing in an all-round way the work of modelling the whole Party on Kimilsungism, which started with the founding of our Party, and turning our Party into a perfect Kimilsungist party.”

The basic principle to be maintained in modelling the entire WPK on Kimilsungism is to establish the monolithic ideological and leadership systems thoroughly within the WPK and the fundamental way for it is to develop the WPK into a party of cadres and bring about a new turn in the system and methods of the WPK's work.

Kim Jong Il led the effort to model the entire WPK on Kimilsungism.

Above all, he directed great concern to developing the work of establishing the WPK's monolithic ideological system.

In order to develop the work of establishing the WPK's monolithic ideological system as the major line of the WPK's work in conformity with the requirements of modelling the WPK and society on Kimilsungism, he delivered a speech titled, *Let Us Establish the Monolithic Ideological System More Firmly across the Party and Society*, on April 14, 1974.

In this speech he set forth the general task for establishing the WPK's monolithic ideological system and the matters of principle to be maintained in its implementation.

He also advanced a policy of turning the WPK into a party of cadres and made tireless efforts to strengthen its ranks qualitatively through the struggle for its implementation.

He paid primary concern to preparing officials and other members of the WPK politically and ideologically. He made sure that they would be equipped with a revolutionary world outlook by conducting their study and Party life in close combination with practice and intensifying ideological education, and that the revolutionary spirit and discipline of Party life be established within the WPK. Along with this, he saw to it that Party principles were observed in increasing membership of the WPK so as to ensure the purity of its ranks. He also directed close concern to improving the technical and cultural level of the WPK members and their practical qualifications and, in particular, developing their organizational abilities.

He brought about a new turn in the system and methods of the WPK's work.

He made sure that the WPK committees at all levels strictly followed Party rules in their work and, in particular, made their terms of reference

properly to put all their work on a regular and standardized basis according to them.

He set up a well-organized system of guiding subordinate units throughout the WPK, a system under which its officials were to go down to these units for a certain period of time to give them effective assistance and then return to their respective departments to study the WPK's policies again and elaborate a new work plan.

He saw to it that coordination and cooperation between departments and between sections were promoted.

After establishing a new system of Party work, he gave on-site guidance to the organizations of the WPK in North and South Hamgyong and other provinces with a view to making the system pay off.

As a result, a well-knit system of Party work was established in a short period of time to meet the requirements of modelling the entire WPK on Kimilsungism. This made it possible to inform the lower-echelon WPK organizations of the intentions and policies of the WPK Central Committee without delay and implement them properly.

Kim Jong Il brought about a radical improvement in the methods and style of the WPK's work.

In his speech titled, *On Some Major Tasks to Be Tackled in Party Work This Year*, made on January 1, 1976, he said that all the WPK officials should firmly equip themselves with Kimilsungist theory of leadership, learn from Kim Il Sung's work method and apply it to their work, stressing that this was the key to correcting their methods and style of work. He also encouraged them to work in keeping with the requirements of the Chongsanri spirit and Chongsanri method.

In addition, he urged the WPK officials to improve their political and practical qualifications.

He exerted great efforts to lay solid foundations for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche.

He had made preparations for laying these foundations from the mid-1960s, when he started working at Party Central Committee, to the first half of the 1970s.

In his talk titled, *On Firmly Laying Organizational and Ideological Foundations of the Party*, given to officials of the WPK Central Committee on August 15, 1969, he referred to the importance of laying solid foundations for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche and created an example in this regard while leading the sector of art and literature and the KPA.

On February 1, 1974, October 9, 1976, March 1, 1977 and on several other

occasions he advanced a policy of laying solid foundations for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche.

He emphasized that to this end it was important to intensify education in loyalty to the WPK and the leader among its members and other working people, train its hardcore and establish revolutionary discipline of acting as one within the Party.

He gave priority to building up the ranks of officials.

He set a principle in selecting officials: Loyalty to Kim Il Sung and the WPK should be regarded as the basic criterion and practical abilities should be considered in combination with it; the ranks of officials should be built up by combining old, middle-aged and young people proportionally; and young and daring people in particular should be promoted. On the other hand, he established a well-knit system of educating officials and made sure that the WPK organizations gave officials effective education and the institutions for training officials of the WPK worked in a far-sighted way.

In addition, he attached importance to intensifying education in the WPK's monolithic ideology so as to arm all its members with the Juche idea.

In his speech titled, *On Improving and Strengthening the Party's Information and Motivation Work As Required by the Developing Reality*, delivered at a consultative meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on December 6, 1978 he stressed the need to give officials and other members of the WPK and working people more effective education to arm them with the fundamentals of the Juche idea. He ensured that this education was conducted with Kim Il Sung's works and the WPK documents as the basic textbooks.

He also made sure that the monolithic leadership system was established in the work and activities of the WPK.

He set rigid discipline of reporting to the WPK Central Committee all the matters of principle arising in the work and activities of the WPK and dealing with them according to its decision, and established throughout the WPK a revolutionary climate of implementing the WPK's lines and policies to the letter.

At a meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee held in June 1975, he said that the work of establishing the WPK's monolithic leadership system should be effectively conducted with concrete methodology and according to a stage-by-stage plan.

He also put emphasis on enhancing the functions and role of the WPK organizations at all levels in every possible way to ensure the WPK's

monolithic leadership in all fields of the revolution and construction.

At a consultative meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee held on April 28, 1979, he advanced a policy of establishing the WPK's leadership system and saw to it that officials and other members of the WPK took an active part in Party life with a proper attitude towards their organizations, so as to ensure the WPK's leadership in all the sectors of the revolution and construction.

In the 1970s great successes were made in the work to lay foundations for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche, with the result that the WPK was strengthened organizationally and ideologically and its leadership role enhanced as never before. Thus was provided a firm guarantee for modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

3. MODELLING THE ENTIRE KPA ON KIMILSUNGISM

As part of an effort to imbue the whole society with Kimilsungism, Kim Jong Il paid close attention to modelling the entire KPA on Kimilsungism.

In his talk titled, *Let Us Model the Entire Army on Kimilsungism*, given to commanding officers of the General Political Bureau of the KPA on January 1, 1975, he proclaimed the modelling of the entire KPA on Kimilsungism as the general objective of army building and set forth the tasks and ways to this end.

He defined that modelling the entire KPA on Kimilsungism means training all the service personnel to be true advocates of Kimilsungism who are unfailingly loyal to the WPK and the leader and making the KPA an out-and-out army of the leader and the WPK by carrying out army building and military activities thoroughly on the basis of Kimilsungism. He emphasized that in order to model the entire KPA on Kimilsungism it is necessary to step up the WPK's political work and establish the WPK's leadership system across the KPA. He added that it is also important to build up the ranks of commanding officers and conduct the work of modelling the entire KPA on Kimilsungism in a far-sighted way based on clear-cut stages and targets.

Under the slogan "**Let us model the entire army on Kimilsungism!**" he directed the work of building up the KPA into an invincible revolutionary army.

He directed primary concern to establishing the WPK's leadership system across the KPA.

In his talk titled, *On Some Problems Arising in Party Political Work in the People's Army at Present*, given to a senior officer of the General Political Bureau of the KPA on August 29, 1977, he said that the major line of Party political work in the KPA was to establish the WPK's leadership system across it. And in August 1977 he arranged for the WPK Central Committee to review the work of the General Political Bureau of the KPA so as to put the overall system of its Party political work on the right track and carry on all of its undertakings under the unified guidance of the WPK.

He also saw to it that KPA officers were chosen from among those who were loyal to the WPK and the leader, competent enough and possessed of soldierly qualities. He asserted that proper ideological education should be given to them so that they would faithfully support the WPK and the leader by force of arms throughout their lives. In particular, he ensured that a short course organized by the WPK for commanding officers of the KPA served as an occasion to temper their Party spirit and establish a revolutionary climate of supporting the WPK throughout the army.

He directed concern to training reserve officers of the KPA so as to produce young officers of a new generation who would carry forward the cause of building a Juche-oriented army from generation to generation.

He made an enlarged meeting of the 20th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth KPA Committee of the WPK serve as a milestone in establishing the WPK's leadership system across the army.

He also channelled efforts into intensifying politico-ideological education among the service personnel of the KPA.

He put emphasis on the education in loyalty to the leader.

On January 1, 1976, in a talk to officials of the WPK Central Committee and the General Political Bureau of the KPA, he advanced the slogan "**Let us fight devotedly for the great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung!**" He said that the education in loyalty to the leader should be conducted in plain words and theoretically so that the slogan would be kept in the minds of the service personnel as an element of their firm faith and determination.

He put stress on the education to encourage the service personnel of the KPA to follow the example of faithful devotion set by the anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters and the heroic soldiers in the days of the Fatherland Liberation War.

In December 1979 he referred to the need for the KPA officers to

conduct a brisk movement for emulating the anti-Japanese revolutionary fighter O Jung Hup. Noting that he had been a prototype of a revolutionary soldier possessed of the spirit of regarding the orders of Commander Kim Il Sung as absolute and implementing them unconditionally, iron discipline, a high sense of organization and a meticulous manner of managing his unit, he referred to the need to press on with this movement as an important aspect of Party work.

In his talk, *On Pushing Ahead with the Campaign to Emulate Hero Ri Su Bok in the People's Army*, given to the director of the General Political Bureau of the KPA on October 2, 1976, he said that it was important to learn from the soldier's loyalty to the WPK and the leader, ardent patriotism, self-sacrificing spirit and heroism.

He also saw to it that cinema was used as an important means of education in loyalty to the leader.

He paid concern to intensifying education in revolutionary traditions among the service personnel of the KPA.

He led the KPA to inherit and develop in an all-round way the revolutionary traditions of Juche under the slogan **"Let us train, study and live like the anti-Japanese guerrillas!"**

He designated April 25, 1932, the day when the first revolutionary army of Korea was founded, as the founding day of the KPA and stressed the need for all the service personnel of the KPA to learn from the April 25 revolutionary spirit. As part of a measure to intensify education among the service personnel, he had study trips organized to revolutionary battle sites and other historic sites.

He saw to it that revolutionary education, class education and education in socialist patriotism were stepped up among the service personnel of the KPA so as to implant in their minds a high degree of revolutionary and class consciousness, ardent love for their socialist motherland and spirit of defending it to the end.

He took steps to improve the KPA's methods of political and ideological work and make efficient use of each and every means of information and motivation.

To make the anti-Japanese guerrillas' method of political work prevail across the KPA he gave a talk titled, *On Thoroughly Applying the Anti-Japanese Guerrillas' Method of Political Work*, to senior officials of the General Political Bureau of the KPA on January 9, 1977. He ensured that the Seventh Meeting of Motivation Workers of the KPA held in November the same year served as a new turning point in improving political and ideological

education within the army. In February 1979 he sent a letter titled, *On Improving and Intensifying Information and Motivation Work within the People's Army*, to those attending the meeting and short course of chiefs of information and motivation sections of the political departments of the corps (services and arms) and divisions (brigades) of the KPA. In the letter, he emphasized the need for all Party organizations and information workers of the KPA to eliminate obsolete methods of political and ideological work and conduct information and motivation work in a dynamic, novel and effective manner as the anti-Japanese guerrillas had done, in the battle-line way in particular.

He established across the KPA a well-organized broadcasting system for the education of its service personnel and made it serve as an effective means of implanting loyalty to the WPK and the leader in their minds. He guided the work of the press and the Song and Dance Ensemble of the KPA so that they would play a proper role in accelerating the pace of modelling the entire KPA on Kimilsungism. In order to bring about a fresh improvement in the ideological work of the KPA he saw to it that its information and motivation system including education, lecture and motivation work was operated in such a way that it would touch the heartstrings of the service personnel and take substantial effect as intended by the WPK.

He channelled great efforts into strengthening the KPA in military and technical terms to meet the requirements of modelling the entire KPA on Kimilsungism.

He encouraged the KPA officers to enhance their abilities by making an in-depth study of the experiences gained during the anti-Japanese armed struggle and the Fatherland Liberation War as well as the foreign war experiences from the standpoint of Juche. And he sent them many equipment and documentaries needed for enlarging their military knowledge.

He paid due concern to adapting the military organizational and operations command systems to the country's present situation and the requirements of modern warfare and improving the management of army units. In December 1979 he took measures to enhance the role of the general staffs at all levels so as to strengthen the command system of the KPA as a whole. He also set forth the task of modernizing the means of command communications to ensure promptness and accuracy of commanding and adopted all necessary steps to this end.

He also directed attention to improving the military and technical qualifications of the service personnel. He specified the orientation and

contents of military training so that it would contribute to preparing the service personnel to be well versed in Juche-oriented tactics created by Kim Il Sung and possessed of good marksmanship, profound military and technical knowledge and strong physique. To raise the manoeuvrability of army units in line with the requirements of modern warfare, he initiated the mobile exercise of some units and subunits and gave energetic guidance over the preparations for it and its whole process.

He made every effort to modernize military hardware of the KPA in keeping with the requirements of Juche-oriented war tactics and the actual conditions of the country.

On September 10, 1979 he expounded the guidelines for the development of the munitions industry and led the effort to update the armaments of the KPA. In particular, he underlined the need to produce modern weaponry that were light, convenient, powerful and efficient to suit the constitution of the KPA service personnel and the country's topographical features. He inspected munitions factories to resolve the problems arising in their production.

He made sure that the KPA units stepped up mass movements as a requisite of modelling the entire KPA on Kimilsungism. In his talk titled, *On Dynamically Conducting the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement in the People's Army*, given to the director of the General Political Bureau of the KPA on December 21, 1975 he emphasized that the flames of the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement should be kindled across the KPA. And in early May 1979 he took concrete steps to carry on this movement.

He also had this movement closely combined with various other types of mass movements, such as the Red Flag Company Movement and the campaigns to emulate O Jung Hup and unassuming heroes.

4. RALLYING THE BROAD SECTIONS OF THE MASSES CLOSELY BEHIND THE WPK

Kim Jong Il led the struggle to rally the masses from all walks of life behind the WPK in line with the requirements of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

He set out a new policy on the work with the masses for the modelling of the whole society on Kimilsungism.

On August 2, 1974 he made public a work titled, *Let Us Accelerate the Modelling of the Whole Society on Kimilsungism by Bringing About a Fundamental Improvement in Party Work*, in which he advanced a general task to be tackled in the work with the masses and a consistent policy for its implementation.

Regarding the general task for the work with the masses, he said:

“At present the work with the masses should be further improved according to the Party’s ultimate programme of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism. The general task for the work with the masses is to transform the masses from all walks of life into ardent revolutionaries, glorious Kimilsungists, and to educate them to wage a vigorous struggle to the end under the banner of Kimilsungism.”

He continued to say that the consistent policy on the work with the masses pursued by the WPK is to win over and unite the broad sections of the masses closely behind the WPK and the leader while isolating a tiny handful of hostile elements.

As for the ways of improving this work he stressed that the WPK officials should work with a revolutionary view of the masses and hold fast to its mass line, improve the methods and style of their work, and adopt a scrupulous manner on the basis of a concrete methodology.

In order to rally the masses from all walks of life behind the WPK he made sure that the WPK organizations worked effectively with the masses to suit the characteristic features of their social strata.

He directed primary concern to the work with workers and farmers.

He set the working class, the leading class of the revolution, as the vanguard and model for revolutionizing the whole society and modelling it on Kimilsungism and ensured that the WPK organizations consolidated the ranks of the working class and helped them step up ideological self-improvement through study, organizational life and revolutionary practice.

He also had the work with farmers and intellectuals improved to suit their characteristics so as to train them into devoted Kimilsungists.

He saw to it that education of the masses was conducted in various forms and by various methods to suit their characteristics.

He put stress on enhancing the role of the working people’s organizations in the work with the masses.

He ensured that the WPK organizations at all levels showed close concern for the work of the working people’s organizations so as to establish an efficient system of education for their members and carry on ideological

education in various forms and by various methods. He also led the working people's organizations to set up a uniform organizational life system for their members, encourage them to establish a revolutionary climate of taking part in organizational life voluntarily. Meanwhile, he led the WPK organizations to enhance the independent role of the working people's organizations in the work with the masses.

As a result of the work with the masses and the role of working people's organizations being improved, the revolutionary ranks of the country were consolidated to meet the requirements of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

5. CARRYING FORWARD THE REVOLUTIONARY TRADITIONS OF JUCHE IN AN ALL-ROUND WAY

Kim Jong Il led the effort to carry forward the revolutionary traditions of Juche to meet the requirements of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

He said:

“We must resolutely defend the glorious revolutionary traditions the leader created in the period of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle and carry them forward generation after generation.”

The glorious revolutionary traditions created by Kim Il Sung are the historical roots of the WPK and the Korean revolution, the lifeline that ensures their continuity down through generations, and the eternal cornerstone for carrying through the revolutionary cause of Juche.

In March 1974, he advanced the slogan **“Let us produce, study and live like the anti-Japanese guerrillas!”**

To produce like the anti-Japanese guerrillas means to carry out the revolutionary tasks without fail in the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and in the revolutionary style of work as were displayed by the anti-Japanese guerrillas who were boundlessly loyal to Kim Il Sung. To study like them means to regard studying as one's foremost revolutionary task and study hard by emulating the guerrillas who never stopped studying in any adversity. To live like them means to keep one's political integrity as his life and soul and adopt a revolutionary, cultured and wholesome lifestyle by

learning from their faith and principles that they should lead a worthwhile life for the sake of Kim Il Sung and the revolution.

As for the ways of making the working people produce, study and live like the anti-Japanese guerrillas, he stressed that education in the revolutionary traditions of the WPK should be intensified among them and a climate of working like the anti-Japanese guerrillas established throughout society.

He led the effort to carry forward the revolutionary traditions in an all-round way, holding aloft the slogan **“Let us produce, study and live like the anti-Japanese guerrillas!”**

He put emphasis on educating the WPK members and other working people in the revolutionary traditions.

He paid primary concern to making all the working people safeguard the revolutionary traditions with a correct viewpoint of and attitude towards them.

In his speech titled, *Let Us Defend the Politico-Ideological Unity and Purity of the Party Generation after Generation*, made at a meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on October 22, 1976, he said that how one approaches the revolutionary traditions is a fundamental problem that has a bearing on one’s attitude towards the WPK and the revolution. He continued that proper education should be given to the WPK members and other working people so that they would defend and carry forward the revolutionary traditions.

He also directed close concern to the administration of the relics pertaining to Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary activities.

Later, noting that remarkable progress had been made in this work since the WPK took direct charge of it, he recollected that in the 1970s a dynamic, nationwide campaign had been launched to discover and lay out revolutionary battle sites and other revolutionary sites.

He put stress on collecting data concerning the revolutionary relics.

In March 1974, in his talks to the officials concerned, he stressed the significance of collecting and compiling the data related with Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary activities. During his on-site guidance trips to North Hamgyong Province in 1974 and 1975 he set out principles to be maintained in this work. In 1976 he established a well-knit system to this end and in 1977 took a series of measures for the permanent preservation of revolutionary relics. He ensured that this work was conducted as a campaign involving the entire WPK and the whole country. As a result, notable progress was made in discovering the revolutionary relics and compiling the relevant data, and solid foundations were laid for the improvement of education in the revolutionary traditions.

In addition, he pushed ahead with the work of laying out revolutionary and other museums, revolutionary battle sites and other revolutionary sites.

Shortly after the 15th Plenary Meeting of the Fourth WPK Central Committee, he volunteered to take charge of laying out revolutionary battle sites and other revolutionary sites, and in the 1970s initiated a number of construction projects.

He laid down a basic principle to be maintained in building those sites: The main stress should be put on preserving in an original state the relics and remains associated with the revolutionary activities of Kim Il Sung.

On the occasion of the 30th anniversary of the founding of the WPK he led the projects for laying out the revolutionary sites in Mt. Wangjae, Kunja-ri and Kim Hyong Jik County.

In particular, he set out the correct orientation and ways for building the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site including the construction of a grand monument, the centrepiece of the project, and adopted specific steps to speed up its construction. He visited the construction site in May 1974 and in March and October 1975, solving the problems arising in the construction and showing meticulous care for the builders' living conditions. As a result, the Wangjaesan Revolutionary Site was built splendidly in a year and four months.

His next concern was the construction of the Samjiyon Revolutionary Battle Site.

On the basis of his long-conceived plan of building the area around Lake Samji into a perfect base for education in revolutionary traditions, he initiated the construction of the Samjiyon Revolutionary Battle Site on the occasion of the 40th anniversary of the victory in the battle in the Musan area.

In early July 1976 he visited the spot to give his advice on the grand monument including a statue of Kim Il Sung to be erected near Lake Samji. On April 29, 1977 he examined the design for the project and specified what had to be done to build it into a world-class monument in terms of ideological and artistic contents and size. The project was completed in a little over two years.

He saw to it that the ongoing projects for building revolutionary and other museums displaying Kim Il Sung's achievements were pushed forward, and similar museums in provinces were built with the main emphasis put on accentuating their local features and Kim Il Sung's achievements associated with them.

He directed great efforts to improving the system and methods of education in the revolutionary traditions as required by the developing reality.

For this purpose, he established a well-organized system for the study of the revolutionary traditions across the WPK so as to intensify their education in various forms and by various methods.

He took a series of steps to improve the management of Comrade Kim Il Sung's Revolutionary Ideology Study Rooms set up in all parts of the country.

In May 1974 he made the rounds of the study rooms in Sonbong County, North Hamgyong Province, formulating a reasonable system and method of their management and specifying the ways to intensify education in the revolutionary traditions through them.

He stepped up education in the revolutionary traditions through mass media and the works of art and literature.

He took positive steps to publish books and other data on the theme of education in the revolutionary traditions, particularly the memoirs of the anti-Japanese war veterans and other reminiscences dealing with the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities, as well as data on the experiences gained during the anti-Japanese armed struggle.

He made sure that newspapers, broadcasts and all other information means were used to disseminate the revolutionary exploits achieved in the period of the anti-Japanese armed struggle and an intensive campaign was waged to create revolutionary films, novels, songs and other artistic and literary works on the theme of revolutionary traditions.

He paid close concern to intensifying education in the revolutionary traditions through visits and study trips to revolutionary battle sites and other historic sites, revolutionary and other museums.

As a form of education in the revolutionary traditions he initiated a 1 000-*ri* march and had this type of march organized regularly among youth and students along the route of the 1 000-*ri* Journey for Learning and the 1 000-*ri* Journey for National Liberation taken by Kim Il Sung.

The 1 000-*ri* march is a study tour covering the course between Phophyong and Mangyongdae which Kim Il Sung had traversed in his boyhood with a great ambition for learning and national liberation.

Kim Jong Il organized the first round of the 1 000-*ri* Journey for Learning in 1974 and the 1 000-*ri* Journey for National Liberation involving over 10 000 students in 1975 to mark the 50th anniversary of the day when Kim Il Sung had made it. And he proposed organizing this type of march on a regular basis from August 1975 and enlisting all the students across the country in a planned way.

He ensured that the slogan **“Let us produce, study and live like the**

anti-Japanese guerrillas!” served as a guideline for all working people in and out of work.

He had a vigorous information and motivation campaign launched to establish the anti-Japanese guerrillas’ style of work and life across the WPK and society so as to make all working people work and live under this slogan.

He led the effort to this end.

In his works titled, *On Establishing a Revolutionary Climate in Implementing the Party’s Policies* (November 8, 1977) and *On Carrying Out the Party’ Policies Unconditionally* (May 25, 1978), he emphasized that all the WPK members and other working people should emulate the anti-Japanese guerrillas who had implemented Kim Il Sung’s orders and instructions to the letter and display a revolutionary spirit of carrying out his instructions and the WPK’s policies unconditionally. He continued that they should press forward socialist construction in the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude and carry out their revolutionary tasks at the earliest possible date with a bold plan and a positive attitude.

He directed concern to establishing a habit of studying like the anti-Japanese guerillas. He took positive steps to introduce the anti-Japanese guerrillas’ method of studying, which had proved effective during their revolutionary struggle, and to popularize on a nationwide scale the question-and-answer contest, a new form of studying suited to the socialist reality of the present day, from 1975. He ensured that holding aloft the slogan **“Let the whole Party study!”** the WPK members and all other working people regarded studying as part of their daily routine to become revolutionaries who would study hard whenever and wherever, just as the anti-Japanese guerrillas had done even between fierce battles and on march.

He stressed the need to establish the anti-Japanese guerillas’ way of living throughout society on several occasions, including a consultative meeting of the secretaries, directors and deputy directors of departments of the WPK Central Committee in May 1975.

He pointed out that the WPK members and other working people should take an active part in their organizational life to add lustre to their political integrity, acquire a responsible attitude towards the management of the country’s economy, and live and work in a revolutionary way by organizing their life in a cultured and frugal manner.

Thus, the revolutionary spirit and mettle of the anti-Japanese guerrillas pervaded the whole society and the revolutionary traditions were carried forward in all fields of the revolution and construction.

6. DEVELOPING THE THREE REVOLUTIONS– IDEOLOGICAL, TECHNOLOGICAL AND CULTURAL–AND INITIATING THE THREE-REVOLUTION RED FLAG MOVEMENT

Kim Jong Il led the effort to develop the three revolutions–ideological, technological and cultural–as the fundamental way to model the whole society on Kimilsungism.

First of all, he advanced a new revolutionary slogan **“Let us meet the requirements of Juche in ideology, technology and culture!”** in November 1975.

Meeting the requirements of Juche in ideology, technology and culture means transforming people, nature and society as required by the ideology, theory and method of Juche.

Ideological remoulding is aimed at training all members of society into Juche-type revolutionaries, genuine Kimilsungists. It is the foremost task to be tackled in modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

Technological upgrading means developing technology to deliver people from arduous labour and provide them with an independent and creative life. This is an important political task for emancipating the working people, who were freed from exploitation and oppression, even from the fetters of nature.

Cultural transformation is to be conducted so as to make all members of society masters of culture and technology who are of high cultural and technological standards and to create a genuinely people-oriented and revolutionary socialist culture. It is an important task to be tackled in bringing them up into fully-developed people and meeting their cultural needs.

The fundamental requirement of this revolutionary slogan is to thoroughly ensure the position of the masses of the people as masters of the state and society and raise their role as such to the maximum by meeting the requirements of the Juche idea in the revolutionary struggle for transforming ideology, technology and culture.

In order to facilitate the development of the three revolutions under this slogan, Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into expanding and developing

the three-revolution team movement initiated by Kim Il Sung.

He said:

“Three-revolution teams have been organized to give guidance in carrying out the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions and the three-revolution team movement is a movement which is conducted under the direct supervision and guidance of the Party.”

The three-revolution team movement is a new type of guidance method in which political and ideological guidance is combined with scientific and technological guidance, the superiors give effective assistance to their subordinates, and the masses of the people are roused to the implementation of the three revolutions.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the movement expanded into all sectors and an integral system of guidance over them was established.

In 1974 he took radical measures to send three-revolution teams to construction, transport and other sectors of the national economy, as well as major units of industry and agriculture. He also had such teams dispatched to other different sectors including science and education. Thus, by 1975, the three-revolution team movement embraced all sectors and units of the country and was pushed forward as a Partywide concern.

He adopted a series of measures to promote the movement: From February 1974 the WPK Central Committee provided a unified supervision and guidance to the three-revolution teams in the sectors of industry and agriculture; in March 1975 the general departments of three-revolution teams across the country, ranging from the capital to provinces, cities and counties, were reorganized into the headquarters of three-revolution teams; and in 1976 a rational system for summing up the results of the teams' activities was established.

He paid concern to building up the ranks of the three-revolution teams and improving their members' political and professional qualifications.

In 1975 he adopted measures to reinforce the teams annually with graduates from Kim Il Sung University, the then Kim Chaek Technical University and other universities and the WPK official-training centres, and organize short courses for them. In addition, he gave detailed instructions to the heads of the teams and arranged for the team members to attend the meetings of the Political Committee of the WPK Central Committee and major national meetings. He also saw to it that many units were set up as models in carrying out the three revolutions for others to follow and the Three-Revolution Exhibition House was built for the team members throughout the country to see the successes made in the course of the movement.

In May 1974 he set the right orientation of the teams' work: Their basic duty is to improve guidance in carrying out the three revolutions. In February 1976 he told officials of the central headquarters of the three-revolution teams that the teams should properly guide and support the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement and work in close cooperation with the WPK organizations to press on with the movement.

He made sure that the WPK and society paid close concern to the three-revolution team movement and scrupulous care was taken of the members' work and life.

In August 1974 he stressed that the WPK organizations and officials should help the three-revolution teams in their work in a positive manner and the mass media should launch a dynamic campaign to give wide publicity to the three-revolution team movement.

At a consultative meeting of chief secretaries of provincial committees of the WPK held in December 1976, he said that the WPK organizations should pay close attention to developing the three-revolution team movement, regarding it as an important aspect of their work, and gave instructions on the movement on several other occasions that year. And when the teams made successes in their work, he spoke highly of them to encourage their members.

He initiated the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement as part of a measure to develop the three revolutions.

He said:

“We have decided to launch the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement on all fronts of socialist construction as we waged the Chollima Workteam Movement previously, true to the leader’s intentions.”

He ensured that the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement was pressed forward under the slogan **“Let us meet the requirements of Juche in ideology, technology and culture!”**

At a consultative meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee in November 1975 he initiated the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement, a new, higher form of mass movement,

In early December the same year, the first torch of the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement in the industrial sector was kindled at the then Komdok Mine and in the agricultural sector at the Chongsan Cooperative Farm. Afterwards, mass rallies were held at all other units of the country in response to those model units' appeal. In a little more than a month, the flames of the movement spread to all social sectors including industry, agriculture, transport, science, education and public health.

In a speech titled, *On Some Main Tasks to Be Tackled in Party Work This Year*, delivered on January 1, 1976, he defined the matters of principle arising in promoting the movement such as its essence, central task and major characteristic.

The Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement is, in essence, a new mass movement to accelerate socialist construction to the utmost through organic combination of the ideological transformation of the people and the collective innovation movement in the building of the economy, culture and national defence by applying the principles of the speed campaign and the ideological campaign.

The central task of this movement is to expedite the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions in a comprehensive way.

Its major characteristic is that it is an advanced form of mass movement for ideological remoulding to make all members of society into ardent Kimilsungists by vigorously waging the ideological revolution to meet the requirement of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism; the one for technological upgrading reflecting the new demand of the reality when industrialization was brought to completion and socialist construction was proceeding on a higher stage; and the one for cultural transformation to be conducted on a new stage of the developing revolution for building a completely triumphant socialist society.

Kim Jong Il clarified ways to press on with this movement.

He stressed that it was important to set the stages and define the tasks for each stage correctly, and properly sum up and evaluate the results, adding that the WPK should regard the movement as one of its major concerns and intensify its guidance over it.

He ensured that the WPK committees set this movement as a vital element of their work and concentrated on implementing its tasks, while combining guidance over their members' organizational and ideological life closely with the movement. He emphasized that in leading the movement they should give prominence to the three-revolution teams and regard guidance over them as one of their concerns.

He also underlined the need to conduct effective organizational and political work for making this movement a concern of the masses themselves.

He had the significance of the movement widely disseminated among the WPK members and other working people and took proactive steps to wage an ideological mobilization campaign aimed at rousing the broad masses to the movement. On the other hand, in June 1976 he had a written directive for the

Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement sent down and a Partywide discussion held for its implementation. In November the same year experience-swapping meetings and demonstration lectures were organized as part of a measure to encourage all sectors and all units to conduct this movement on a higher level.

With the successes and experiences made in the movement widely spreading through the mass media and discussions about loyalty heating up on *Rodong Sinmun*, the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement gained momentum.

Kim Jong Il initiated the movement for emulating unassuming heroes and had it conducted in close combination with the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement.

In October 1979 Kim Il Sung identified as unassuming heroes those who were working with devotion for the WPK and revolution, country and fellow people whether they were recognized or not and without seeking fame or reward, saying that an extensive campaign should be organized to emulate them.

In the speeches he made on October 7 the same year at a consultative meeting of chief secretaries of provincial committees of the WPK and on January 8, 1980 at a consultative meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee, Kim Jong Il initiated the movement to emulate unassuming heroes and set it as an important policy of the WPK.

The movement to emulate unassuming heroes is a mass movement to train all members of society into revolutionaries with boundless loyalty to the WPK and the leader by influencing them with the heroes' positive examples and to accelerate socialist construction by giving full scope to their revolutionary enthusiasm and creative ingenuity.

Kim Jong Il defined this movement as a mass drive that is in keeping with the requirements of a new, higher stage of the developing revolution where the modelling of the whole society on Kimilsungism came to the fore, and led all the WPK organizations to push ahead with this movement.

The newspaper of the WPK and other publications gave wide coverage of the unassuming heroes' exemplary deeds and its organizations arranged reading sessions and lectures about them. A lively discussion was held on the newspaper to learn from the heroes' ennobling ideological and spiritual traits. The WPK organizations at all levels discussed ways to push forward the movement to emulate unassuming heroes and conducted effective organizational and political work to this end. With the adoption in January 1980 of the decision of the Secretariat of the WPK Central Committee *On Further*

Developing the Movement to Emulate Unassuming Heroes, each committee of the WPK pressed on with this movement as one of its major concerns and in close combination with the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement.

The movement expanded rapidly with great vitality and attraction.

With the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions gaining momentum under the wise leadership of Kim Jong Il, substantial progress was made in the people's ideological and spiritual life, the economy, culture and all other fields. All of this rendered a great contribution to hastening the modelling of the whole society on Kimilsungism.

7. LAUNCHING THE 70-DAY CAMPAIGN, EXPEDITING SOCIALIST ECONOMIC CONSTRUCTION UNDER THE BANNER OF SELF-RELIANCE, AND ADVANCING A STRATEGIC POLICY OF KEEPING TO THE KOREAN LIFESTYLE

Kim Jong Il pushed ahead with socialist economic construction in line with the demands of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

Kim Il Sung, with a keen insight into the requirements of the developing revolution, set forth a policy of grand socialist construction at the Eighth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth WPK Central Committee in February 1974. The policy was an economic programme to speed up the modelling of the whole society on Kimilsungism by fulfilling the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule and attaining in near future the ten long-term goals of socialist economic construction including those for increased production of steel, nonferrous metal, coal, electric power and cement.

True to Kim Il Sung's lofty intention Kim Jong Il led the struggle to step up grand socialist construction.

As part of a measure to this end, he advanced in February 1974 a policy of conducting a speed campaign.

Drawing on the experience he had gained during his guidance over the work of making a revolution in the cinema and opera, he ensured that the campaign was waged on all fronts of socialist construction.

He defined the speed campaign as the major form of socialist construction

to push forward all undertakings with lightning speed and as a revolutionary principle of work.

He clarified that the primary requirement of the speed campaign was to enlist all resources available for the maximum speed and ensure best quality in all undertakings.

He noted that the speed campaign required giving definite priority to the ideological revolution, spurring the technological revolution to introduce new technologies in succession and ensuring close combination with proper organizational leadership.

He guided the effort to promote grand socialist construction according to the policy on the speed campaign.

He initiated a 70-day campaign as part of a measure to this end and led it to a brilliant victory.

He stressed that to meet the requirements of the speed campaign from the first year of grand socialist construction, it was important to enhance the responsibilities and role of the WPK organizations and officials of the commissions and ministries under the then Administration Council that were in charge of organizing and commanding economic construction, and adopted a series of necessary measures.

By the close of the third quarter of that year, however, there was little prospect of fulfilling the yearly plan, which would in turn have a considerable impact on the execution of the Six-Year Plan. The reason for this was the shortage of raw and other materials and the strain on transportation as well as passivism on the part of officials.

At a meeting of the Political Committee of the WPK Central Committee held on October 3, 1974 Kim Il Sung acquainted himself with the implementation of the national economic plan, and stressed that the plan for that year should be fulfilled at any cost.

To tide over the difficulties in the way of executing the plan and implement his instructions without fail, Kim Jong Il decided to launch a 70-day campaign.

On October 5, 1974 he told the officials of the WPK Central Committee about his intention. On October 9, he held a consultative meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee and the Administration Council and chief secretaries of the provincial committees of the WPK and delivered a speech titled, *Let Us Launch a 70-day Campaign as a Partywide Drive*. He clarified the purpose and central task of the campaign and ways for its implementation and inspired the entire WPK, the whole country and all the people.

He said:

“We should organize the 70-day campaign down to the last detail and vigorously push ahead with it without slackening from the beginning, and thus bring it to a successful completion without fail.”

He had the campaign start in late October and gave efficient guidance over the whole course of it.

He exerted great efforts to establish a centralistic guidance system and form guidance teams.

Headquarters for the 70-day campaign were set up in the capital, provinces, cities, counties and industrial establishments, and the central headquarters in the capital assumed the role of the General Staff. Guidance teams were organized at the WPK, Administration Council and other levels and dispatched to provinces and major sectors and units of the national economy. Senior officials in the capital and provinces went down to production sites to direct the campaign.

Kim Jong Il underlined the need to wage a powerful ideological offensive and combine it with scrupulous organization.

On November 2, 1974 he said that a spirit of unyielding offensive was needed to overcome difficulties and win victory in the 70-day campaign, adding that it was more important for the staffs of the central headquarters to direct the campaign in that spirit.

He identified ideological motivation as the fundamental key to success of the campaign and ensured that a sweeping ideological education was conducted with a focus on enhancing the loyalty of the WPK members and other working people towards their leader and Party and giving free rein to the spirit of carrying out Kim Il Sung’s instructions and the WPK’s policies unconditionally. He also had all information and motivational means mobilized and concentrated on the major thrust areas of the campaign to drum up support for increased production. He stressed that it was essential to give fullest play to the masses’ creative zeal. He designated mining industry, transport and export as the major thrust sectors of the campaign and enlisted all forces in shoring them up.

According to his instructions, guidance teams and information and motivational workers converged on those sectors.

As part of a measure to boost mining industry precedence was given to geological prospecting, tunnelling and removal of spoils; efficient mining equipment were supplied to coal and ore mines on a preferential basis; the projects of laying conveyor belts and cableways were speeded up; and the problem of manpower was solved.

To ease the strain on transportation a strict railway control system was established, concentrated transport intensified, scrupulous arrangements made to shorten the round-trip time of freight wagons, and their repair and production stepped up. Measures were taken to scale up production of export goods, speed up transportation of them and increase cargo traffic and storage capacities of trade ports.

On the other hand, the entire WPK, the whole country and all the people turned out to assist those major sectors.

At every stage and period of the 70-day campaign Kim Jong Il indicated the orientation and ways for it, learned about its progress in all parts of the country on a daily basis and adopted necessary measures. During his visits to Sinchon, Haeju, Jaeryong Mine, Thaethan Mine and other places, he acquainted himself with how officials were directing the campaign and how production, supply of raw and other materials and supply service work were going on, and solved all problems.

Under his wise and seasoned leadership the 70-day campaign was brought to a successful finish and miraculous successes were achieved in grand socialist construction. In the period of the campaign the title of Labour Hero was conferred on as many as 300 working people, orders and medals awarded to 150 000 meritorious workers and still many others were admitted to the WPK.

This was how the 70-day Campaign Speed, a new Chollima speed, was born. Industrial output grew 1.7 times and the gross value of industrial output for the year 1974 increased by 17.2% as against the previous year.

As a result, the national economic plan for that year could be overfulfilled, which in turn opened up a bright prospect for earlier fulfilment of the Six-Year Plan. Thus a new age of speed campaign was ushered in.

Through this campaign the people were firmly convinced that they could emerge ever-victorious riding out any difficulties as long as they were led by Kim Jong Il, and were fully determined to remain unfailingly loyal to the leadership of the WPK.

On February 15, 1975 the then Central People's Committee of the DPRK adopted a decree on conferring the title of DPRK Hero on Kim Jong Il.

On the basis of the successes made in the campaign, he wisely led the effort to carry out the major tasks of the Six-Year Plan before the 30th founding anniversary of the WPK.

At a meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee in January 1975 he advanced a policy of celebrating the 30th founding anniversary of the WPK as a grand festival of victors by fulfilling the yearly plan before October

10 and carrying through the major tasks of the Six-Year Plan ahead of schedule in response to the New Year Address delivered by Kim Il Sung, and stressed that they should make good preparations and be scrupulous in organizational and political work.

To ensure the new campaign a success, he stressed, it was necessary to hold fast to the line of three revolutions and implement it in all fields of politics, the economy and culture. Accordingly, three-revolutions guidance teams were dispatched to all provinces, leading factories and enterprises, and a three-revolutions central headquarters formed for unified direction. Positive measures were taken to keep production on track from the outset of the year without slackening the spirit as had been displayed during the 70-day campaign, with February set as the month for making preparations for the new campaign.

As part of a measure to inspire the working people Kim Jong Il saw to it that they made a close study of Kim Il Sung's New Year Address, the decisions adopted at the Tenth Plenary Meeting of the Fifth WPK Central Committee in February 1975 and the slogans issued by the WPK Central Committee on the occasion of the 30th founding anniversary of the WPK, and brisk motivational work for increased production was conducted across the country.

He also ensured that the souring revolutionary spirit of the working people was displayed in their efforts for carrying out the technological revolution, thus accelerating the projects for all-round automation of metallurgical factories and other establishments in heavy industry and introduction of large and high-speed mining and transporting equipment in mining industry.

He also organized a Speed Campaign Youth Shock Brigade so that the young people would play a vanguard role in making breakthroughs in economic construction.

For a success of the new campaign he led the key sectors of socialist construction to bring about a revolutionary upswing.

Priority was given to boosting extractive industry, the first process of economic production, and in particular increasing the output of nonferrous metal ores. To effect an upsurge in production at the Komdok Mine the whole country rendered active assistance to it and powerful teams for guidance and motivational work and scientists and technicians were sent there to help it in its technological revolution. During his guidance trip to the mine on July 1, 1975 he specified a wide variety of problems arising in stepping up the ideological revolution, establishing cultured ways in production and living, improving

supply service work, and promoting the technological revolution—increasing investment for the mine, laying a large, long-distance conveyor belt, improving maintenance of equipment and setting up a proper pit-control system.

Kim Jong Il led the sector of transport to implement the policy of boosting transportation by means of pipelines, conveyor belts and cableways. He initiated the construction of a large, long-distance conveyor belt in the Unnyul Mine to increase the supply of ores to the automated Hwanghae Iron Works. On June 23, 1975, after the project was over, he looked round the thousands of metres-long conveyor belt on the West Sea, calling it a great product of self-reliance. Later, under his guidance, many projects for laying pipelines and cableways as transportation means were carried on, including the laying of a long-distance pipeline to carry ore concentrate from the Musan Mine to the Kim Chaek Iron Works.

He also adopted steps to attain the goal of grain production in the agricultural sector.

In January 1975 he said that the WPK organizations should enhance their role in the effort for carrying out the socialist rural theses. Then he visited many cooperative farms and encouraged farmers to raise crops in a scientific and technological way as required by the Juche farming method. In order to mechanize farm work he saw to it that much more tractors, over 10 000 rice-seedling transplanting machines and thousands of rice harvesters were manufactured and supplied to rural areas. And to ensure extensive use of agrochemicals he visited the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex in July 1975 and inspired the workers to further efforts.

Thanks to his leadership the major tasks of the Six-Year Plan were fulfilled before the 30th founding anniversary of the WPK.

He also led the effort to carry out the Second Seven-Year Plan under the revolutionary banner of self-reliance.

The main task of the plan was to solidify economic foundations of socialism and improve the people's standard of living still further by putting the national economy on Juche, modern and scientific footing at an accelerated speed.

In his speech titled, *Let Us Fulfil the Second Seven-year Plan Ahead of Schedule by Enlisting the Whole Party and All the People Holding Aloft the Revolutionary Slogan of Self-Reliance*, delivered to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 1, 1978, the first day of carrying out the plan, he set giving full play to the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance as the general orientation of Party work for fulfilment of the plan.

He noted that self-reliance was the only way to win final victory of the revolution and there was no other way, emphasizing that the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance should be displayed to fulfil the Second Seven-Year Plan before set time.

He continued: Ideological education should be intensified among the working people and all the WPK organizations should conduct their work with the main stress put on the economic affairs; a revolutionary climate of carrying out Kim Il Sung's instructions and the WPK's policies unconditionally should be established; the effort for increased production and economization should be stepped up; and a habit of working and living in a revolutionary way should prevail across society.

Kim Jong Il gave effective guidance over the implementation of the new long-term plan.

Scrupulous organizational and political work was done to inspire all the working people.

The 16th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth WPK Central Committee held in January 1978 adopted and sent a letter to all the WPK members, and a Partywide discussion was held to implement the tasks specified in the letter. Party guidance over economic affairs was intensified to carry out the gigantic tasks of the plan and Party work was brought in close combination with economic affairs.

In a speech titled, *On Launching a 100-day Campaign as a Partywide Drive*, delivered at a consultative meeting of chief secretaries of the provincial committees of the WPK on May 29, 1978, he set forth tasks and ways for successfully carrying on the campaign, and stressed that all the WPK organizations should enlist the masses in the campaign.

The 100-day campaign was carried on with success under his leadership, which in turn opened a bright vista for fulfilment of the Second Seven-Year Plan.

On the basis of it, he led the effort to carry out the major tasks of the long-term plan.

He devoted efforts to boosting coal production.

At a consultative meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee held in November 1978 he said that it was necessary to give precedence to prospecting, tunnelling and removal of spoils, introduce large, modern and high-speed mining equipment, and step up comprehensive mechanization of pit labour in all mines. He continued that the Anju Area Coal Mine should be renovated to become a model unit of comprehensive mechanization and all

other sectors of the national economy should assist the mine. He also paid close attention to improving the living standards of the coal miners and supply service work for them and adopted measures to build a modern coal-miners' town in the Anju area at an early date.

He pushed ahead with the work of developing rail transport.

He ensured that a 200-day campaign to make a revolution in transport was launched again at the beginning of 1978 as in 1977, and dispatched guidance teams to the railway bureau and its branches and railway factories to make a success of the campaign. In July 1979, shortly after the 18th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth WPK Central Committee whose major item of agenda was the matter of developing transport, he initiated a drive for extrahaulage on schedule without accident and made the sector of rail transport launch a mass innovation movement to satisfy the growing demands across the national economy.

He paid primary concern to electrifying railway lines: Electric traction was introduced in such sections as Kilju-Hyesan and Sinsongchon-Taedonggang; transportation means and equipment were made heavy-duty and automatic; and Juche orientation was established in developing rolling-stock industry. During his visits to railway stations, he gave the officials advice on matters arising in building stations, operating and upgrading railways and establishing discipline and order. Consequently, unprecedented innovations were made in the sector of rail transport, easing the strain on transportation.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the Tae'an work system established by Kim Il Sung was applied to the letter to improve economic management.

In January 1979 he designated the then Kangson Steel Works and other six factories as model units in conducting enterprise management as required by the Tae'an work system. He saw to it that experiences accumulated by those factories were consolidated and introduced in the relevant sectors.

In order to further improve the planning of the national economy as required by the Tae'an work system he ensured that officials concerned worked out scientific and innovative plans by reflecting Kim Il Sung's ideas and intentions in time. As part of an effort to tighten financial control he saw to it that rigid financial discipline was established by introducing in all sectors and units of the national economy the system of daily summing up of production results and finances which had already proved its worth in practice.

He also worked hard to improve the people's standard of living.

In an effort to develop light industry he defined ten goals for production of consumer goods in 1979 and led the effort for attaining them. He also took steps to keep the existing factories at full capacity, put the production lines and

methods on a modern and scientific footing and complete the construction of new factories before the Sixth Congress of the WPK.

Measures were taken to provide Pyongyang citizens with better living conditions. High-rise apartment buildings for 3 000 households were built all at once, old Ryunhwanson Street was replaced with Changgwang Street, and many cultural and welfare facilities and bases for people's emotional life were built, including Pyongyang Maternity Hospital, Changgwang Health Complex, Mansudae Art Theatre and Taesongsan Pleasure Ground.

Besides, the International Friendship Exhibition House, Pyongyang-Wonsan Tourist Road and other structures were built as monumental edifices representative of the Juche era.

In a speech titled, *Let Us Bring About a Fresh Turn in Socialist Construction by Improving the Fighting Efficiency of the Party*, delivered on December 25, 1978 at a consultative meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee and in a talk titled, *Let Us Thoroughly Implement the Party's Strategic Policy on Living Our Own Way* to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on December 19, 1979, Kim Jong Il advanced a policy of keeping to the Korean style and clarified the tasks and ways for its implementation.

He said:

“Let us live our own way!”—this is precisely an important strategic slogan which our Party advocates today.”

He threw light on the essential content of this slogan. Living our own way means, first, thinking and acting on our own initiative. In other words, it means not following others' way of thinking and manners but thinking and acting true to Kim Il Sung's instructions and the WPK's intentions by holding fast to the Juche-based stand and viewpoint. Second, it means solving everything in the interests of the Korean revolution and the Korean people and in conformity with the actual conditions of Korea. To put it another way, it means formulating lines and policies and carrying on the revolution and construction in conformity with the specific environment and conditions of the Korean revolution and, in case of adopting others' experiences, not imitating them mechanically but applying them in a creative way by adapting them to the realities of Korea and dispositions of its people. Third, it means solving everything on our own, i.e., tackling problems not by depending on others but on our own responsibility and in reliance on our own manpower, resources and technology.

Kim Jong Il set forth tasks for keeping to the Korean style: First, it is essential

to conduct positive Party work with a focus put on carrying out Kim Il Sung's instructions and the WPK's policies unconditionally and, in particular, give full play to the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance. Next, it is urgent to enhance the fighting efficiency of the WPK and develop it into an invincible revolutionary party. Last, ideological education should be intensified among the WPK members and other working people to equip them firmly with the Kim Il Sung's revolutionary idea, the Juche idea.

By holding fast to this strategic policy advanced by Kim Jong Il, the WPK and the Korean people could press on with socialist construction along the road indicated by the Juche idea. Fluttering in the van of their revolutionary struggle was the banner of Juche, the banner of national independence and the banner of self-reliance.

8. BRINGING ABOUT A FRESH UPSWING IN ALL DOMAINS OF BUILDING SOCIALIST CULTURE

Kim Jong Il pushed ahead with the work of bringing about a fresh turn in all domains of building socialist culture in keeping with the requirements of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

His foremost concern was education and science.

As Kim Il Sung made public the *Theses on Socialist Education* at the 14th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth WPK Central Committee on September 5, 1977, Kim Jong Il raised implementing the theses as the fundamental key to improving socialist education in line with the demands of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

First of all, he roused the entire WPK and all the people to implement the theses.

In October 1977 he told officials concerned that reading the theses and taking administrative measures was not enough, adding that ideological motivation was needed to implement the theses.

As part of a measure to inspire the people ideologically he had mass rallies and meetings in support of the theses held on a grand scale and intensive information and education work conducted in all parts of the country.

Beginning in October 1977, enlarged sessions of the plenary meetings of

provincial, city and county committees of the WPK were arranged in order to motivate leading officials in particular. And the WPK organizations at all levels showed deep concern for the development of education, strengthened guidance over it and summed up the results of the implementation of the theses on the occasion of September 5 every year.

Between late September and early October 1978 a national meeting of educational workers was held with the attendance of 15 000, serving as a milestone for ideological motivation of educational workers.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the contents and methods of education were improved in an all-round way in line with the requirements of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

In June 1978 he himself examined the teaching programmes for primary and secondary school students and gave advice on the orientation and ways for updating the contents of primary education. And he took measures to revise the contents of the textbooks for higher education to meet the requirements of the Korean revolution at a new stage of development and the trends in advanced science and technology.

He ensured that the heuristic teaching method was applied, proper combination was made between theoretical education and practical education and between education and production labour, and all necessary equipment and conditions for them were fully provided.

He also put particular stress on raising teachers' qualifications and establishing a revolutionary habit of studying among students.

He set improving teachers' political and teaching qualifications at schools of varying levels as one of the central tasks for the Three-Revolution Red Flag Movement, and arranged for study tours and visits on a number of occasions to help teachers widen their horizon. In June and August 1978 he said that the study-first slogan should be upheld in the sector of education and schools should encourage students to study hard and get good marks, prominence should be given to exemplary students, classes and schools, and students should be assessed with their academic performance as the main criterion.

Next, he adopted measures to develop science and technology of the country. In September 1975 the July 1 Shock Brigade of Scientists and Technicians was formed and sent to the then Komdok Mine and other industrial establishments. And then on February 17, 1978 the February 17 Shock Brigade of Scientists was organized to solve technological problems arising in major sectors of the national economy. In addition, the May 19 technical innovation shock brigade composed of scientists, technicians and skilled workers from

production sites was formed to put the technological innovation campaign on a mass basis. Later, Kim Jong Il renamed it April 15 technical innovation shock brigade in the hope that its members would fully display their loyalty to Kim Il Sung in developing science and technology (April 15 is the birthday of Kim Il Sung.)

Thanks to these measures scientific research work and the mass technological innovation campaign were brought into close combination and remarkable advances were made in the field of science and technology.

Kim Jong Il established a well-regulated system of guidance over the development of science and technology.

New departments in charge of science and technology were attached to commissions and ministries under the Administration Council, as well as to factories and enterprises, and their role was enhanced. And a system was set up whereby the WPK organizations would take responsibility for guidance over scientific research, regarding it as part of their concern.

Kim Jong Il paid close concern to building up the ranks of scientists and technicians and providing them with better conditions for their scientific research.

He endeavoured to develop art and literature in keeping with the requirements of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

He said:

“Officials in the sector of art and literature should create revolutionary works of art and literature in larger numbers with unfailing loyalty to the leader and the Party and thus render a positive contribution to modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.”

In his speech at a consultative meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee and the then Ministry of Literature and the Arts on June 1, 1974, he set forth tasks and ways for improving the work of the sector of art and literature in keeping with the requirements of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

First, he adopted steps to create literary works demanded by socialist reality.

In a talk to information officials of the WPK on December 6, 1974, he said that more revolutionary literary works should be created to meet the requirements of the actual situation in which the cause of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism started to be implemented, and in January 1978 adopted a measure for creating 100 full- and medium-length novels in several coming years with a view to bringing about a fresh turn in the production of

novels. And he encouraged writers to broaden their political horizon, improve their creative skills and visit production sites regularly to get firsthand experience. He often inquired into the ideological and artistic questions arising in creating novels and poems and gave detailed advice on them.

On July 21, 1979 he dwelt on the relationship between historical facts and artistic fiction in the production of revolutionary novels. And on January 8, 1980 he sent a letter titled, *Let the Writers Broaden Their Political Vision and Improve Their Creative Skills Radically As Required by the Developing Reality*, to participants in the Third Conference of the Korean Writers Union. In this letter he threw new light on the mission of literature.

As a result, *The Arduous March* and *At the Foot of Mt. Paektu*, novels of the cycle *Immortal History*, and *New Spring, Life-giving Water, Pyongyang Time* and other literary works were created. These works served as good textbooks for educating the working people to be Juche-type revolutionaries armed with the revolutionary outlook on the world and the leader.

Kim Jong Il showed close concern for developing the Juche-oriented art in its heyday onto a higher level.

On May 6, 1975 he delivered a speech titled, *To Further Develop Our Juche-oriented Art*, at a meeting of officials of the WPK Central Committee and those in the field of art and literature. In this speech he clarified the orientation and ways for developing art onto a higher level, and inspired the creative workers and artists to continue to bring about an upswing in their creative work.

He ensured that those in the cinema sector made new innovations in the production of films while consolidating the successes achieved in the cinema revolution of the past.

He attached importance to producing revolutionary films.

In 1975 he initiated the creation of a feature film *The Land in Flames*, the first film portraying Kim Il Sung. In December 1975 and April 1977 he gave guidance over the production of the film, specifying guidelines in making revolutionary films—avoiding stereotypes in making a film dealing with the family members of Kim Il Sung, presenting a truthful, artistic depiction of the life of him as a great man and portraying him as suited to the genre.

Under his guidance *Far Away from Headquarters* and *Mt. Paektu* were produced following *The Land in Flames*, ushering in a golden age in producing revolutionary films.

Kim Jong Il also placed emphasis on the production of feature films on varying themes of reality and provided guidance over the course of their

production. Some examples of great educational value are *To the End of the Earth* and *Unknown Heroes*.

He directed concern to effecting a revolution in drama production.

In his concluding speech titled, *On Producing New Revolutionary Dramas As Suited to the Juche Era*, made at a meeting of writers and artists at the National Theatrical Troupe on November 7, 1972, he advanced a policy of producing revolutionary dramas as suited to the present era by effecting a revolution in drama production.

He said that to produce a new type of drama as demanded by the revolutionary era, they should make a revolution in all processes of drama production from writing the play to actors' speech and acting. He also noted that a drama should be staged in a three-dimensional way so as to make the audience feel like watching living persons, not actors in performing, stressing that a new Korean type of drama should be created.

He made sure that a drama revolution started with the adaptation of *The Mountain Shrine*, a play created by Kim Il Sung. On November 4, 1977, June 14, 1978 and some other occasions he gave on-site guidance, advising the creative workers to grasp the seed of the original work properly. He indicated the direction for its adaptation and led them to sustain its ideological and artistic features in a perfect way. Consequently, the archetype of *Shrine*-style revolutionary drama was born in August 1978.

He also worked hard to develop the operatic art while consolidating the successes gained in the opera revolution.

In his talk titled, *On the Art of Opera*, given to creative workers in the field of art and literature between September 4 and 6, 1974 he analyzed and summed up the successes and experiences gained in the opera revolution, and formulated the Juche-oriented theory of opera in a comprehensive way. In the talk he clarified the principles to be adhered to in making the opera revolution and gave scientific answers to all theoretical and practical problems such as libretto, music, dance, stage art and stage setting.

On the basis of the Juche-oriented theory of opera, he led creative workers to produce many operas in succession, including *Under the Bright Sun*, and ensured that the revolutionary opera *The Sea of Blood* continued to be staged on a high ideological and artistic level.

He directed due concern to developing music, dance and fine art.

In a speech delivered to officials of the WPK Central Committee and those in the field of art and literature in May 1975, he illuminated the orientation and ways for further developing the Juche-based art by bringing about fundamental

changes in music and dance, and inspired creative workers and artists to further efforts.

He pointed out that the sector of stage art should encourage music and dance performance, updating its content and form. During his visit to the Mansudae Art Studio in June 1978 he underlined the need to make strenuous efforts to create fine art works portraying Kim Il Sung in particular. He said that the Korean painting *The Sunrise over Mt. Paektu* should be made a masterpiece and the styles used for it should be generalized to bring about a new turn in creating Korean paintings and other fine art works.

He put in a great deal of efforts for revolutionary changes in the mass media.

He said:

“Today our Party’s publications and news service and broadcasting are faced with the important task of rendering a contribution to speeding up the modelling of the whole society on Kimilsungism and pushing ahead with grand socialist construction. In order to carry out this heavy yet honourable task with credit it is urgent to flare up the flames of a revolution in newspaper, broadcasting and publication.”

In his concluding speech titled, *Our Party’s Mass Media Is a Powerful Ideological Weapon That Contributes to Modelling the Whole Society on Kimilsungism*, made at an enlarged session of the Fifth Plenary Meeting of the Third Central Committee of the Korean Journalists Union on May 7, 1974 he set forth a policy of making a revolution in this sector.

He defined it as the primary mission and duty of mass media to render a positive contribution to making all members of society true Kimilsungists and transforming society in keeping with the requirements of Kimilsungism and in the long run to winning victory in the world revolution. He specified the fundamental principle to be maintained in making mass media fully discharge its historic mission, as well as the tasks for kindling the flames of a revolution in newspaper, news service and publication.

He identified improving the WPK’s organ *Rodong Sinmun* as the key in the whole chain of making a revolution in mass media and ensured that the newspaper revolution started with a revolution in writing editorials for *Rodong Sinmun* and that other domains of media followed suit.

To effect a revolution in news service he saw to it that this sector put the main emphasis on raising its political level, while directing concern to making news services official, dealing with situation reports in a prompt and accurate way and stepping up external news service. For a revolution in broadcasting he

ensured that a focus was put on improving broadcasting music and innovations were made in editing, narrative and TV presentation.

As a result of these changes, the mass media could assume features befitting an instrument for propagating Kimilsungism and carry out militant mission with credit.

Kim Jong Il also showed concern for developing public health service and sports and establishing socialist cultured ways in production and life to meet the requirements of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

He set forth the task of developing public health service with a focus put on Juche-oriented medicine in his talk to senior officials in the public health sector in April 1974, and provided energetic guidance over its implementation.

According to the WPK's policy on preventive medicine, the public health sector strived to improve hygienic information work and hygienic and anti-epidemic work, took positive measures for the prevention of diseases and pollution, and built up the district doctor system.

To bring about a radical improvement in medical service, it intensified education of medical workers so that they devoted themselves to the treatment of patients cherishing revolutionary comradeship and warm love for people, and took measures to apply Koryo therapy on a wide scale.

Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into developing the nation's medical science and technology rapidly to catch up with world trends.

In November 1975 he ensured that the Academy of Medicine and other medical research institutes were better furnished and a well-regulated guidance system was established. Later, he stressed on several occasions the need to intensify medical research work and introduce advanced medical science and technology through expansion of exchanges with other countries. He emphasized that medical education should be upgraded and medical workers should acquire a habit of studying hard to enhance their qualifications.

He pushed forward the work of developing physical culture and sports.

To implement the policy of putting sports on a mass basis he took measures to raise public awareness interest and draw all the working people into sports activities. In April 1979 he set September and October as the months for people's physical strength examination and in June the same year, initiated a drive for a model sports county to give a spur to mass sports activities. He made sure that national sports competitions of students and children were organized regularly to encourage sports training at schools.

He paid close concern to developing professional sports and physical training for national defence as well.

He advanced a policy of putting stress on ideology, fortitude, speed and skill in sports competitions. Under his guidance Juche-oriented tactics were established to suit the constitution of the Korean people and training was intensified to develop all events to world standards, including football, boxing, women's volleyball, shooting and table tennis, with the result that many Korean athletes were successful in international competitions.

He also adopted measures to develop sports on a scientific basis: intensifying education and training at Korea University of Physical Education; setting up a sports college in each province; enhancing the role of the Association of Sports Technicians and the Sports Science Institute to develop sports science and technology and modernize the material and technical foundations of the sports sector.

He channelled efforts into establishing socialist cultured practices in production and life.

In his talk to officials in South Hamgyong Province and Komdok Mine on July 1, 1975, he advanced a policy of creating a cultured manner of the working class in production and life at factories and mines and spreading it to towns and countryside.

He visited the Komdok Mine in July 1975 and inspired the miners to set an example and take the lead not only in production but in ideological remoulding, technological upgrading and establishment of a socialist cultured manner in production and life.

He sent the mine loudspeaker vans and wind instruments and other means of cultural recreation and solved all problems arising in their work and life. Under his scrupulous care the working class at the mine became exemplary in establishing cultured practices in production and life, and other industrial establishments and cooperative farms across the country endeavoured to follow suit.

In August 1978 he made sure that the WPK organizations, three-revolution teams and working people's organizations in industrial establishments threw their weight behind the work of establishing a cultured manner in production and life.

He put great efforts into improving the standards of the people's social and cultural life. He ensured that all the people were encouraged to keep themselves neat and tidy and observe social order and public morality voluntarily, and were provided with ample conditions for their cultural and aesthetic life. And he saw to it that urban and rural areas were laid out more beautifully and working people rid themselves of old lifestyle and established a socialist one.

Under his leadership the working people's cultural and technological standards improved and Juche-oriented revolutionary culture became prevalent across society.

9. STRENGTHENING THE FORCES FOR NATIONAL REUNIFICATION AND STEPPING UP THE MOVEMENT OF KOREANS IN JAPAN

On the basis of a scientific analysis of the internal and external situation in the mid-1970s, Kim Jong Il led the struggle for national reunification.

By that time grave obstacles were laid in the way of the national reunification movement owing to the frantic moves of the US imperialists and south Korean puppets to unleash a new war and perpetuate division of the Korean nation.

Driven out of Southeast Asia after their ignominious defeat in the Vietnam War in 1975, the US imperialists declared south Korea to be their "forward defence zone," shipping a legion of nukes there, reinforcing aggressive troops and restructuring their operational command system. In 1976 they launched a "Team Spirit" joint military exercise, a nuclear test war targeted at the DPRK, and escalated it year after year. In August the same year they orchestrated the Panmunjom incident to aggravate the tension.

According to the scenario drawn up by the US imperialists, the south Korean puppets disrupted the inter-Korean talks that had been opened after such a long interval, while spreading a rumour about "southward invasion" to incite confrontation between the north and south. And they built a 150-km-long concrete wall along the Military Demarcation Line in the southern area. This was a grave crime against the nation and the concrete wall has since become the symbol of national division.

Consequently, the inter-Korean relations reached a deadlock as in the days before the publication of the July 4 joint statement and a tough-and-go situation prevailed in the Korean peninsula.

With a keen insight into the situation, Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into strengthening the country's internal revolutionary forces for national reunification.

In his talk on February 16, 1975 and his speech titled, *On Building Up the Revolutionary Forces and Improving the Party Work in Keeping with the Requirements of the Present Situation*, made at a consultative meeting of the secretaries and department directors and deputy directors of the WPK Central Committee on May 2, 1975 he set forth the task of strengthening the internal revolutionary forces for national reunification and led the struggle for its implementation.

He said:

“We should, to all intents and purposes, depend on our own forces and rely on our own efforts to drive out the US imperialists and reunify the country. To this end, we should strengthen our internal revolutionary forces to the maximum.”

In order to strengthen the revolutionary forces in the northern half of Korea, he gave priority to building up its political force and, at the same time, paid due concern to consolidating military and economic capabilities.

The south Korean people organized a number of study groups including the Association for the Study of Kimilsungism and held symposiums and discussions on a large scale. And they formed various types of legal and illegal organizations.

By developing the signature campaign in support of the formation of an anti-fascist democratic united front which had been launched in 1977, they formed new organizations of different strata of people and rallied broad sections of the masses around these organizations. As a result, the Democratic People’s Federation, an anti-fascist democratic organization in the form of united front, was formed in July 1978. In March 1979 it was renamed the People’s Federation for Democracy and National Unification and expanded its scope of activities.

Kim Jong Il directed concern to uniting overseas Koreans into a force for national reunification; he dispatched many delegations and art troupes abroad to inspire overseas Koreans with zeal for national reunification, and took measures to work efficiently with the visiting compatriots.

Consequently, Korean compatriots in North America and Western Europe grew more enthusiastic for national reunification and doubled their efforts to form organizations to this end.

Koreans in America and Western and Northern Europe formed organizations embracing large numbers of compatriots, and those in many other countries of the world organized the Federation of Overseas Koreans for Democracy and National Reunification with a huge membership in Tokyo,

Japan, in August 1977. Chongryon (the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan) and other overseas Koreans' organizations launched vigorous information activities and mass struggles for national reunification, employing different forms and methods such as mass rallies, demonstrations, signature campaigns, lecture meetings and issuing statements.

Kim Jong Il strived to promote international solidarity with the Korean people's cause of national reunification. Brisk information activities were conducted to explain and propagate the validity of the WPK's policies on Korea's independent reunification and the essence of the anti-reunification moves by the US imperialists and south Korean puppets. Positive efforts were made at the UN to check and frustrate the US imperialists' schemes for division of the Korean nation, create an international atmosphere favourable for Korea's reunification and expand the movement for solidarity with the Korean people's cause of reunification in the international arena.

As a result, the international atmosphere grew favourable for Korea's reunification.

Solidarity organizations in support of Korea's independent and peaceful reunification were formed in many countries and regions of the world. The International Liaison Committee for the Independent and Peaceful Reunification of Korea was organized in June 1977, followed by the committees for solidarity with the Korean people and committees for support of Korea's reunification in over 70 countries. And the number of such solidarity organizations increased to more than 250 by 1980.

The first and second world conferences in support of Korea's independent and peaceful reunification were held in February 1977 and November 1978 in Brussels and Tokyo, respectively. The conferences marked a milestone in promoting the international solidarity movement in support of the Korean people's struggle for national reunification.

The movement gained momentum worldwide, solidarity organizations multiplying and their scope expanding rapidly. From April 21 to December 31, 1979 a signature campaign demanding withdrawal of US troops from south Korea was conducted worldwide, involving 1 080 million people from 128 countries and 31 international and regional organizations.

Kim Jong Il strived for the opening of a wide-ranging north-south dialogue.

In January 1977 he had a proposal made to south Korea for wide-ranging dialogue. Accordingly, political parties and public organizations in the north convened a joint conference on January 25, 1977 and adopted a letter to the political parties, public organizations and people of all strata in south Korea and

overseas Korean compatriots, appealing for the opening of a north-south political consultative meeting. The proposal commanded enthusiastic support at home and abroad.

Nevertheless, the south Korean puppet clique made an untenable assertion that “peaceful settlement” was more urgent than reunification, resorting to such obstructive schemes as “visiting diplomacy” and “inviting diplomacy.”

The north side took a series of steps to cope with the situation. On January 23, 1979 the Central Committee of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea announced a statement proposing bilateral and multilateral preliminary talks for holding a pan-national rally, and on January 31, 1979, the DPRK government declared through a statement of the Korean Central News Agency that from February 1 slandering the south would be stopped throughout the northern half of Korea as a positive measure for creating an atmosphere favourable for national reconciliation and dialogue. On February 5 the DFRK Central Committee issued another statement calling for the formation of the preparatory committee for national reunification as a preliminary consultative organization for contact and dialogue between the north and south, and proposing for this purpose a contact between liaison representatives from both sides on February 20 at Panmunjom.

But the south Korean puppet clique responded by throwing obstacles in the way of the contact and staging large-scale military exercises.

When the ruling system of south Korea was paralyzed in the wake of Park Chung Hee October 1979, Kim Jong Il had the *Rodong Sinmun* publish an editorial titled, *Let us open a way out for the nation through collaboration, unity and reunification*, appealing for all the Korean people to open the way for the country’s reunification on the strength of national unity. In January 1980 he had a letter calling for bilateral and multilateral contacts between the north and south sent to the personages of the political parties and public organizations and leading officials of the authorities in south Korea. Accordingly, working-level contacts were made as a preliminary measure for premier-level talks.

But the new regime of south Korea contended that it was sheer folly to dream of unity with the north, proclaiming an emergency martial law all over south Korea and breaking off the above contacts.

The bilateral talks failed to bear fruit but the whole process of the talks inspired the entire nation with enthusiasm for peaceful reunification.

Enraged at the anti-reunification moves of the US imperialists and their

puppets, the south Korean people turned out in the struggle for democracy, which culminated with a popular uprising in Kwangju in May 1980. The Kwangju Popular Uprising involved 300 000-odd people from all social strata, including workers and peasants, youth and students, and spread out to 17 cities and counties of South Jolla Province.

Valiantly fighting with arms in hands, protesters took complete control of the city for ten days. It was the largest armed resistance in modern history of the Eastern peoples.

Kim Jong Il led the struggle to develop the movement of Korean compatriots in Japan.

In the mid-1970s Chongryon was faced with the task of developing the movement of Korean compatriots in Japan onto a new, higher stage in keeping with the realities of their homeland.

The 10th Congress of Chongryon held in February 1974 made clear that it would uphold the banner of Kimilsungism and its 11th Congress in September 1977 declared the modelling of Chongryon on Kimilsungism to be the general programme of the work of Chongryon.

Kim Jong Il ensured that all affairs of Chongryon were concentrated on the education of the compatriots.

He defined that Chongryon is not an administrative organization but a mass political organization, stressing that a focus in its work should be put on work with man, education of the masses of the compatriots, that the content of ideological education should be enriched and that the system and method of educating the masses should be improved.

He put particular emphasis on Chongryon's work to educate the rising generations.

He took steps to develop national education of Korean students in Japan; remitting educational aid fund and stipends on a yearly basis, upgrading the quality of education and providing sufficient material conditions for it.

Afterwards, all the schools under Chongryon received gifts from Kim Il Sung such as specimens of fish from the Taedong River and the East and West seas of Korea, specimens of trees from Mt. Paektu, specimens of minerals and stuffed animals of Korea. A Korean history museum and a nature museum were built in Korea University. All these teaching materials paid off in the education and edification of Korean students in Japan.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the officials of Chongryon and other compatriots in Japan visited their socialist homeland frequently, particularly on major anniversaries and national holidays. He also invited them to attend large

meetings, and from August 1979 arranged for a regular short-term visit to the country. He took steps to provide the visitors with ample conditions to see the revolutionary battle sites and other historic places and monumental structures so that they could have a deep knowledge of the greatness of Kim Il Sung and realize the preciousness of their homeland.

Thanks to Kim Jong Il's wise leadership the movement of the Koreans in Japan could develop onto a new, higher level under the banner of Kimilsungism.

10. STRENGTHENING ANTI-IMPERIALIST INDEPENDENT FORCES

Kim Jong Il led the effort to strengthen the anti-imperialist independent forces of the world.

First of all, he attached importance to propagating the Juche idea on a worldwide scale.

The latter half of the 1970s were boom years in publication and dissemination of the translated versions of Kim Il Sung's works, books on his revolutionary career and the Juche idea, and those dealing the WPK's revolutionary traditions, and the achievements in socialist construction and other successes and experiences the DPRK had gained by translating the Juche idea into reality.

Kim Jong Il made sure that substantial assistance was given to those countries where Kim Il Sung's works were translated and published.

Committees for translating and publishing Kim Il Sung's works, which had been set up by progressive organizations and personages in the press circles, were very active in many parts of the world. A large number of the works were published every year; in 1978 alone, 716 000 copies were published and the works were carried in 590 million copies of 487 publications from 79 countries; in 1980 2.97 million copies were published in over 20 languages and the works were carried in about 700 newspapers and journals from more than a hundred countries.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that work with the followers of the Juche idea was done in a proper way.

He adopted steps to give theoretical help to the followers around the world and arranged for their delegations' study tours in the DPRK.

The numbers of the followers and study groups of the Juche idea increased rapidly worldwide, and dissemination of the idea was done in an organized way.

In the latter half of the 1970s Juche idea study groups were formed in most of the countries of the world, and many renamed Kimilsungism study group or Kimilsungism study committee. In many countries national committees for the study of the Juche idea were organized under the concern of political parties and governments, and they conducted research in an organized way on a nationwide scale. Their membership grew in scope to involve not only political figures, media personages, scholars, resistance fighters, youth and students, but also other people of broad sections ranging from high-ranking officials of parties and governments to workers and peasants.

With the study and dissemination of the Juche idea gaining momentum in the international arena, regional and international permanent organizations were set up and periodicals on the Juche idea were issued in large numbers.

Such organizations included the Latin-American Institute of the Juche Idea formed in February 1978, the International Institute of the Juche Idea with its secretariat resident in Tokyo, Japan, in April of the same year, and the Asian Regional Institute of the Juche Idea in September 1980. Among the periodicals issued by the study organizations and followers were *Study of the Juche Idea*, *Study of Kimilsungism*, *Independence* and *Banner of Independence*.

The Juche idea study organizations hosted international seminars on a grand scale, including those in Togo in October 1974, in Madagascar in September 1976, in the DPRK in September 1977 and in India in April 1979.

These seminars analyzed and summed up the achievements and experiences gained in the study of the Juche idea, proved its greatness and originality on a scientific and theoretical basis and exchanged opinions on the principled questions arising in the application of the idea. They made a great contribution to the study and dissemination of the Juche idea.

Study of the Juche idea was not simply conducted for the purpose of academic research but for the formulation of the guidelines for revolutionary practice. High-ranking personages of the political parties and governments in many countries participated in the activities of studying and disseminating the Juche idea to use it as a basis for their policy-making.

Kim Jong Il led the struggle to solidify the unity of anti-imperialist independent forces.

He directed close concern to expanding the DPRK's external activities for the independent development of the non-aligned movement.

First of all, he ensured that the DPRK became a member of the non-aligned movement.

The DPRK government took measures to dispatch a special envoy of President Kim Il Sung and delegations of the Foreign Ministry to the 17 member nations of the Coordinating Committee of the Non-aligned Nations and conducted other diplomatic activities in a positive manner. Subsequently, the meeting of foreign ministers of the non-aligned countries held in Lima, Peru, in August 1975 adopted a resolution on admitting the DPRK to the movement with unanimous approval.

In March 1976 and on other occasions Kim Jong Il clarified the principles of the activities for consolidating unity and cohesion of the non-aligned movement: settling the differences in views and disputes on the principle of promoting unity while holding fast to independence of the member nations and giving precedence to the interests of the movement as a whole; giving top priority to the unity of the member nations and subordinating other matters to it; and erasing the controversial matters from the agenda of their meetings.

Attaching great importance to the Fifth Summit of the Non-aligned Nations, the first meeting after the DPRK's admission, he had a national preparatory committee formed to make it part of the state's concern.

The Fifth Summit of the Non-aligned Nations held in Colombo, Sri Lanka, in August 1976 turned out a success for the DPRK. The summit assessed the contemporary times from the Juche-based stand and viewpoint, and adopted the documents indicating the tasks of enhancing the role of the non-aligned movement and intensifying the anti-imperialist, anti-colonialist struggle and a resolution in support of the WPK's policy for Korea's reunification.

Owing to the imperialists' schemes to divide and alienate the non-aligned countries, disputes arose among some of them and obstacles were thrown in the way of the non-aligned movement. In these days Kim Jong Il adopted positive measures to make a success of the meeting of the foreign ministers of the non-aligned countries in 1978 and the Sixth Summit of the Non-aligned Nations in 1979.

He made sure that the principled stand of the WPK and the government of the DPRK on the above meetings was clarified in July 1978 and in July 1979 respectively through the reports on the joint conference of the Political Committee of the WPK Central Committee and the then Central People's Committee of the DPRK.

This made a great contribution to preventing the disintegration of the non-aligned movement and achieving the unity of member nations.

At the Sixth Summit the DPRK became a member of the Coordinating Committee of the Non-aligned Movement.

Kim Jong Il directed great efforts to promote friendship and cooperation with the non-aligned countries.

With a keen insight into the importance of friendly relations with non-aligned countries, he told senior officials of the WPK Central Committee that they should channel efforts into promoting unity and cooperation with non-aligned countries. On several other occasions, he specified ways for promoting political, economic and cultural exchanges with them.

True to his instructions, the WPK and the DPRK government conducted brisk exchanges with the delegations of various levels including those of the political parties and governments of the non-aligned countries.

Special envoys of President Kim Il Sung was dispatched to four countries in 1978 and 12 countries in 1980, and delegations of the WPK and DPRK government, different other delegations and art troupes visited many countries in Asia and Africa. From 1976 to October 1986, 26 heads of party and state of the non-aligned countries, as well as many party and government delegations and economic and cultural delegations, visited the DPRK. In the course of this, treaties and agreements were concluded to develop friendly and cooperative relations onto a new stage.

The WPK and the DPRK government offered assistance to the non-aligned countries in their effort to build a new society, especially in the fields of the economy, education, culture and national defence.

For example, by the end of the 1970s they aided 21 non-aligned countries, including Mali, Benin, Guyana, Mozambique, Madagascar and Burundi, in their small- and medium-sized irrigation projects and other construction work for laying a firm foundation of the rural economy. And they dispatched agronomists, educationists, artists and sports personnel to Tanzania, Guinea, Madagascar, Syria, Mozambique and the Yemen Arab Republic to help them in developing their economy and culture.

Mutual visits and contacts, the resultant conclusion of treaties and agreements, and cooperation in building a new society made a tangible contribution to the independent development of the non-aligned countries, promoting their friendly and cooperative relations and consolidating the unity and might of the non-aligned movement.

In order to strengthen the anti-imperialist independent forces, Kim Jong Il paid close concern to developing the international communist movement in line with the ideals of the age of independence.

On January 1, 1979 he told senior officials of the WPK Central Committee that to propel the international communist movement steadily along the road of independence every party and every people should oppose all manner of domination and subjugation and defend independence, and all parties should observe regulations for mutual relations on the principle of independence.

On March 13, 1976, January 6, 1980 and several other occasions, he said that it was important to defend and implement the WPK's independent foreign policies, wage a struggle against any kind of dominationist manoeuvres and set a practical example for others to follow. He also stressed that friendly parties should settle differences of opinion with each other as soon as possible and strive to achieve unity on the basis of independence and that the WPK should promote solidarity with other communist and workers' parties in different countries of the world.

According to these instructions the WPK and the DPRK government conducted brisk external activities on the principle of independence.

In 1977 and 1978 alone, they invited heads of party and state, as well as many party and government delegations to the DPRK. In 1978 they dispatched more than 30 delegations to socialist countries on some 80 occasions and in 1979, over 40 delegations on 70-odd occasions. They promoted visits and contacts with the communist and workers' parties in the European capitalist countries and other countries of the world and gave active support to them in their struggle for advancing along the road of independence.

Under the sagacious leadership of Kim Jong Il the international profile of the WPK and the DPRK government was remarkably raised in the latter half of the 1970s. By the Sixth Congress of the WPK the DPRK established ambassadorial-level relations with 103 countries expanding political, economic and cultural cooperation with them and entered in more than 150 international organizations to wage a positive struggle against imperialism and for independence.

CHAPTER 5. STEPPING UP THE MODELLING OF THE WHOLE SOCIETY ON KIMILSUNGISM

(October 1980-December 1989)

1. LEADING THE EFFORT TO CELEBRATE THE SIXTH CONGRESS OF THE WPK AS A MEETING OF VICTORS AND SETTING THE TASK OF STEPPING UP THE MODELLING OF THE WHOLE SOCIETY ON KIMILSUNGISM

Kim Jong Il exerted himself to celebrate the Sixth Congress of the WPK as a meeting of victors and a historic occasion that marked a new milestone in the development of the WPK and revolution.

The 19th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Central Committee of the WPK held in December 1979 decided on holding the Sixth Congress of the WPK in October 1980.

The congress was the first one to be held since Kim Jong Il became the leader of the WPK and a historic meeting which would bring about an epochal change in strengthening and developing the WPK.

Kim Jong Il said:

“Party organizations should wage a dynamic struggle to greet with high political enthusiasm and brilliant labour feats the historic Sixth Congress of our Party which will mark a new milestone in the development of the Party and the revolution.”

In his speech titled, *Let Us Further Strengthen the Party and Bring About a Fresh Leap Forward in the Revolution and Construction on the Occasion of the Sixth Party Congress*, delivered at a conference of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 8, 1980, Kim Jong Il set tasks of strengthening the WPK and making a fresh leap forward in the revolution and construction and inspired all the WPK members and other working people

to the struggle for greeting it with high political zeal and splendid labour achievements.

He directed primary efforts to having the congress greeted with high political zeal.

While building up the WPK's ranks and rallying the broad masses firmly behind Kim Il Sung and the WPK, he saw to it that ideological education was intensified among the WPK members and other working people to make them struggle resolutely for the accomplishment of the revolutionary cause of Juche with boundless loyalty to the WPK and the leader.

He also energetically led the struggle to greet the congress with splendid labour achievements.

He saw to it that the flames of a great revolutionary upsurge flared up on all fronts of socialist construction from early 1980.

In June 1980 he initiated a 100-day campaign to fulfil the national economic plan for 1980 before the congress, and led it to victory.

Prior to the start of the 100-day campaign, headquarters and guidance teams of the campaign were organized in Pyongyang, provinces, cities and counties staffed with competent officials and measures were taken to enlist all the country's human, material and technological potentials. In the meantime, slogans and telegraphic instructions of the WPK Central Committee were sent down at the end of June and the Party's organizational and political work was geared at ensuring the campaign a success.

Meetings of the working people for vigorously conducting the 100-day campaign took place in all sectors and units across the country in response to the slogans and telegraphic instructions and the historic 100-day campaign began on July 1.

During the 100-day campaign Kim Jong Il gave instructions on more than 100 occasions and provided field guidance at many units, solving all problems arising in the course of the campaign.

Thanks to his wise guidance, the tasks of the 100-day campaign were overfulfilled throughout the country and, during the campaign, industrial output showed a rise of 42% over the corresponding period of the previous year.

Along with the 100-day campaign, Kim Jong Il pushed ahead with a drive for producing goods to be supplied to the people on the occasion of the congress.

In mid-June 1980 he ensured that a huge amount of funds was allocated for the production of consumer goods, a drive was waged to produce large

quantities of goods, including hundreds of kinds of consumer goods, before the congress and raw and other materials needed for the production were supplied on a preferential basis.

Innovations were made day by day in the production sites with the result that the plan was overfulfilled by 10.4% in only three months' time. All the shops throughout the country were filled with goods thus produced and the people greeted the Sixth Congress of the WPK with great joy.

As part of his effort to have the congress greeted with splendid labour achievements, Kim Jong Il saw to it that the Pyongyang Maternity Hospital, Changgwang Health Complex and Changgwang Street were built as monumental structures.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to the celebrations of the Sixth Congress of the WPK and the 35th anniversary of its founding.

His primary effort was directed to preparing the documents for the congress on the highest level.

He proposed drafting new Rules of the WPK that stipulated its character, guiding idea, revolutionary traditions, ultimate goal, principles of its building and activities and many other issues. When the draft was made he gave his opinions to perfect it.

Kim Jong Il gave meticulous guidance to preparing all the documents to be presented to the congress and speeches of delegates on a high political and ideological level.

He paid attention to the preparations of the celebrations of the Sixth Congress of the WPK and the 35th anniversary of its founding.

He unfolded an audacious plan for holding the congress, a mass demonstration, mass gymnastics, soiree and other events in a grand style and on the highest level and gave meticulous guidance to the work of making all the celebrations grand political ones conducive to demonstrating the might of firm unity and cohesion behind the WPK and the leader and the sense of organization and discipline of the WPK and the people.

The historic Sixth Congress of the WPK opened on October 10, 1980, in Pyongyang, the capital of the DPRK.

It was attended by 6 000 delegates and observers from WPK organizations across the country, 177 party and government congratulatory delegations, delegates and public figures of all social standings from 118 countries.

In his report to the congress Kim Il Sung summed up the successes and experiences gained in carrying out the three revolutions during the period under review, and proclaimed modelling the whole society on the Juche idea as the

general objective of the Korean revolution and clarified the tasks and ways of its implementation.

At the congress, Kim Jong Il was elected Member of the Presidium of the Political Bureau of the WPK Central Committee and secretary of the WPK Central Committee and Member of the WPK Central Military Commission in accordance with the unanimous will and desire of the whole Party and all the people.

With the Sixth Congress of the WPK as a momentum the Korean revolution entered a new stage of its development and the Korean people set down to the historic cause of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism under the leadership of Kim Jong Il.

Kim Jong Il set the task of stepping up the modelling of the whole society on Kimilsungism.

In his speeches *On Some Tasks Facing Party Organizations* given at a consultative meeting of senior officials of the Central Committee and Pyongyang Municipal Committee of the WPK on December 3, 1980, and *Tasks Facing the Provincial, City and County Party Committees*, at a consultative meeting of chief secretaries of the provincial WPK committees on April 3, 1981, he set forward tasks of stepping up the modelling of the whole society on Kimilsungism, true to the decision of the congress.

He said that Party work must be intensified and developed as required by the developing revolution.

He explained that of importance in this was to establish a revolutionary climate of carrying out Kim Il Sung's instructions and the WPK's policies unconditionally, continuously push ahead with the work of cementing the foundations for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche and further intensify ideological education among WPK members and other working people.

Next, he said that the movement to follow the examples of the unassuming heroes should be intensified and developed.

He taught that the movement should be carried on a wide scale in close combination with the fulfillment of revolutionary tasks, by putting main emphasis on emulating their loyalty to the WPK and the leader.

He also said that the three-revolution team movement should be further intensified.

He instructed that WPK officials should have a correct attitude towards the movement and constantly improve the system and methods of guidance in keeping with the changing realities and that senior officials of WPK

committees at all levels should pay close attention to the work of educating the team members so as to make them discharge their duty as the vanguards of the three revolutions and standard-bearers of struggle.

The tasks advanced by Kim Jong Il served as a guiding principle in successfully carrying out the difficult and enormous tasks set forth in the Sixth Congress of the WPK by overcoming all difficulties and in stepping up the effort to model the whole society on Kimilsungism.

2. ADDING BRILLIANCE TO KIM IL SUNG'S IMMORTAL REVOLUTIONARY EXPLOITS TO MARK HIS 70TH BIRTH ANNIVERSARY

The Korean people greeted the 70th anniversary of the birth of Kim Il Sung amid an atmosphere in which they were waging a vigorous struggle to carry out the tasks advanced by the Sixth Congress of the WPK.

Through his 70-year revolutionary career and activities Kim Il Sung had performed great exploits before the times and history while leading the Korean revolution and the cause of global independence to brilliant victories.

Therefore, the Korean people and other revolutionary peoples of the world entertained profound respect and admiration for him and wished to celebrate his 70th birthday as an auspicious day.

Reflecting their wish, Kim Jong Il did his best to make this day significant.

He directed primary effort to the work of passing on Kim Il Sung's revolutionary achievements down through generations.

He regarded publishing his works and issuing books and documentary films dealing with his revolutionary achievements as the most important undertaking in adding ever-lasting brilliance to his greatness for all ages.

He set up a target of publishing up to volume 20 of *Kim Il Sung's Works*, an encyclopaedia of his revolutionary ideology, on the occasion of his 70th birth anniversary. Under his energetic guidance the book was published illustrated with his photographs and autographs.

And the book *The Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung's Instructions on the Idea, Theory and Method of Juche* (excerpt) was issued in commemoration of his 70th birthday. Along with it the *History of Revolutionary Activities of*

Kim Il Sung, Biography of Kim Il Sung (three volumes), *Forty Years of Creation and Construction under the Red Sunrays* (five volumes), *Great Victory of the Juche Idea* (three volumes) and many other books on the revolutionary traditions and commemorative books were published, and documentary and feature films and novels dealing with the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities and his exploits were produced.

As part of his effort to convey Kim Il Sung's revolutionary exploits to posterity Kim Jong Il energetically led the projects to build grand monumental structures.

He saw to it that the Tower of the Juche Idea and the Arch of Triumph were erected as monumental edifices of the times.

Kim Jong Il said:

“The Tower of the Juche Idea and the Arch of Triumph must be built well.

“To build them is an important work of educating our people in a revolutionary way and conveying the leader's greatness for all ages.”

Since April 1972, the 60th anniversary of the birth of Kim Il Sung, Kim Jong Il had conceived a plan for building monumental edifices dedicated to extolling and conveying his revolutionary ideology and exploits to posterity and, in March 1979, proposed building the Tower of the Juche Idea and the Arch of Triumph in Pyongyang to mark his 70th birthday.

On October 12 and 31, 1979, he examined their miniatures and gave his opinions on their locations, sizes, forms, contents and other details.

On November 21, 1979, the Political Committee of the WPK Central Committee adopted a decision on building the Tower of the Juche Idea and the Arch of Triumph as a concern of the whole Party, the whole country and all the people, and the central guidance committee for the projects was organized with senior WPK and state officials.

And shock brigades of WPK members were organized in Pyongyang and all provinces on a mission to construct the two monuments and social movements were widely conducted to render assistance to the construction projects.

In order to build the monuments on the highest level, Kim Jong Il, in 1980 alone, gave instructions on 13 occasions and provided on-site guidance to the projects several times.

The shock brigades of WPK members and their helpers pushed ahead with the projects and Koreans in the north, south and abroad and revolutionary peoples of the world offered their sincere assistance to the projects.

As a result, the Tower of the Juche Idea and the Arch of Triumph were unveiled in April 1982.

Under Kim Jong Il's guidance Kim Il Sung Stadium and other monumental structures were also built on the highest level.

Kim Il Sung said:

“Comrade Kim Jong Il makes great efforts to give me pleasure at all times. For my 70th birthday he sought all the historical materials concerning me and inquired as to what problems I had long planned to solve had not been implemented and then carried them out one after another.”

From long ago Kim Il Sung had planned for the construction of a modern stadium, library, ice rink, amusement parks and other structures in Pyongyang.

In July 1981 Kim Jong Il took a step to renovate the Moranbong Stadium, where Kim Il Sung had delivered a historic speech on his triumphant return, into a modern one, and gave on-site guidance to the construction even on February 16, 1982, his birthday. Thus the renovation project was completed in a matter of only four months and the stadium was renamed Kim Il Sung Stadium.

Next, he set about building the Grand People's Study House, Ice Rink and Mangyongdae Funfair.

In this way valuable assets for conveying the undying revolutionary exploits of Kim Il Sung to posterity were created on his 70th birthday, to his great pleasure and satisfaction.

Kim Jong Il proposed presenting gifts to all the children, students and households of the country on behalf of Kim Il Sung on his 70th birthday.

He saw to it that various sectors of the national economy supplied raw and other materials, coal and electricity needed to produce the gifts on a preferential basis and airplanes and large cargo vessels transported raw materials. In October 1981 he examined samples of the gifts and took measures to improve their quality and supply them to every household.

Kim Jong Il paid great efforts to make the celebrations of the 70th birth anniversary of Kim Il Sung a grand political festival for extolling and adding lasting brilliance to his greatness and exploits.

The Political Bureau of the WPK Central Committee adopted a decision, “On Greeting the 70th Anniversary of the Birth of the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung as the Greatest National Holiday Shining Forever in the History of Our Party and Country,” and mobilized all the people to the effort to splendidly celebrate the day.

Commemorative lecture meetings, scientific symposiums and book, photo,

art and film shows were organized on a high level. Especially spectacular was the national seminar on the Juche idea. On March 31, 1982, Kim Jong Il sent to the seminar a treatise *On the Juche Idea*, bringing a fresh turn in widely propagating the Juche idea, Kim Il Sung's revolutionary ideology.

Kim Jong Il paid attention to producing a music and dance epic and mass gymnastics.

He proposed creating a music and dance epic *Song of Glory* in November 1978, and gave guidance to the creative work including their rehearsals on several occasions so that the work would depict the whole course of the 70-year career of Kim Il Sung on a high artistic standard.

In October 1980 he set the task of creating a new form of mass gymnastics on a higher level and in December indicated the ways for describing the exploits performed by Kim Il Sung in evolving the Juche idea and leading the Korean revolution to victory. In February 1982 he suggested naming the mass gymnastics *The People Sing the Leader*, clarifying its seed and ideological theme.

Thanks to his guidance, the 5 000-strong music and dance epic *Song of Glory* and mass gymnastics *The People Sing the Leader* performed by 50 000 young people, students and schoolchildren were created as masterpieces.

Kim Jong Il's attention was directed also to the preparations of a national meeting and a soiree in celebration of Kim Il Sung's 70th birthday.

Under his meticulous guidance the report to the national meeting covered the revolutionary exploits Kim Il Sung had performed through his 70-year career. And he saw to it that a soiree was arranged in a new form in which a mass dance and an art performance were combined, and gave concrete instructions on all problems arising in preparing the soiree, ranging from illumination of the square and balloons to be set up in the square to the costume of the artistes.

On the basis of these preparations, various celebration events took place throughout the country: a national meeting in Pyongyang on April 14, 1982, soirees at Kim Il Sung Square and other squares in the city and various colourful celebrations in the provinces.

As part of his endeavour to celebrate Kim Il Sung's 70th birthday as a grand international political festival, Kim Jong Il took measures to invite many foreign congratulatory delegations.

Progressive peoples of the world held various celebrations in their countries, and many of them expressed their willingness to visit the DPRK to congratulate Kim Il Sung on his 70th birthday.

226 delegations and delegates from 118 countries including 14 leaders of state and government, 9 party leaders, 37 special envoys and 1 049 prominent figures of all social standings participated in the celebrations.

Kim Jong Il attached importance to the preparations for celebration performance by foreign artistes.

He saw to it that the DPRK accepted the desire of foreign artistes to visit it on the occasion of Kim Il Sung's 70th birthday, and a joint performance was given involving them.

On April 15, a splendid joint performance of foreign art troupes and Korean artistes was given at the Mansudae Art Theatre in the presence of Kim Il Sung, and afterwards it was held every April in Pyongyang, to be called the April Spring Friendship Art Festival.

Kim Il Sung's 70th birth anniversary was celebrated all over the world.

A large-scale international seminar on the Juche idea was held in New Delhi, India, and national study sessions and seminars on the Juche idea were held in many countries. Celebration meetings, rallies, lecture meetings, banquets, art performances, photo exhibitions and film shows were held and many commemorative books published and mass media organs of many countries issued special editions. Heads of state from 79 countries and prominent figures from 130 countries sent to Kim Il Sung over 3 500 letters, congratulatory messages on the occasion of his birthday. And thousands of pieces of gifts were presented to him from 121 countries.

Under the deep concern of Kim Jong Il, the celebrations of the 70th birth anniversary of Kim Il Sung were splendidly held as a grand political festival of mankind extolling his immortal revolutionary exploits and traits as a peerlessly great man.

3. CONDUCTING IDEOLOGICAL AND THEORETICAL ACTIVITIES FOR DEVELOPING KIMILSUNGISM AND PUBLISHING *ON THE JUCHE IDEA*

Kim Jong Il Through his energetic ideological and theoretical activities Kim Jong Il developed Kimilsungism into the guiding ideology in the age of independence.

Kim Il Sung said:

“I put forward the Juche idea, which reflects the requirements of our revolution and the aspirations of the people in the new age of independence, and have led the revolution and construction, guided by this idea, but I have not given much thought to systematizing the principles of the Juche idea. This task has been carried out splendidly by Comrade Kim Jong Il. On the basis of his profound study of the basic principles and essence of the Juche idea, he defined our Party’s guiding ideology as the integral system of the idea, theory and method of Juche.”

From long ago many heads of state and political and public figures of foreign countries advised Kim Il Sung to write a large book on the Juche idea.

In several talks to foreigners, including *On Some Problems of Our Party’s Juche Idea and the Government of the Republic’s Internal and External Policies*, answers to questions raised by journalists of the Japanese newspaper *Mainichi Shimbun* in September 1972, he provided answers to the starting point, origin, essence and guiding principles of the Juche idea and other matters of principle, but put off the work of systematizing in an all-round way the principles of the Juche idea.

Entering the early 1980s the Juche idea displayed its great vitality in the practice of the Korean revolution and was rapidly propagated, arousing sympathy from the progressive peoples of the world for its scientific truthfulness, features appropriate to the age, originality, revolutionary character and universality.

Kim Jong Il, having set the integral systematization of the Juche idea as an important task as early as the mid-1970s, made up his mind to implement the task to mark the 70th birth anniversary of Kim Il Sung, and conducted energetic ideological and theoretical activities to this end.

Busy as he was leading the effort to implement the decisions of the Sixth Congress of the WPK, he made constant speculation and inquiries to theoretically systematize the principles of the Juche idea and put his heart and soul into writing a treatise on the idea.

Finally he completed the treatise *On the Juche Idea* in the lead-up to the 70th birth anniversary of Kim Il Sung.

Kim Jong Il sent the treatise to the national seminar on the Juche idea held in celebration of Kim Il Sung’s 70th birth anniversary on March 31, 1982, the closing day of the seminar.

In the work he made clear the system of composition of the Juche idea.

The Juche idea is an integral ideological and theoretical system whose basic

components are the philosophical and socio-historical principles and the guiding principles for their embodiment.

Kim Jong Il also clarified the ideological and theoretical contents of each component part of the Juche idea and systematized them in good order.

He illuminated the philosophical principle of the Juche idea.

He said:

“The Juche idea raised the fundamental question of philosophy by regarding man as the main factor, and elucidated the philosophical principle that man is the master of everything and decides everything.”

He pointed out that the philosophical principle of the Juche idea is a man-centred one that elucidates the position and role of man in the world and is based on a new philosophical explanation on man, and has consolidated the Juche-oriented view that man is a social being with independence, creativity and consciousness.

And he proved that the Juche-based philosophical world outlook elucidates, on the basis of a new philosophical principle, the view that the world is dominated and transformed by man and gives viewpoint of and stand towards the world and its transformation and development, proceeding from his interests and putting main stress on his activities.

He scientifically systematized the major principles which are contained in the socio-historical principles of the Juche idea and enriched their ideological and theoretical contents.

He made clear that the major socio-historical principles of the Juche idea are that the masses of the people are the driving force of social history, that the history of mankind is that of struggle for independence of the masses of the people, that the socio-historical movement is the creative one of the masses of the people, and that their independent ideological consciousness plays a decisive part in the revolutionary struggle, and substantiated their concrete contents and requirements, truthfulness and originality.

He systematized the guiding principles of the Juche idea in an all-round way.

He clarified the guiding principles of the Juche idea—maintaining the independent position, applying creative method and putting emphasis on ideology—and discoursed on their ideological and theoretical contents.

After reading *On the Juche Idea*, Kim Il Sung said to the following effect: Comrade Kim Jong Il formulated long ago my revolutionary ideology as the integral system of idea, theory and method of Juche, raised the philosophical, socio-historical and guiding principles of the Juche idea as the main theme of

his treatise *On the Juche Idea* and elucidated them scientifically and theoretically, thus perfectly proving that my revolutionary ideology is the integral system of idea, theory and method of Juche; though I have read many philosophical treatises and appraised them up to now, I gave full marks to the treatise of Comrade Kim Jong Il for the first time; he is a peerless philosopher.

The treatise aroused an absolute sympathy and praise from the peoples of the world, regardless of the difference in ideology, political view, system, religious belief, language and customs, and was rapidly disseminated all over the world. In no more than a year after its publication magazines and newspapers of over 90 countries carried its full text or summary, and it was circulated in pamphlet form in 144 countries. And seminars and lecture meetings on the work were widely held in many countries.

After publishing the treatise, Kim Jong Il conducted energetic ideological and theoretical activities to further develop Kimilsungism in depth. He published many works, including *Let Us Advance under the Banner of Marxism-Leninism and the Juche Idea*, a treatise given on May 3, 1983, *On Some Problems of Education in the Juche Idea*, a talk delivered to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on July 15, 1986, *Let Us March Forward Dynamically along the Road of Socialism and Communism under the Unfurled Banner of the Anti-Imperialist Struggle*, a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on September 25, 1987 and *On Establishing the Juche Outlook on the Revolution*, a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on October 10, 1987.

In these works he further developed and enriched Kimilsungism with new ideas and theories and powerfully proved its validity, originality and vitality.

He developed the theoretical contents of the Juche idea.

He made clear the originality and superiority of the philosophical world outlook of the Juche idea, and enriched the theoretical contents of the Juche outlook on social history and revolution.

In particular, he advanced a unique theory on the subject of the revolution by developing the Juche-oriented theory of the motive force of history.

Kim Jong Il said:

“The subject of the revolution means the integrated whole of the leader, the party and the masses.”

The kernel of the socio-historical principles of the Juche idea is the theory of the subject of the revolution.

Kim Jong Il expounded the positions occupied by the leader, the party and the masses in a socio-political organism and their mutual relations.

Only when the masses of the people are rallied organizationally and ideologically centring around the leader under the leadership of the party can they form a socio-political organism with eternal, independent viability.

The leader is the brain and centre of the socio-political organism giving unified guidance to the life activities and the party, as the core detachment of the masses of the people firmly rallied organizationally and ideologically behind the leader, is the pivot of the independent organism. Individual persons can acquire eternal socio-political integrity only when they are united organizationally and ideologically behind the leader through party organizations.

As the leader, the party and the masses form a socio-political organism in which they share the same destiny, united in blood-sealed ties, they have the relations of revolutionary obligations and comradeship of helping and loving each other.

Based on the new elucidation of the driving force of the revolution, Kim Jong Il evolved in an all-round way the theories of the Juche outlook on the revolution and on life.

The Juche outlook on the revolution is a Juche-oriented viewpoint of and attitude towards the revolution that should be possessed by its masters.

Explaining that in establishing an outlook on the revolution it was necessary to know the object of the revolution, but it was all the more important to possess a correct attitude towards and viewpoint of its driving force, Kim Jong Il said that in order to establish an outlook on the revolution, one should first possess a correct outlook on the leader, the organization and the masses, and that the outlook on the revolution should be based on the outlook on morals. In the long run in order to firmly establish the Juche outlook on the revolution, the revolutionary outlook on the leader, the organization, the masses and morals must be acquired all together.

The essence of the Juche outlook on the revolution is the revolutionary outlook on the leader. It is because the centre of the socio-political collective which is the driving force of the revolution is the leader which is its brain. Only when the revolutionary outlook on the leader is firmly established can the revolutionary outlook on the organization, the masses and morals be also established correctly.

Saying that if one is to assimilate the Juche outlook on the revolution and make it one's firm conviction, it must become one's outlook on life, Kim Jong Il gave a scientific solution to the essential characteristic of the Juche outlook on life.

Kim Jong Il supplemented the Juche-oriented theories of the revolution with new ideological and theoretical concepts.

First, he developed strategic and tactical principles to be maintained in the building of communism.

He proved that the ideological and material fortresses must be seized for the building of communism and made clear that the three revolutions—ideological, technological and cultural—are a strategic line to be consistently adhered to in the whole course of socialist construction. And he advanced the concrete tasks of intensifying and developing the revolutions in conformity with the requirements of the revolutionary practices on a new, higher stage and the ways for fulfilling them.

Second, he provided scientific answers to many theoretical and practical questions arising in socialist construction.

By enriching the theories on the building of the working-class party, state and the working people's organizations, he elucidated the ways for strengthening the driving force of the revolution and increasing its might to the utmost in keeping with the new demands of the developing revolution. He also developed the theories on all sectors of socialist construction, including the building of revolutionary armed forces, the economy and culture, as well as those on the country's reunification, the establishment of national sovereignty across the country and the ideas on the Juche-oriented movement of overseas Korean compatriots.

He also developed and enriched the Juche-oriented theories on the world revolution.

He defined it as a strategic task of the world revolution to oppose imperialism and step up global independence process.

The driving forces in the struggle against imperialism and for global independence are socialist countries, international communist movement, national liberation movement in colonial countries, non-aligned movement, movement to champion world peace and all other anti-imperialist, independent forces.

All the anti-imperialist, independent forces in the world must launch a vigorous struggle to vanquish imperialism and build an independent, new world, frustrating all sorts of imperialist schemes to divide and alienate them and be united firmly under the banner of anti-imperialist independence by transcending the differences in ideology, social system and religious belief.

Kim Jong Il innovated the Juche-oriented theory on leadership methods.

He defined the working-class party as the guiding force, the people's power

as the powerful weapon and the working people's organizations as the reliable assistant of the party in the leadership system of the revolution and construction, and clarified the matters of principle in enhancing the party's leadership functions and role and realizing its revolutionary leadership over socialist construction.

And he explicated the importance of the leadership methods in the revolution and construction, proved that the fundamental requirement of the methods is to carry out the revolutionary mass line and clarified all the matters of principle arising in improving the officials' methods and style of work by thoroughly embodying Kim Il Sung's method of work.

The great ideological and theoretical achievements of Kim Jong Il enabled the WPK and the Korean people to push ahead with the struggle to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche and accelerate the cause of independence all over the world under the revolutionary banner of Kimilsungism.

4. LAYING THE FOUNDATIONS OF THE WPK FOR CARRYING FORWARD THE REVOLUTIONARY CAUSE OF JUCHE AND FURTHER STRENGTHENING THE WPK INTO A JUCHE-TYPE REVOLUTIONARY PARTY

Kim Jong Il led the struggle to further strengthen the WPK so that it could staunchly carry forward the revolutionary cause of Juche and complete the modelling of the whole society on Kimilsungism.

His primary concern was directed to laying all-round foundations of the WPK for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche.

In the 1980s this task became a law-governed requirement of the WPK and the developing revolution.

As a result of the vigorous struggle to lay these foundations in the 1970s, Kim Jong Il's leadership in the revolution and construction was firmly secured, the broad masses of the people were rallied closely behind the WPK and the trust of the people in him was further deepened. Thus a firm guarantee was provided for completing this task in the 1980s.

In his speeches *On Some Tasks Facing Party Organizations* at a consultative meeting of senior officials of the Central Committee and the

Pyongyang Municipal Committee of the WPK on December 3, 1980 and *Tasks Facing the Provincial, City and County Party Committees* at a consultative meeting of chief secretaries of provincial committees of the WPK on April 3, 1981, Kim Jong Il put forward the policy of pushing constantly ahead with the work of laying the foundations of the WPK for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche.

In order to do this, he said, it was imperative to build up the ranks of cadres in a far-sighted way, establish a strong discipline within the WPK, enhance the WPK members' sense of organizational duty and intensify their Party life and educate them and other working people in loyalty to the WPK.

He ensured that the work to lay the foundations of the WPK for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche was conducted in a more proactive and substantial way.

He directed primary efforts to building up the ranks of cadres in a far-sighted way.

The ranks of cadres were reinforced with vanguard fighters with firm political and ideological determination to support the leadership of the WPK Central Committee faithfully. Priority was given to loyalty to the WPK in selecting cadres. And the principle was observed of combining old, middle-aged and young people.

Kim Jong Il made great efforts also to improve the work of training the WPK officials. In *Some Tasks for Improving the Work of Training Party Cadres*, a letter to the national training course for the teachers at the WPK cadre-training institutions in June 1981, he raised the training of the students into elite Kimilsungists as the basic task of the WPK cadre-training institutions and as an important issue in laying firm foundations of the WPK for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche and clarified the matters of principle in it.

And he saw to it that WPK organizations at all levels selected suitable applicants to be sent to the WPK cadre-training institutions, and the training institutions trained students to be elite Kimilsungists by decisively improving the quality of education and put main stress in the education of officials on active duty in refresher courses and workshops on increasing their loyalty to the WPK.

He saw to it that a discipline of acting as one was established within the WPK and Party life intensified among officials and other Party members.

Thus, a strict order and discipline was established whereby all the WPK organizations, officials and other WPK members report to the WPK Central Committee the principled matters in their work and activities, revolutionary

struggle and construction work, and deal with them according to its conclusion.

Issuing a new WPK membership card to all the WPK members in 1982 marked an important occasion in raising the level of their Party life and enhancing the guidance of the WPK organizations over the Party life of their members.

Kim Jong Il also paid close attention to fostering loyalty to the WPK among officials and other WPK members.

In October 1981 he put forward the slogan “**Let us become the Kim Hyoks and Cha Kwang Sus of the 80s!**” and made sure that an emulation campaign for following the absolute loyalty to Kim Il Sung of the young communists in the early period of the Korean revolution was launched in various forms and by various methods among WPK members and other working people. And on February 27, 1982, he stressed to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee that all officials must follow the loyalty of Kim Chaek to Kim Il Sung. As a result of a brisk Partywide campaign to follow the examples of Kim Hyok, Cha Kwang Su and Kim Chaek, true models in defending the leader at the risk of their lives, all officials, WPK members and other working people were trained as genuine revolutionaries who cherished loyalty to the WPK as an element of their revolutionary faith and obligation.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that education in the positions and roles of the leader and his successor in achieving the revolutionary cause and the greatness of the WPK was carried out intensively among WPK members and other working people in various forms and by various methods.

The historic task of laying the foundations of the WPK for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Kim Il Sung generation after generation was successfully implemented in the first half of the 1980s.

In this way the question of the successor to the leader, a fundamental issue in carrying forward the revolutionary cause, was given a perfect solution in the DPRK, and a firm guarantee was provided for developing the WPK into an eternal revolutionary party of a Juche type.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the struggle to further develop the WPK into a revolutionary party of a Juche type.

He said:

“To strengthen and develop our Party still further into a revolutionary party of a Juche type is a decisive guarantee for overcoming all obstacles and bringing the revolutionary cause of Juche to completion.”

In many works, including *The Workers' Party of Korea Is a Juche-type Revolutionary Party Which Inherited the Glorious Tradition of the DIU* he published on October 17, 1982, Kim Jong Il clarified the theoretical and

practical problems arising in strengthening and developing the WPK into a revolutionary party of a Juche type.

He clearly defined the revolutionary character and essential features of the WPK as a revolutionary party of a Juche type.

He said:

“Our Party is, indeed, a glorious revolutionary party of a Juche type, a party which was founded and acts, guided by the Juche idea, a party in which the monolithic ideological system has been firmly established and whose members have been united rock-firm on the basis of the Juche idea; a party which maintains close ties of kinship with the masses of the people and strives to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche by improving their role.”

He made clear the matters of principle in developing the WPK into a revolutionary party of a Juche type.

Explaining the need to steadily consolidate the WPK and enhance its leadership role so as to carry out the socialist cause, he raised the modelling of the entire WPK on the Juche idea as a fundamental matter in its building and set tasks for realizing it—to constantly intensify the work of establishing the monolithic ideological system in the entire WPK, to resolutely defend and carry forward the lineage of Juche in its pure form, to safeguard and strengthen the unity and cohesion of the WPK generation after generation, to train all the WPK members into Juche-type revolutionaries, and to introduce Kim Il Sung’s method of work across the WPK.

In order to strengthen and develop the WPK into a revolutionary party of a Juche type, Kim Jong Il directed primary efforts to equipping WPK members and other working people firmly with the Juche idea, the guiding ideology of the Party.

In a talk titled, *On Some Problems of Education in the Juche Idea* given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on July 15, 1986, he clarified the matters of principle in intensifying education in the Juche idea in keeping with the requirements of the developing reality.

Directing his close attention to giving WPK members and other working people a correct understanding of the principles of the Juche idea, of the driving force of the revolution in particular, he saw to it that study of the work was intensified without letup. And he ensured that *Rodong Sinmun*, *Kulloja* and various other publications carried many articles explaining the theory of the driving force of the revolution in a profound manner and in plain language.

Under his guidance all types of ideological education, including education in loyalty to the WPK and the leader, WPK's policies, class awareness, the revolutionary traditions and socialist patriotism, were conducted in combination with the fundamental principles of the Juche idea and geared to strengthening the driving force of the revolution.

He made great efforts to defend and consolidate the purity of the WPK's unity and cohesion.

In several works, including *Let Us Advance under the Unfurled Banner of Single-hearted Unity*, a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 26, 1985 and *For the Strengthening and Development of the Party and Revolutionary Ranks and a New Upsurge in Socialist Economic Construction*, a speech delivered to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 3, 1986, Kim Jong Il clarified the characteristics and might of the WPK's cohesion and single-hearted unity and put forward the tasks of defending, consolidating and developing its unity and cohesion from generation to generation and ways for implementing them.

For further strengthening of the WPK's unity and cohesion, WPK organizations intensified education aimed at carrying forward the traditions of unity and cohesion, single-hearted unity centring around the leader, created by young communists and anti-Japanese revolutionary fighters during the anti-Japanese struggle. They waged an uncompromising struggle among officials and other WPK members against the slightest practices undermining the unity and cohesion. In the meantime, they equipped officials and other WPK members firmly with the WPK's experience in anti-factionalist struggle, so that they would resolutely safeguard the WPK's unity and cohesion and consolidate and develop them throughout the generations to come.

The effort to defend and carry forward the WPK's unity and cohesion from generation to generation resulted in them further strengthened into the firmest and mightiest single-hearted unity.

Kim Jong Il pushed ahead with the struggle to make a revolutionary climate prevail throughout the WPK.

As a party discipline which is formed and consolidated in the historical course of building a party and carrying out the revolution and construction, a party climate is manifested in the party's organizational and ideological life and in its activities.

He promoted the struggle for creating a revolutionary Party climate on a new, higher stage in keeping with the actual conditions that the historic cause of laying the foundations of the WPK for carrying forward the revolutionary

cause of Juche had been achieved and the struggle for modelling the entire WPK on the Juche idea was being intensified.

At a meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee held on January 10, 1988, he put forth the slogan “**Let us make a revolutionary climate prevail throughout the Party!**” and the tasks and ways for carrying it out. In August 1989 he ensured that the Secretariat of the WPK Central Committee sent a special directive to the WPK organizations at all levels.

The WPK organizations at all levels had meetings for establishing a Party climate, laying the main stress on further enhancing loyalty to the WPK and the leader and rooting out obsolete way and style of work among officials and other WPK members.

As a result, a revolutionary climate of working and living were thoroughly established within the WPK and its fighting efficiency was enhanced as never before.

Kim Jong Il defended and carried forward the glorious revolutionary traditions of the WPK in their pure form.

As part of his effort for this he proposed renovating the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery and building the Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery as centres for education in the revolutionary traditions and monumental structures which could be handed down to posterity.

In October 1982 he examined the master plan of the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery to be renovated and clarified the orientation of the project. At his proposal the Secretariat of the WPK Central Committee sent a directive on carrying out the project as an undertaking of the whole Party and country, and the WPK member shock brigade and other construction forces were organized. He himself visited the construction site on several occasions, including in June and November 1984.

Meanwhile he was also deeply interested in the construction of the Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery. In April 1984 he proposed building the cemetery and gave instructions on its location and persons to be buried there.

Thanks to his effort the Revolutionary Martyrs Cemetery was renovated on an expansion basis in October 1985 and the construction of the Patriotic Martyrs Cemetery was brought to completion in September 1986.

Kim Jong Il also directed great efforts to finding out the secret bases, revolutionary slogans written on barked trees and relics during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle in the Mt. Paektu area and other parts of Korea and preserving them in their original state.

He paid primary heed to unearthing the Paektusan secret camp and building it to its original state.

He dispatched an expedition group to Sobaeksu Valley on a mission to closely survey the area as advised by Kim Il Sung. When the site of the Paektusan secret camp was excavated, he ensured that construction forces, building materials and equipment were sent on a preferential basis and took concrete steps to solve all the problems arising in the construction, including the living conditions of builders. The Paektusan secret camp was built to its original state and opened to the public in February 1987.

Looking round the Paektusan secret camp on August 18, 1988, he made clear the principles in building up the area around the secret camp.

He ensured that slogans written on barked trees and secret bases were found out on a nationwide scale and restored to their original state.

Early in May 1987 several slogans were discovered around the Paektusan secret camp. With this as a momentum a drive was launched to find out such slogans across the country, in the course of which many slogans and secret bases were excavated. As the number of slogans increased, technique of developing the defaced characters was introduced in late August 1988.

Meanwhile Kim Jong Il organized a brisk campaign to defend the WPK's revolutionary traditions ideologically and theoretically.

In March 1989 he set forth principles to be maintained in this campaign and took measures to widely disseminate the revolutionary traditions and discover the materials on the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities on a wide scale.

Through the struggle to defend and brilliantly carry forward the revolutionary traditions of Juche in the 1980s, priceless treasures of the revolution, which would add eternal brilliance to the anti-Japanese revolutionary traditions, were provided.

5. STRENGTHENING THE KPA AND ESTABLISHING THE WPK'S COMMAND SYSTEM IN THE KPA

Entering the 1980s, Kim Jong Il put main emphasis on strengthening the KPA in increasing the nation's overall defence capabilities. For this he strived to establish the WPK's command system in the KPA.

He said:

“We must further intensify the work of establishing the Party’s command system in the People’s Army. To thoroughly establish the Party’s command system in the People’s Army can be said to be nucleus in army building at the present stage when the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by the leader is being carried forward by our Party.”

In many works, including *On Training Competent Military Commanders*, a talk to chief of the political department of Kim Il Sung Military University on March 9, 1983, *Let Us Further Strengthen and Develop the People’s Army into the Army of the Great Leader and the Army of the Party*, a talk to KPA commanding officers who attended a session of the Military Commission of the WPK Central Committee on June 12, 1982, and *Talk to the Newly Appointed Chief of the General Staff of the Korean People’s Army* on February 11, 1988, he set forth tasks of establishing the WPK’s leadership system in the KPA.

In order to establish the WPK’s leadership system across the KPA, Kim Jong Il paid close attention to ideological education in the KPA.

In mid-February 1981 he instructed that unlike other sectors, the KPA should conduct education in loyalty to the WPK in a direct and brisk way.

Thus the WPK and other political organizations in the KPA intensified theoretical education in the WPK’s leadership and education in the greatness of the WPK in various forms and by various methods among service personnel.

In his talk titled, *The Work of Establishing the Party’s Monolithic Leadership System Must Be Further Intensified*, given to a deputy director of the General Political Bureau of the KPA on January 2, 1982, he said that ideological education should be further intensified so as to make the entire KPA boundlessly loyal to the WPK’s leadership, and instructed that the KPA should organize lecture meetings on the occasion of major anniversaries, symposiums on the leader’s virtues in a substantial manner and, at the same time, widely propagate the WPK’s greatness and achievements through publications and literary works, thus encouraging service personnel to support the WPK with all sincerity.

In the meantime, he ensured that education through prototypes of loyalty was carried out in conformity with the requirements of the developing reality so as to train all the officers and men of the KPA to be Kim Hyoks in the 1980s.

Kim Jong Il applied a new work system and order for establishing the WPK’s leadership system within the KPA.

At a meeting of the WPK Central Military Commission held in Samjiyon at

the foot of Mt. Paektu on June 12, 1982, Kim Il Sung took steps to firmly establish Kim Jong Il's leadership system across the KPA. He said: Kim Jong Il is now guiding the KPA only through the Party channel; he must give direct military guidance to it also; for Kim Jong Il to lead the army in the position of the Supreme Commander is a law-governed course in the building of revolutionary armed forces which would be continued from generation to generation and a requirement of the developing times; a rigid discipline should be established whereby all problems arising in army building and its activities are brought to his attention and addressed in accordance with his decisions.

After the meeting Kim Jong Il set up a new work system, the system of grasping state of affairs and reporting them, in the General Political Bureau and the General Staff of the KPA so as to facilitate the WPK's political and military guidance over the KPA.

In March 1985 a work system and order was established as required by the developing reality. Under them the General Political Bureau of the KPA was supposed to report all problems arising in the WPK's political work in the KPA directly to Kim Jong Il and deal with them in accordance with his decisions.

In the meantime, he established a new system of grasping and reporting through the General Staff and ensured that it reinforced the ranks of staff officers at lower units and command the whole army through them.

Kim Jong Il led the KPA to create a revolutionary military climate based on a correct view of the WPK organizations and properly combine its military and political work.

He paid attention to giving KPA commanding officers a right understanding of the military climate based on a correct view of the WPK organizations, enhancing the functions and role of the WPK and other political organizations in the army and ensuring their authorities. For this he saw to it that officers and men of the KPA improved their attitude towards organizations, intensified organizational and ideological life and acquired a revolutionary habit of accepting and carrying out the WPK's policies, decisions and instructions without any conditions.

In order to have military and political sections work in a coordinated way and encourage military and political officers to faithfully support the WPK's leadership, he led political officers of them exemplary in this regard and education of them carried on in various forms and by various methods. In *On Proper Combination of Military and Political Affairs in the People's Army*, a speech delivered to commanding personnel of the KPA on February 10, 1987,

he clarified the principles to be adhered to by military and political officers in properly combining military and political affairs.

Subsequently, a military climate based on a correct view of the WPK organizations was established and the military-political combination improved, facilitating implementation of his plans and intentions.

Kim Jong Il pushed ahead with the work of increasing the military and technical might of the KPA and perfecting its combat preparations.

He said:

“The intenser the challenge of the class enemy to the revolutionary cause becomes, the more we must build up the revolutionary armed forces and the better we must be prepared for combat.”

Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into improving the military and technical qualifications and command ability of commanding officers in line with the demand of the developing realities.

He attached great importance to their military training. Under his meticulous concern a military training was conducted on a high level of quality in 1981 and a training course was given to commanding officers and staff officers of arms and services in September 1982. Later several training courses of a similar type were arranged to improve the military qualities and command ability of commanding officers. In the meantime, various symposiums on military science and seminars on tactics were widely organized and the work of publishing and distributing military books was carried on in a substantial manner.

He paid close attention to improving the work of military academies.

He ensured that military academies at all levels constantly improved the contents and methods of education in keeping with the trends of the development of modern military science and technology and raised the quality of education onto a higher level and that their work was examined at regular intervals. And he took measures to hold conferences of teachers at military academies at all levels in 1982 and 1987 to widely popularize the successes and experiences gained in military education.

He pushed ahead with the work of intensifying combat drills.

Entering the 1980s he put forward the slogan **“Training is also a battle!”** for the KPA, so as to foster a revolutionary habit of training in the army.

He showed primary concern to having combat drills conducted in a Juche-oriented way and on the basis of the Korean-style tactics and methods.

When he examined a plan of a tactical training of a combined unit in the spring of 1981, he pointed out its shortcomings that it failed to exactly reflect

the developing realities, fettered by existing theories and ideas, and stressed the need to apply a creative attitude towards the existing military theories and tactics. And in August 1981 he took a step to publish and disseminate books on combat experiences conducive to studying and developing new tactics suited to the real conditions of the country and the characteristics of modern warfare.

In January 1984, he gave scientific solutions to the questions arising in correcting combat regulations and manuals in accordance with the Juche-oriented war tactics and the demands of modern warfare, constantly improving training methods and, on this basis, conducting combat training in a Juche-oriented way.

He paid close attention to having combat training conducted in an atmosphere of real war.

When he visited a tactical training ground in April 1982, he said that soldiers should foster courage, hearing gun reports, and emphasized that combat training should be organized frequently in an atmosphere of real war.

Kim Jong Il made great efforts to updating the military equipment of the KPA.

He put forward the policy of putting main emphasis on enhancing the mobility and striking power of the KPA in conformity with the natural and geographical conditions of the country, the level of its industrial development and characteristics of modern warfare.

He led the upgrading of military equipment to be realized thoroughly on the basis of the country's munitions industry.

As a result, in the 1980s the overall military equipment of the KPA was modernized on a higher level and the KPA was developed into an invincible army which is capable of coping with any modern warfare.

Kim Jong Il pushed ahead with the work of strengthening the company, the basic combat unit of the KPA.

In December 1982 he proposed the company guidance team movement in order to help company commanders and political instructors. In January 1983 he dispatched company guidance teams to companies and organized an armywide meeting for swapping experiences. With this as a background a meeting of company guidance teams of the KPA was held in January 1984. On the 14th he sent to the meeting a letter titled, *Let Us Further Strengthen the Companies of the People's Army by Vigorously Waging the Activities of Company Guidance Teams*. In the letter he underlined the need for the company guidance teams to play a great role in strengthening the companies politically and militarily.

With a view to enhancing the role of company commanders and political instructors, he presided over a conference of the commanding and political officers of the KPA held in September 1985 and set company commanders and political instructors tasks of fulfilling their responsibility and role in strengthening the company.

Regarding the establishment of an iron discipline in the KPA as the main link in the whole chain of increasing its combat efficiency, he ensured that an intensive drive was launched to tighten military discipline.

In June 1981 he set tasks of tightening discipline in the KPA and conducting ideological education for this, and pushed ahead with the struggle to introduce the anti-Japanese guerrilla-style method of commanding and managing units. And he organized an armywide socialist emulation movement for tightening discipline, and in January 1984 personally drew up the ten-point rules of managing the company which would serve as a guideline for organizing the life of service personnel.

In the course of this, service personnel's consciousness of discipline was enhanced, the method of commanding and managing units improved, and a revolutionary change brought about in the work of tightening military discipline.

The comprehensive establishment of Kim Jong Il's leadership system in the KPA and the consolidation of its military and technical might in the 1980s resulted in the KPA being further developed into the invincible army of the WPK.

6. LEADING THE EFFORT TO CONSOLIDATE THE PEOPLE'S GOVERNMENT AND FURTHER IMPROVE THE WORKING PEOPLE'S ORGANIZATIONS AND THE WORK WITH THE MASSES

In the 1980s Kim Jong Il wisely led the effort to enhance the role of the people's government and working people's organizations which link the WPK with the masses and to further improve the work with the masses, thus remarkably consolidating the driving force of the revolution.

He led the effort to consolidate the people's government.

Kim Jong Il said:

“To accomplish the revolutionary cause of the working class, the cause of socialism and communism, we should continuously consolidate the people’s government.”

People’s government represents the right to independence and interests of the masses, and is a political organization which organizes and enlists them to accomplish the cause of socialism.

Kim Jong Il directed great efforts to consolidating the power functions of the people’s government and enhancing its role.

In order to enhance its power functions, he ensured that the WPK’s leadership system was established in a thoroughgoing way in the power organs.

Under his guidance the people’s assemblies and people’s committees established a revolutionary habit of implementing the policies advanced by Kim Il Sung and the WPK for the given periods. The people’s committees at all levels intensified education in loyalty to the WPK and the leader among officials and other working people by availing themselves of their work and various occasions, and enlisted them in the effort to carry out the WPK’s policies.

In order to enhance the power functions of the people’s government, Kim Jong Il ensured that the system of administering the state was further improved.

A mechanism for intensifying guidance over all state organs and overall affairs of the state was established in the Central People’s Committee, the supreme leadership body of the state power, its ranks were built with officials prepared politically and practically, and a well-regulated system was set up of controlling and guiding local power organs and judicial and procuratorial organs by the Central People’s Committee. And a measure was taken for the provincial, city and county people’s committees to intensify guidance and supervision of the administrative and economic bodies in the relevant areas.

Kim Jong Il led the effort to establish a revolutionary climate of law observance throughout society by further enhancing the function of guiding law observance by the people’s government.

In order to ensure that the people’s government organs could intensify their guidance of the observance of socialist law as required by the developing realities, in which modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism was being stepped up, Kim Jong Il made public a work titled, *On Strengthening the Observance of Socialist Law* on December 15, 1982.

In the work he elucidated in a comprehensive way the essence and character of socialist law observance, necessity to intensify it, the position and role of law

in socialist construction, major requirements for establishing a revolutionary climate of law observance and ways of satisfying them and principles in the guidance of law observance.

He ensured that people's government organs further enhanced their functions and role in intensifying socialist law observance.

He paid primary attention to ensuring that these organs intensified education in law obedience among working people.

Units for education in law observance were reasonably designated, the people's committees at all levels assigned with the task to guide those units, and their ranks built with senior officials of the relevant units. A national conference of model law information workers was convened in February 1982 to help them enhance their role. Pukchong County, South Hamgyong Province, was designated as a model unit of education in law observance, and its experience popularized throughout the country. Phyongwon County in South Phyongan Province was designated as a demonstration unit of the movement for winning the title of model county in law observance and other counties were encouraged to follow its experience.

In the course of this, working people improved their consciousness of law observance and a strict system and order were established in every field of state and social life.

Kim Jong Il made sure that people's government organs formulated and perfected socialist laws and intensified guidance and legal control over law observance.

He instructed that pursuant to the policy advanced by Kim Il Sung of formulating laws, people's government organs should properly conduct the work of formulating regulations and rules needed for intensifying law observance, and that the socialist law observance guidance committees should enhance their functions and role so as to properly conduct inspection and supervision on law observance and impose sanctions on the practices that violated law. He led the public security organs and judicial and procuratorial organs to establish a discipline of observing state law and provide a legal guarantee for the rights of citizens and their life and property.

He led the people's government organs to enhance their role of organizing the economic work.

In order to raise the level of the local industry onto a higher level, he helped the people's government organs to intensify their guidance of the local industry. He paid attention to setting up the state budget by dovetailing it to the national economic plan and to enforcing the local budget system properly by

enhancing the functions and role of the city and county power organs. Along with it, he saw to it that people's government organs strived to improve people's diet in a responsible way.

As a result, in the 1980s the people's government was further developed as a weapon of the revolution and construction and as a genuine people's government and performed its mission and duty with credit in accomplishing the cause of Juche-oriented socialism. And people's trust in the government became deepened as never before.

Kim Jong Il energetically led the effort to further improve the work of the working people's organizations.

He attached his primary attention on developing the work of the youth league with the main emphasis on training young people as reliable young vanguard of the WPK.

He adopted measures aimed at strengthening the WPK's guidance of the work of the youth league.

In 1981 he established a new work system whereby all the WPK committees, ranging from the central committee to provincial, city and county committees, guided the work with the youth. In July 1981 he arranged a short course for officials of the department of youth work in the provincial, city and county Party committees and sent a letter, *On Improving Party Guidance to the Work with Young People and Children* to those attending the short course on July 13.

The Seventh Congress of the League of the Socialist Working Youth of Korea (the present Kim Il Sung Socialist Youth League) marked a radical turning-point in strengthening the LSWYK into the organization of the young vanguard unfailingly loyal to the WPK.

The Seventh Congress of the LSWYK was the first of the congresses of the working people's organizations held to implement the decisions of the Sixth Congress of the WPK.

To mark the congress he advanced slogans, "**Let us become reliable young vanguard of the Workers' Party of Korea!**" and "**Let us become young vanguard unfailingly loyal to the cause of the Korean revolution!**" He gave the honourable title *Young Vanguard* to the LSWYK, and in October 1981 attended the Seventh Congress of the LSWYK with Kim Il Sung.

After the congress he showed close concern to firmly building up the youth league organizationally and ideologically.

He built up the ranks of its officials with energetic and competent young hard-core elements, improved their political and practical qualifications without

letup and developed the youth league into a lively and militant one by strengthening organizational life among its members. He ensured that youth league organizations vigorously conducted in various forms and by various methods education in the theories of the Juche idea, in revolutionary traditions, in anti-revisionism, in socialist patriotism and in socialist morality as well as in loyalty to the leader in order for all the young people to cherish loyalty to the WPK and the leader as an element of their revolutionary faith and obligation as Kim Hyok, Cha Kwang Su and other young communists had done.

He trained young people as reliable young vanguard of the WPK through practical struggle of socialist construction.

He inspired young people to perform the role of vanguard and shock brigade in the labour-intensive sectors of socialist economic construction and developed the youth shock brigade movement and youth sub-workteam movement onto a higher level.

Following the Seventh Congress of the LSWYK more than one million young people volunteered to work in the difficult sectors of the national economy and numerous shock brigade members displayed wisdom and courage of youth in the major construction sites including the railway project in the northern area and expansion of the then Komdok General Mining Enterprise.

Kim Jong Il led the effort to improve the work of all other working people's organizations including the trade unions.

The Sixth Congress of the General Federation of Trade Unions of Korea, the Seventh Congress of the Union of Agricultural Workers of Korea and the Fifth Congress of the Democratic Women's Union of Korea marked important occasions in enhancing the functions and role of these working people's organizations in the struggle to implement the decisions of the Sixth Congress of the WPK.

He made sure that WPK organizations directed close attention to building up the working people's organizations as militant organizations faithful to its leadership.

He took measures to strengthen Party guidance over the working people's organizations; in particular, he sent a letter titled, *On Strengthening Party Guidance of the Work of the Working People's Organizations*, to a national short course for WPK officials engaged in the work with the working people's organizations held in late April 1985. The short course marked a new milestone in realizing Party guidance of the work of the working people's organizations.

Attaching great importance to building up the ranks of officials of the

working people's organizations, Kim Jong Il made sure that competent persons, who were unfailingly loyal to the WPK, tempered in practical labour, popular among the masses and prepared practically, were appointed as their officials, and their political and practical qualifications improved steadily.

Kim Jong Il showed close concern to making the working people's organizations discharge their mission properly.

Their mission is to rally the broad sections of the masses behind the WPK by educating and remoulding them and enlist them in the revolutionary struggle and construction work.

Kim Jong Il ensured that they conducted ideological education of their members in various forms and by various methods to suit their preparedness and characteristics true to the policies of ideological work advanced by the WPK for given periods, guided the organizational life of their members with the main emphasis on establishing a voluntary and revolutionary way of organizational life among them and improved the functions and role of their primary organizations. And he led them to actively inform their members of the WPK's economic policies and motivate them to increased production and launch various mass movements in an effective way so as to enlist them to socialist construction.

Kim Jong Il also paid attention to enhancing the independent character of the working people's organizations.

In order to lead the working people's organizations to do their work actively and creatively, he ensured that Kim Il Sung's instructions and the WPK's policies were conveyed to officials of the working people's organizations in time, assignments were given to them boldly and satisfactory working conditions were provided to them.

As the work of the working people's organizations was improved in the 1980s, a fresh turn was brought about in rallying the masses of various social strata behind the WPK and the leader and enlisting them in implementing the WPK's policies.

Kim Jong Il led the effort to develop the work with the masses.

To ceaselessly intensify the work with the masses is an important requirement for cementing the single-hearted unity between the WPK and the masses and remarkably strengthening the driving force of the revolution.

Kim Jong Il adopted revolutionary measures of putting to rights the deviations revealed in the work with the masses and rallying them behind the WPK.

He ensured that Partywide effort was made to carry out the mass line.

He arranged a short course for WPK officials to equip them thoroughly with the mass line of the WPK. In this process deviations revealed in the work with the masses were eradicated, and the WPK's benevolent politics were applied in a thoroughgoing way.

In order to consolidate the successes gained in the work with the masses, Kim Jong Il, in January 1986, set forth the tasks of WPK organizations in intensifying the work with the masses in conformity with the new requirements of the developing revolution and took concrete measures to this end.

He ensured that WPK officials were well informed of the Party's policy related to the work with the masses by studying them repeatedly and that deviations were not revealed in the work with the masses.

Thanks to his trust many people in Ryongchon County, North Phyongan Province, who had been unjustifiably stigmatized for decades owing to enemy plot during the Fatherland Liberation War, were cleared of their false charge and patriotic martyrs certificates were conferred on the bereaved families of the victims.

As fundamental changes took place in the work with the masses under his leadership all the Korean people genuinely trusted and followed the WPK as the motherly party and the single-hearted unity of the revolutionary ranks was further cemented.

7. BRINGING ABOUT A FRESH UPSURGE IN SOCIALIST ECONOMIC CONSTRUCTION AT THE SPEED OF THE 1980S AND IMPROVING THE PEOPLE'S LIVING STANDARDS

Upholding the decisions of the Sixth Congress of the WPK, Kim Jong Il led the effort to effect a fresh upsurge in socialist economic construction.

He said:

“We should bring about a fresh upsurge in the socialist economic construction by rousing the entire Party, the whole country and all the people.”

To this end, he ensured that the movement for creating the speed of the 1980s was launched.

At a consultative meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee

held on June 8, 1982, he stressed that a fresh upswing should be brought about once again in socialist economic construction. In his talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on July 23, 1982, titled, *Party Organizations Should Conduct Organizational and Political Work Effectively to Create the Speed of the 1980s* and on several other occasions, including on August 13 that year, he clarified matters of principle arising in creating the speed of the 1980s.

The movement for creating the speed of the 1980s was a mass-based movement to bring about an upswing in socialist economic construction in the 1980s by inheriting the revolutionary spirit displayed by the Korean people in the period of the great Chollima upsurge and by applying the principle of the speed campaign in an all-round way.

This movement required the people to work with the same spirit and stamina displayed in the period of the great Chollima upsurge and set high goals, work at the highest possible speed and ensure the best quality of their products.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the entire WPK and all the people turned out in the effort to create the speed by upholding the slogan **“Let us create the speed of the ‘80s in the spirit displayed during the great Chollima upsurge!”**

He paid primary attention to organizational and political work geared at mobilizing the masses in the movement.

In hearty response to the policy he advanced, the workers at the then Kim Chaek Iron Works held a meeting on July 9, 1982, at which they pledged to become vanguard in the struggle to create the speed of the 1980s and called the working people across the country to bring about a great upsurge in socialist economic construction. In answer to this the working people all over the country, including the workers at the Kangson Steel Works and agricultural workers at Chongsan-ri, turned out in this movement.

A national conference of young activists and a conference of the pacesetters of the Chollima movement were convened in October and November 1982, respectively, to encourage all the people to create a new speed in their work. WPK organizations conducted effective information and motivational campaigns.

Kim Jong Il ensured that a model of the speed of the 1980s was created in the construction of ore-dressing plant No. 3 at the then Komdok General Mining Enterprise.

In June 1982 he advanced the policy of building the plant, a project of great significance in implementing the task of producing 1.5 million tons of nonferrous metal, in a three-dimensional way and completing it ahead of

schedule, formed powerful construction headquarters and force, and led the entire WPK, the whole country and all the people to actively help the project.

In the lead-up to the 35th anniversary of the founding of the DPRK, the project was completed in a matter of a year, far ahead of schedule, during which a model of the speed of the 1980s was created.

The movement for creating the speed of the 1980s spread to all sectors of the national economy.

In the course of this the Second Seven-Year Plan was successfully implemented in the major sectors of the national economy, including the coal-mining, electric power, metal, electronics, automation, building-materials and chemical industries and agriculture, and a turning-point was made in scaling the ten long-term objectives of socialist economic construction.

Kim Jong Il gave a strong push to the development of the machine-building industry which was of decisive importance in putting the national economy on a modern basis.

While giving on-site guidance at the Ryongsong Machine Complex and the then Ragwon Machine Factory in May and October 1984, respectively, he said that they should produce more of modern machinery including 10 000-ton press and large-capacity oxygen plant. Along with it he ensured that all sectors and units of the national economy produced larger numbers of machine tools including large and special ones and improved their quality by conducting the June 1985 Let-One-Machine-Tool-Make-More Movement initiated by Kim Il Sung.

He led the struggle to give full play to the might of the speed of the 1980s in the construction of the West Sea Barrage.

In May 1981 he entrusted the KPA with the task of building the West Sea Barrage, instructing that the project should be carried on in a three-dimensional way, and unfolded a gigantic operation to enlist the whole country in the construction.

When he visited the construction site in April 1983, April 1984 and September 1985, he set forth the main orientation of the project and instructed that new building methods should be introduced. He also clarified the ways and means to give a strong impetus to the project so as to hasten its completion.

Under his leadership the KPA soldiers and other builders worked a miracle of finishing the construction of the large-scale West Sea Barrage in the short span of five years.

The construction of the barrage was a fruit of the movement for creating the speed of the 1980s and an epoch-making event in which the might of the speed of the 1980s, a speed of a new leap forward, was fully demonstrated.

With this movement being vigorously conducted in every sector of the national economy under the leadership of Kim Jong Il, a new upsurge was brought about in the socialist economic construction and a new speed that represented the 1980s and added lustre to the decade was created.

In the flames of this movement, the gigantic Second Seven-Year Plan was brought to successful completion and the economic might of the country rapidly strengthened.

In order to effect a continuous revolutionary upswing in the socialist economic construction, Kim Jong Il called on the entire WPK and all the people to turn out in the struggle to implement the Third Seven-Year Plan.

The Third Seven-Year Plan (1987-1993) put forward by Kim Il Sung was an economic construction programme aimed at scaling the new long-term objectives of the socialist economic construction advanced at the Sixth Congress of the WPK.

The Political Bureau of the WPK Central Committee, at its meeting on February 20, 1988, adopted a series of slogans and a letter in the name of the WPK Central Committee addressed to all Party members and Party organizations at all levels on the occasion of the 40th anniversary of the founding of the DPRK, calling on them to launch a 200-day campaign. The 200-day campaign was geared to making a breakthrough for implementing the Third Seven-Year Plan and celebrating the 40th founding anniversary of the DPRK as a grand festival of victors by bringing about a revolutionary upsurge on all fronts of socialist construction.

To make the campaign a success Kim Jong Il ensured that brisk political and organizational activities were conducted to create a Party-wide and society-wide atmosphere, a well-regulated system of guidance established and powerful guidance teams dispatched. In May 1988 he put forward the slogan, **“Let us all live and struggle like heroes!”** to encourage WPK members and other working people to perform heroic feats.

Defining capital construction as the major thrust of the campaign, he pushed ahead with the major construction projects, like electricity-generation, metal-industry and chemical-industry bases, Kwangbok Street and northern railways, and ensured that all factories and enterprises fulfilled the state plan by putting production on a normal footing.

During the campaign he gave on-site guidance at several units of the national economy in Pyongyang and in Jagang, North Phyongan and North Hamgyong provinces, inspiring all the WPK members and other working people to perform feats of labour.

Under his wise leadership a great upsurge was brought about in production in all sectors of the national economy and thus the world-startling speed of the 200-day campaign was created. In 1988 the industrial output increased by 22 per cent compared to the same period of the previous year, and in particular capital construction projects made great strides, registering greatest results since the founding of the DPRK. In addition, electricity generation and coal production also reached the highest level since the founding of the DPRK. These opened a breakthrough for implementing the Third Seven-Year Plan.

Kim Jong Il proposed waging another 200-day campaign to ensure a continuous upswing in socialist economic construction on the basis of the achievements of the previous campaign. A national conference of heroes was held in September 1988 on the occasion of the 40th founding anniversary of the DPRK, and it adopted an appeal to the entire nation for another 200-day campaign without slackening in the least their revolutionary spirit that had run high in the previous campaign.

As part of his endeavor to enlist all the people in the campaign, Kim Jong Il saw to it that WPK organizations improved their leadership functions and working efficiency in keeping with the developing reality, and at the same time officials of the WPK, state and economic organs went down to their subordinate units to conduct political work among the masses and command the campaign.

While concentrating their efforts on the major construction projects, officials skilfully commanded production, supplied sufficient amounts of raw and other materials, and increased production of electric power, coal and steel, so as to put production in all sectors of the national economy on a normal footing. The 14th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth WPK Central Committee held in November 1988 adopted radical measures for rapidly developing the machine-tools, electronics and automation industries, main links in the whole chain of the effort for stepping up the technological revolution and socialist economic construction. As a result, more than 500 construction projects conducive to raising the level of the Juche-oriented, modern and scientific character of the national economy were completed, and the tasks set high were fulfilled successfully in all sectors of the national economy.

During the two rounds of 200-day campaign the country made great strides in production and construction and achieved remarkable progress in the fulfillment of the Third Seven-Year Plan. Factories and enterprises such as the Anju Area Coal-mining Complex, Musan Mining Complex and Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex were renovated, new factories and enterprises

including the May 18 Large-Scale Forging Factory under the Chollima Steel Complex built, and great strides made in the production of various kinds of electronic elements and automation machines and appliances.

They provided sure guarantee for implementing the Third Seven-Year Plan.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the struggle to defend the Juche-oriented socialist economic management system.

He paid primary attention to leading officials to firmly adhere to the Juche-oriented standpoint and revolutionary principle in the management and operation of the economy.

In a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on July 15, 1986, he stressed that socialist methods based on collectivism should be thoroughly applied. He made sure that ideological education was strengthened among officials to imbue them with the essence and superiority of the system and methods of Juche-oriented economic management.

He also directed attention on improving the guidance and management of the economy and thoroughly applying the principle of collectivism.

He ensured that the Taean work system was thoroughly applied in the industrial sector.

He took concrete measures to make the system of provincial administrative and economic guidance committees and the system of industrial complexes which were to be set up as instructed by Kim Il Sung display their advantages. Along with it, he ensured that various types of complexes were organized in a reasonable way and the cost-accounting system was properly introduced so as to give full play to the advantages of the system of the complexes.

He also saw to it that the principle of collectivism was adhered to in the management and operation of the rural economy.

At meetings of the Secretariat of the WPK Central Committee held in May and December 1986 and in his several talks to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee, he emphasized that the principle of collectivism should be adhered to in managing and operating the rural economy in conformity with the intrinsic demand of the socialist system. He adopted measures for correctly applying the sub-workteam management system and workteam premium system, applications of the principle of collectivism, and for displaying their advantages and vitality.

In the 1980s Kim Jong Il led the effort to improve the people's material and cultural standard of living.

In *On Further Improving the Standard of Living of the People*, a speech delivered at a consultative meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central

Committee on February 16, 1984, *On Making the Cultural and Emotional Life Prevail throughout Society*, a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 5, 1989, and on several other occasions, he put forward the policy of raising the people's material and cultural standard of living onto a higher level.

He said that to improve the people's living standards it was important to solve the food problem of the people by boosting agricultural production and developing fishing industry, give an impetus to light industry, improve service work for the people and build dwelling houses in large numbers, and clarified the tasks and ways to this end. He also advanced the tasks for establishing a climate of cultural and emotional life throughout society.

He paid his primary attention to solving the problem of food.

What was of fundamental importance in solving the people's livelihoods was to solve the food problem by developing agriculture and fishing industry.

He made sure that agricultural production was increased by doing farming well while dynamically pushing forward the struggle to thoroughly carry out the tasks put forward in the socialist rural theses.

To this end, efforts were directed to materializing the comprehensive mechanization and chemicalization of the rural economy on a high level by decisively increasing investment in the agricultural sector, and to reclaiming tidal flats and bringing new land under cultivation so as to further increase the area of arable land. A large-scale workshop was arranged every year to disseminate the Juche farming method and the agricultural sector was encouraged to hold fast to the principle of right crop on the right soil and right crop at opportune time, and establish scientific manuring system and seed breeding system. The whole country was aroused to render assistance to the sector in hearty response to the agriculture-first policy of the WPK.

The fishing industry sector caught fishes in large quantities by making fishing vessels modern and multi-purpose and introducing scientific fishing methods, and processed them well.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the struggle to give a renewed impetus to light industry.

He aroused the entire WPK, the whole country and all the people in the effort to develop light industry.

He first encouraged officials to efficiently organize and command the production of light industry goods with a correct view of and attitude towards the development of light industry.

At a consultative meeting of senior officials in the light industry sector held

on March 31, 1984 and during his on-site guidance at a instant-rice factory on April 1, he defined the tasks for and ways of developing light industry. On April 15, 1984 and February 16, 1985, he said to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee and the Administration Council that they should strive to develop light industry with an attitude of taking responsibility for the people's livelihoods. And on several other occasions he stressed that officials should organize economic work in a scrupulous way with a correct view of and attitude towards the development of light industry.

In the lead-up to the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students he encouraged all the people to turn out in the effort to increase the output of light industry products and improve their quality. The 16th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth WPK Central Committee held in June 1989 formulated a three-year plan for the development of light industry, and adopted measures for mobilizing the entire WPK, whole country and all the people to implementing it.

Kim Jong Il vigorously pushed ahead with the struggle to modernize light industry factories, ensure their production on a steady basis, increase the variety of consumer goods and improve their quality.

Efforts were made to build model factories in such light industry sectors as textile, food-processing, daily-necessities and footwear industries and by propagating their experiences put all other light industry factories on a modern basis, operate them at full capacity and normalize their production at a high level. Attention was paid to the chemical industry to produce sufficient amounts of raw materials for light industry like vinalon and other chemical fibers, synthetic plastics, caustic soda and sodium carbonate. Meanwhile, exhibition halls of sample light industry products were built in the capital and provinces and similar exhibition rooms in cities, counties and factories, and a dynamic campaign was launched to increase the variety of consumer goods and improve their quality with less-expensive and useful goods as models.

A drive was waged to produce consumer goods on a mass basis. For this, Kim Jong Il took measures in August 1983 to organize a large number of branch factories, workshops and workteams for producing daily necessities in centrally-run enterprises, and housewives' workteams of various forms and propagate their good experiences across the country.

While looking round the light industry goods exhibition hall in Pyongyang on August 3, 1984, Kim Jong Il advanced the task of producing various kinds of consumer goods through a mass campaign by tapping latent reserves and potentials, thus initiating the movement of producing August 3 consumer goods.

Kim Jong Il led WPK organizations to render an active support to this movement with close concern to it and took measures on May 13, 1986 for propagating the experience of Phyongchon District, Pyongyang, throughout the country and in May 1989 for launching a campaign to win the title of model county (city or district) in producing August 3 consumer goods.

With the promotion of the mass-based movement to produce August 3 consumer goods, the movement took a lion's share in the production of consumer goods together with the central light industry and local industry, thus giving strong impetus to the development of light industry.

Kim Jong Il made constant efforts to improve the service work for the people.

Attentive to improving supply service, he clarified tasks arising in improving supply service and bringing about a fresh turn in it during his on-site guidance at shops in Pyongyang in April 1984 and in his talk to senior officials in the commercial sector on August 3 that year.

He ensured that the order system, a policy which the WPK had consistently maintained in supply service, was thoroughly introduced, and that people who were engaged in difficult and labour-intensive sectors including farms and coal and ore mines were provided with goods on a preferential basis. Along with it, he took measures for distributing shops in a rational way, consolidating their material and technical foundations and setting up a well-organized system for supplying goods to the shops.

Kim Jong Il, with close attention to improving public catering and welfare service work, made sure that general and specialized restaurants were built in Pyongyang and other major cities and managed properly, and that they improved the quality of their cuisine and were supplied with sufficient amounts of raw and other materials. He had the Changgwang Health Complex built in Pyongyang as a comprehensive welfare service centre and, with this as a model, similar health complexes erected in the provincial and county seats. Then he ensured that they improved the quality of welfare service of various types by enhancing the technical skills and qualifications of their employees.

Recognizing the importance of the spirit of devoted service on the part of service workers in improving the service work, Kim Jong Il clarified detailed tasks arising in improving the service of service workers in a talk, *On Improving the Spirit of Devoted Service among Service Workers*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on April 20, 1988, and adopted measures for strengthening education in the spirit of devoted service to the people among service workers. He ensured that arrangement and methods of

the service work were continuously improved on the principle of providing maximum convenience to people's living.

He wisely led the effort to fully solve the problem of dwelling houses of the people.

He paid primary attention on building modern building-materials production bases. At a consultative meeting of senior officials of the WPK Central Committee held in late April 1984, he advanced the task of building the production bases of building materials including cement factory, steel factory, prefab factory and silicate brick factory. As a drive was waged to build such factories, the Sangwon Cement Factory was built in a short span of time, followed by silicate brick factories of large productive capacity in Anju, Pihyon and Hamhung, and many other bases for producing such building materials as slag foam block and aluminum sash.

In order to fully solve the shortage of dwelling houses, he pushed ahead with the construction of dwelling houses in Pyongyang.

Entering the 1980s he had dwelling houses built on Changgwang Street. Following it, Munsu, An Sang Thae, Podunamu and Chollima (2nd stage) streets were built one after another.

Through the construction of Kwangbok Street in the latter half of the 1980s he brought about a radical turn in changing the looks of Pyongyang and solving the problem of dwelling houses.

Thus, in 1989 Kwangbok Street as large as a town was built in the Mangyongdae area.

Following the construction of Kwangbok Street, in early November 1989 Kim Jong Il proposed building 50 000 flats with the main stress on Thongil Street and Kwangbok Street (2nd stage) to mark the 80th birth anniversary of Kim Il Sung, and gave a strong push to it.

He adopted measures for building dwelling houses on a large scale in other urban and rural areas across the country.

He paid attention to creating a way of cultural and emotional life throughout society.

He encouraged leading officials to stand in the van of this effort with a correct understanding of the cultural and emotional life, and established in late March 1984 a new system of attending and leaving workplace so as to provide working people with enough conditions for rest and cultural and emotional life after work. Along with it, he ensured that such cultural and sports facilities as the East Pyongyang Grand Theatre, Central Youth Hall and May Day Stadium were built, parks, pleasure grounds, amusement parks and wading pools were

laid out well, and recreational apparatus shops and gift shops were set up to sell goods needed for the cultural and emotional life of working people.

To establish a way of cultural and emotional life throughout society, he encouraged people to lead an optimistic, emotional, hygienic and cultured life.

His leadership brought about a radical change in the cultural and emotional life of the people, with the result that the whole society was imbued with rich emotion and sound morality and people lived an optimistic and cultured life.

8. FURTHER CONSOLIDATING THE SUCCESSES GAINED IN BUILDING SOCIALIST CULTURE

Entering the 1980s he paid close concern to further consolidating the successes gained in building socialist culture.

His primary effort was directed to developing education.

In his letter titled, *On Further Developing Educational Work*, addressed to the National Meeting of Educational Activists on July 22, 1984, he set forth a policy on developing educational work.

Kim Jong Il said:

“We should bring about a revolution in education in conformity with the new requirements of the developing revolution so as to improve school education in a universal way and enhance the quality of education radically, thus training the rising generations into useful revolutionary talents and making them render a better contribution to the development of science and technology of the country and the socialist economic construction.”

Proceeding from the fundamental principle of the Juche idea, he defined the essence of socialist education as the work of remoulding people to train them into powerful beings. He also set forth the tasks to be tackled in further developing educational work and detailed ways for implementing them—enhancing the quality of the universal 11-year compulsory education, improving the work of training technicians and experts and accelerating the work of making the whole of society intellectually proficient.

He put particular stress on improving the quality of general secondary education.

He singled out the then Pyongyang Secondary School No. 1 as the model unit for other schools across the country to follow.

In October 1980 he proposed the construction of this school and pushed ahead with the project. On April 28, 1984, after the completion of the project, he visited the school and said that qualitative change should be brought about in general secondary education by creating a model unit in improving education in basic sciences and generalizing its example and that gifted pupils should be trained in a systematic way. He reiterated this in his speech delivered at a consultative meeting of senior officials in the educational sector, *On Building Up Pyongyang Secondary School No. 1 as a Model School*. Later he adopted measures to build similar schools in all provinces and provide them with modern educational facilities for effective education of gifted children.

As a result, such modern schools were newly built, one in every provincial seat, and a dynamic campaign was waged to raise the educational level of all other secondary schools in the country to that of secondary school No. 1.

As part of his effort to improve the quality of general secondary education, he ensured that educational content was defined properly, the pedagogical courses were followed exactly and educational methods were updated.

In February 1987 he instituted the July 15 Top Honour Prize to establish a climate of studying among the secondary school students across the country.

Such improvements in general secondary education provided a firm guarantee for bettering the quality of tertiary education proportionally and effecting a fresh turn in all aspects of educational work.

He also directed close concern to updating tertiary education for better training of technicians and experts in conformity with the requirements of the developing reality.

To build Kim Il Sung University in a superb way and improve the quality of its education, the Political Bureau of the WPK Central Committee adopted in September 1984 a resolution on further improving and strengthening the work of Kim Il Sung University. While paying due concern to carrying it out to the letter, Kim Jong Il got all other universities and colleges to make redoubled efforts to catch up with Kim Il Sung University in terms of scientific and theoretical level and material and technological foundations. He took other necessary steps to produce more competent scientists and technicians: increasing enrolments at universities, building new colleges and

specialized schools, increasing the number of factory, farm and fishermen's colleges and improving their educational quality, setting up an open university and putting its operation on a normal footing to further develop the study-while-working system, and enhancing the role of the Grand People's Study House.

The 13th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth WPK Central Committee held in March 1988 included in the items of its agenda the issue of bringing about a fresh turn in educational work. Subsequently, Kim Jong Il aroused the entire WPK and all the people to implement the resolution of the plenary meeting.

Education as a whole made a huge step forward, producing a growing number of doctorate holders in their twenties or thirties and other talented people and rendering great services to attaining the ambitious goal of making the whole society intellectual.

Kim Jong Il gave a strong push to the effort to develop science and technology of the country.

In his speech titled, *On Further Developing Science and Technology*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on August 3, 1985 and in other works, he clarified the direction of the effort to develop science and technology of the country and specified the tasks to this end.

He stressed that it was important to make further efforts to develop science and technology of the country without resting content with the successes gained in this field.

He set forth major tasks and specific ways for their implementation: giving scientific solutions to the problems of raw and other materials, and electricity, resolving scientific and technological problems arising in modernizing machinery and equipment, intensifying research to raise onto a higher scientific level the production and technological processes, production methods and management of all the sectors of the national economy, developing basic sciences and pioneering new branches of science and technology.

Above all else, he took positive measures to develop science and technology of the country.

Accordingly, the 11th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth WPK Central Committee held in February 1986, 13th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth WPK Central Committee in March 1988 and the 14th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth WPK Central Committee in November 1988 discussed the issue of developing science and technology of the country, and took measures to develop electronics engineering, biology, thermal engineering and other important fields

rapidly and raise the country's overall science and technology to the world standard.

He arranged a national conference of the holders of academic degrees and titles in March 1986, a national meeting of inventors in October 1988 and the national science and technology festival as an annual event from 1986. All these events rendered a contribution to enhancing the sense of responsibility and role of scientists and technicians across the country.

Kim Jong Il ensured that officials possessed a proper view of science and technology and conducted effective organizational and political work to establish a climate of attaching importance to them across society, formulated and carried out long-term plans for their development and boosted state investment in scientific research sector.

He also saw to it that scientific research focussed on solving the most pressing problems for economic development.

He put stress on setting proper tasks of research work and strengthening guidance and control of their implementation.

In May 1983 he ensured that leading officials, competent scientists and technicians in each field deliberated yearly or long-term tasks through consultation and conducted proper organizational work to resolve important scientific and technological problems arising in implementing the WPK's policies for the given period. And with a view to enlisting the country's scientific and technological force to the state's advantage, he, in July 1984, established a rigid system and order whereby the state would give research assignments in a unified way, deliberate the results and introduce them.

Under his guidance the scientists and technicians shock brigade movement was conducted dynamically to solve the pressing problems arising in making the national economy Juche-based, modern and scientifically-based and introduce new achievements of science and technology in production. And efforts were focussed on developing major fields of science including electronics engineering in keeping with global trends.

He also paid close concern to adopting advanced technology of other countries.

To keep abreast of scientific and technological developments in advanced foreign countries and introduce their latest successes, he ensured that exchanges were promoted with them.

As a result of his energetic leadership, great strides were made in raising the country's science and technology onto a high level in the 1980s.

Kim Jong Il led the effort to further develop Juche-oriented art and literature.

In his letter titled, *For the Further Development of the Juche-oriented Art and Literature*, sent to participants in the national conference of active persons of art and literature on March 31, 1981 and in his talk titled, *Let Us Effect a New Upsurge in Producing Revolutionary Works of Art and Literature*, given to workers in the art and literary sector on May 17, 1986, he clarified specific tasks and ways of raising the country's art and literature to a higher level.

He said that in order to further develop art and literature it was imperative to create many literary and artistic works of high ideological and artistic quality which can contribute to the accomplishment of the revolutionary cause of Juche and to effect innovation in all fields of art and literature including film, opera and drama.

For successful implementation of the tasks facing the sector of art and literature, he stressed that all writers, artistes and officials in this sector should, first of all, arm themselves with Kim Il Sung's Juche-oriented idea of art and literature and the WPK's policy for this sector and strive to carry them out to the letter. He added that they should defend the WPK's achievements in this sector and add brilliance to them.

He led literary workers to bring about a fresh turn.

He attached foremost importance to novels. Sustained efforts were made to creating novels portraying Kim Il Sung including the cycle *Immortal History*. And the campaign for creating 100 full- or medium-length novels, which started in 1978, was brought to a successful finish, and a similar five-year-long campaign began in 1984.

In the 1980s 15 novels dealing with the period of the anti-Japanese armed struggle under the cycle *Immortal History* were completed and other novels of high ideological and artistic quality were produced in succession. Among them were *The Bright Morning*, *The Summer of 1950*, *From Scratch*, *Iron Faith*, *Song of Youth*, *Warm Heart* and *The Base of Metallurgical Industry*.

Lyrics and poems on varied themes were created in large numbers, including *Millions of Miles Following the Leader and the Party*, *We Keep One and the Same Faith*, *We'll Travel One Road Forever* and children's literature was further developed in conformity with the characteristics of their ages and psychology.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the work of consolidating the success gained in the cinema revolution.

His primary concern was directed to producing revolutionary films.

Based on the success and experience gained in the 1970s, he set it as the major task in producing revolutionary films to raise the level of portraying Kim Il Sung and describe the history of his revolutionary activities in a comprehensive way.

Thus multi-part feature films *Star of Korea* and *The Sun of the Nation*, both portraying him were created.

Other films dedicated to the revolutionary family of Kim Il Sung were also produced, such as *The Bodyguard*, *Green Pine Tree* and *Revolutionary Soldier*.

Kim Jong Il showed close concern for producing films on various themes. He gave guidance over the whole course of their production, sometimes putting finishing touches to them. Among such works are *The County Party Chief Secretary*, *Wolmi Islet*, *A Single Heart* and *The Pledge Made That Day*. This led to a fresh upswing in the cinema sector.

He also ensured that Party guidance over film production was intensified, the qualifications of film workers improved continuously, and a location street built as a comprehensive film production base.

He directed great efforts also to developing the stage art onto a new, higher level.

To follow up the success gained in the drama revolution, he led the effort to adapt the famous works *Blood at an International Conference*, *A Letter from a Daughter*, *Three Pretenders* and *Celebrations* as *Mountain Shrine*-style dramas. This opened a new chapter in the country's history of drama production. Based on this success, he systematized the Juche-oriented theory on drama in his talk titled, *On the Art of Drama*, given to officials in the sector of art and literature on April 20, 1988.

In January 1983, as part of an effort to consolidate the success in the opera revolution, he adopted measures to establish a system of preserving the original works generation after generation and produce scores and librettos in large numbers. He led the creation of a folk opera *The Tale of Chun Hyang*, opening up a new era in creating folk operas suited to the national sentiments and feelings.

Attaching great significance to developing musical art, he led the effort to create many famous songs and adapt the good ones of the past to the aesthetic tastes of the new century. On June 4, 1985, the Pochonbo Electronic Ensemble was established under his meticulous concern as a model unit for creating modern electronic music of the Korean style.

He encouraged creative workers in the dance sector to produce many

modern dance pieces, and discover folk dances and adapt them to the aesthetic tastes of the times.

Based on his long-conceived plan, he initiated the creation of dance notation in the early 1970s and organized a research team for the purpose. He gave advice on the work of this team on several occasions, especially in his talk titled, *On Completing the Juche-oriented Dance Notation* given on November 30, 1978, to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee and officials in the field of dance notation research.

The alphabetical dance notation of the Korean style was completed in February 1987.

Under his scrupulous guidance many music and dance epics were created: *Song of Glory* in 1982, *Song of Happiness* performed by 5 000 artistes in 1987, and *Song of Festival* performed by 70 000 artistes in 1989.

As for acrobatics, he had more stunts created and developed to meet world standards.

He paid due concern to making literary and artistic activities mass-based.

In his letter titled, *Let Us Enhance the Role of Literary Correspondents in Implementing the Party's Policy on Making Literary and Artistic Activities Mass-based*, addressed to participants in the national conference of active literary correspondents on November 15, 1982, he set an ambitious goal of popularizing literary and artistic activities across the country and advanced ways for attaining the goal.

To make literary and artistic activities mass-based and turn the country into a land of art, he saw to it that the role of literary correspondents, core elements in the production of mass-based literature, was enhanced and guidance over their creation became a concern of the writers' union and all the professional writers. In 1982 he had the June 4 Literature Prize instituted to be conferred on excellent works of literary correspondents.

He made sure that a broad spectrum of people were engaged in amateur art and literature groups and mobile artistic information activities, the system of disseminating literary and artistic works was reinforced, and dissemination of mass-based culture was promoted. In addition, he often arranged national art festivals and singing contests for workers, farmers and other people of different strata.

Following the efflorescence of the 1970s, Korea's art and literature made another leap forward in the 1980s under the leadership of Kim Jong Il. The Juche-oriented art and literature demonstrated its might, rendering an active contribution to accelerating the cause of modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism.

9. IMPLEMENTING THE PLAN FOR FOUNDING THE DFRK AND BRINGING ABOUT A FRESH TURN IN THE MOVEMENT OF KOREANS IN JAPAN

Entering the 1980s the DPRK was faced with an urgent task of implementing the plan for founding the DFRK (Democratic Federal Republic of Koryo) in its struggle for national reunification.

Kim Il Sung advanced this plan at the Sixth Congress of the WPK. It is a charter for Korea's reunification which shows the best way to reunify the country in conformity with its actual conditions on the basis of the three principles— independence, peaceful reunification and great unity of the whole nation.

The DFRK is a reunified national state of a federal type achieved through the establishment of a unified national government on the condition that the north and south recognize and tolerate each other's ideas and social systems, a government in which the two sides are represented on an equal footing and under which they exercise regional autonomy with equal rights and duties. To establish a reunified state by leaving the systems of both sides and merging the two autonomous governments with neither of the two sides trying to conquer or overpower the other is the most realistic and reasonable way to reunify the country fairly and peacefully at the earliest possible date in the situation where different ideas and systems exist in the north and south of Korea.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the struggle to realize this plan.

He put stress on giving wide publicity to the validity and viability of the plan.

He pointed out that it was important to give publicity to the veracity of the WPK's policy for national reunification including the plan for founding the DFRK so that all the Koreans in the north, south and abroad would support them and turn out as one in the patriotic struggle to reunify the country.

In October and December 1980 and on other occasions he reiterated the significance of giving publicity to the plan for founding the DFRK.

He made sure that the campaign to put the plan across was stepped up among the Korean people at home and abroad.

The WPK and government organs and other publications carried articles on the plan of founding the DFRK and the 10-point policy of a reunified state and the feedback from a broad spectrum of people. Other newspapers and radio broadcasts gave a detailed explanation of their justness. The issue of implementing the new plan was discussed at political events including the meetings of the working people's organizations for the implementation of the decision of the Sixth Congress of the WPK and national meetings in celebration of major anniversaries.

Various forms and methods were used to inform peoples around the world of the WPK's new proposal for national reunification and its justness.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the effort to create preconditions for the founding of a federal state.

The prerequisites for founding the federal state through a concerted effort by the north and the south are to achieve national reconciliation and unity, ease the tension on the Korean peninsula and remove the danger of war.

Kim Jong Il directed primary efforts to establishing a climate for achieving reconciliation and unity of the nation.

In September 1984, he took measures to send relief materials to the flood victims in south Korea, opening up a new phase for national reconciliation and unity.

207 000 people fell victim to heavy flooding that hit south Korea from late August to early September 1984.

The Red Cross Society of the DPRK adopted without delay a decision on sending relief materials to the flood victims. Kim Jong Il unfolded a bold plan to send colossal amounts of relief materials in a short period and gave meticulous guidance over the whole course of preparing and delivering the goods to the south.

As a result, 50 000 *sok* of rice (one *sok* equals about 140 kg-Tr.), 500 000 metres of cloth, 100 000 tons of cement and large quantities of medicines were delivered to south Korea, for the first time in nearly 40 years of Korea's division. The delivery of relief goods helped to thaw the relations between north and south; it paved the way for the opening of economic talks, resumption in May 1985 of the Red Cross talks after a gap of 12 years, exchange of visits by Red Cross art troupes and home-visiting groups from both sides to mark the 40th anniversary of Korea's liberation, and holding of preliminary contacts for parliamentary talks and sports talks. This made a breach in the barrier of national division, heightening the nation's zeal for reunification.

Kim Jong Il took a series of measures to realize the proposals advanced by

Kim Il Sung—the one for convening a joint conference to be attended by the authorities, representatives of all political parties and public organizations and prominent figures of different social standings in the north and south of Korea and the other for holding a political consultative meeting of personages in the leadership of both sides. He also ensured that delegates from south Korea including Rev. Mun Ik Hwan, advisor to Jonminryon (Coalition for the National Democratic Movement), and a representative of Jondaehyop (National Council of Student Representatives) were accorded a warm welcome and given prominence. This created an atmosphere for national reconciliation and unity and enthusiasm for reunification.

Kim Jong Il exerted great efforts to ease the tension on the Korean peninsula and create a peaceful atmosphere for Korea's reunification.

With a view to alleviating the tension and ensuring durable peace on the Korean peninsula, Kim Il Sung advanced reasonable proposals on holding tripartite talks between the DPRK, the United States and south Korea and inter-Korean high-level political and military talks aimed at replacing the Armistice Agreement with a peace treaty and adopting a declaration on non-aggression between the north and south of Korea.

Kim Jong Il directed primary concern to realizing the proposal for the tripartite talks.

In January 1984 a joint meeting of the Central People's Committee and the Presidium of the Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK sent a letter to the US administration and south Korean authorities proposing to hold tripartite talks. In April 1985 the Fourth Session of the Seventh Supreme People's Assembly adopted a letter to the parliament of south Korea proposing to hold talks between them and make public a non-aggression declaration. In 1986, the Year of International Peace, the DPRK took a series of positive measures to prevent the danger of war on the Korean peninsula and mitigate the acute military confrontation.

The proposal for suspending all kinds of military drills in the period of inter-Korean talks, the proposal for establishing a nuclear-free, peace zone in the Korean peninsula and the seconding of 150 000 KPA soldiers to peaceful construction projects were testimony to the sincere attitude of the WPK and the DPRK government for easing the tension and creating preconditions for peaceful reunification.

Kim Jong Il adopted various measures to realize the proposals for inter-Korean high-level political and military talks and for disarmament.

From January to March 1987 the premier of the Administration Council and

the minister of the People's Armed Forces of the DPRK sent four joint letters to their south Korean counterparts demanding that inter-Korean high-level political and military talks be held as early as possible. In July 1987, the DPRK government issued a statement proposing a large-scale, phased arms reduction. Accordingly, 100 000 soldiers of all arms and services of the KPA were discharged and sent to socialist construction projects by late December. In November 1988 the DPRK advanced four principles for securing peace and a wide-ranging peace proposal.

These measures adopted by the WPK and the DPRK government to create peaceful environment for national reunification and their sincere efforts to ease the tension won unreserved support and welcome at home and abroad.

Kim Jong Il led the effort to form a great national united front to realize the plan for founding the DFRK.

To promote the formation of a pan-national united front, he mapped out a plan for establishing a consultative organ made up of the personages from the north, south and abroad, and made reasonable proposals to this end.

A joint conference of the political parties and public organizations in the DPRK held in Pyongyang in November 1980 adopted a letter proposing that a preliminary meeting be held to form a preparatory committee for founding the DFRK with an appropriate number of representatives of all parties, all factions and all strata in the north, south and abroad. The letter was sent to people of different strata in south Korea and abroad.

This proposal enjoyed active support and welcome from the Korean people in and out. However, the south Korean authorities alone slandered the north's proposal, expelling almost all of those who had received the letter from their official positions and suppressing or arresting them on various charges.

Kim Jong Il took steps to denounce the anti-national, separatist schemes of the south Korean authorities and embrace all patriotic, democratic forces in south Korea and abroad.

Accordingly, in August 1981 the Central Committee of the Democratic Front for the Reunification of Korea issued a statement proposing convocation of a rally for promoting national reunification to be participated in by representatives of all political parties and public organizations in the north and the south and overseas compatriots desirous of the country's reunification with the exception of the south Korean authorities and their ilk. In February 1982 the Committee for the Peaceful Reunification of Korea initiated convocation of a joint conference of 100 figures from the north, south and abroad as a consultative body for national reunification and made public the list of 100 figures.

Subsequently, a dynamic political movement for this purpose was launched in south Korea and abroad.

Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into cementing solidarity between the Korean people in the north and overseas to promote the formation of the national united front.

Given the situation where wide-ranging talks for reunification were yet to be held between the north and the south, this solidarity was a breakthrough in the formation of the great national united front.

Kim Jong Il led the overseas Korean compatriots who were visiting Pyongyang to follow the road to reunification in alliance with communism, so that they could play the role of vanguard in realizing the solidarity.

Thus, middle-of-the-road political forces, conscientious people in the social, academic and religious circles and even right-wing figures who aspired after national independence sought alliance with communism and played a pivotal role in inspiring other compatriots to achieve independent reunification and great national unity.

As the aspiration after collaboration with communism and the DPRK grew stronger among the democratic figures living abroad, Kim Jong Il made sure that dialogues and contacts with overseas Korean compatriots were expanded.

In November 1981 a conference of representatives of the north and overseas Korean Christians was held in Vienna, Austria, for the first time in 36 years after Korea's division. In December 1982 another conference of the same kind was held on a larger scale in Helsinki, Finland. These meetings served as an important occasion in promoting reconciliation and alliance of the Korean compatriots in and out of the country and accelerating the movement for its independent and peaceful reunification.

With the overseas Korean compatriots' patriotic movement to realize the plan for founding the DFRK spreading rapidly to Japan, America, Australia and several countries in Europe, the basis for national unity was laid abroad.

In December 1984, a conference of the north and overseas Korean compatriots was held, resulting in the formation of the National Alliance for Korea's Reunification as a nonpermanent consultative body. It was a brilliant fruition of the united front of the Korean people in the north and overseas and a cornerstone for accelerating the formation of great national united front.

Kim Jong Il adopted substantial measures to realize the proposal for a joint conference of representatives in the north and the south advanced by Kim Il Sung to form a pan-national united front.

In January 1988 the Central People's Committee, Administration Council, all political parties and public organizations of the DPRK held a joint meeting, at which a letter to political parties, public organizations and personages in south Korea was adopted proposing convening a joint conference of the authorities, representatives of public organizations and personages from all walks of life of both sides, and formed the north-side preparatory committee for the joint conference.

The proposal for convening the joint conference gained enthusiastic support and welcome from people at home and abroad. In particular, many people in south Korea asserted that the masses of the people should be the driving force in resolving the reunification issue and an increasing number of people demanded direct involvement in resolving the issue.

With the nation's desire for the country's reunification growing stronger and the motive force for the cause gaining in strength, Kim Jong Il strived to convene a pan-national rally to be participated in by delegates of reunification movement organizations and patriotic personages of various social strata in the north, south and abroad.

Subsequently, a rally of the Korean compatriots at home and abroad for promoting national reunification was held in Pyongyang in July 1989, at which it was decided to hold an August 15 pan-national meeting for Korea's reunification at Panmunjom next year to mark the 45th anniversary of its liberation.

The struggle to form a great national united front led to a new turning point in building up the driving force of national reunification and expanding and developing the reunification movement on a nationwide scale.

The dynamic struggle to realize the plan for founding the DFRK waged in the 1980s brought about a fresh upsurge in the reunification movement.

Kim Jong Il energetically led the struggle to effect a fresh turn in the movement of Koreans in Japan.

He said:

“Today the subjective and objective conditions of Chongryon have greatly changed, which urgently requires it to bring about a new revolutionary change in every aspect of its work.”

Entering the 1980s the movement of Koreans in Japan greeted a fresh turning point in its development.

With the change of generations compatriots of the second and third generations, who had been born and grown up in Japan, held the overwhelming majority of the Korean compatriots in Japan and played the leading role in their movement. Businesspeople were the basic masses of Chongryon (General Association of Korean Residents in Japan).

The environment for its work had greatly changed. The Japanese government grew more frantic in its schemes to disintegrate Chongryon, and the relations of Japan and south Korea got closer. Availing themselves of this, the south Korean reactionaries persisted in undermining Chongryon and the movement of Koreans in Japan more aggressively than ever before.

The harsh reality demanded that Chongryon take decisive measures to improve work with the compatriots of the rising generations, businesspeople in particular, and accelerate the modelling of Chongryon on the Juche idea.

With a keen insight into the actual situation of Chongryon and the inherent requirement for the development of the movement of Koreans in Japan, Kim Jong Il, in his talk titled, *On Further Improving the Work of Chongryon in Line with the Requirement of the Developing Reality* given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on September 15, 1986, noted that Chongryon is a Juche-oriented organization of overseas compatriots which is guided by the Juche idea and defined it as its strategic target to model it on the Juche idea.

He also advanced tasks and ways for bringing about a fresh turn in the work of Chongryon to suit the changing realities.

First of all, he stressed the importance of consolidating the ranks of its officials.

He paid close attention to reorganizing the ranks in conformity with the changing situation and efficiently conducting the work of educating the current officials and training reserve officials. He showed warm care for the veteran officials who had devoted their whole life to developing Chongryon and led them to continue to play a pivotal role in its work.

He directed great concern to rallying the broad sections of Korean compatriots around the organizations of Chongryon and intensifying ideological education among them.

Regarding businesspeople as the basic masses of Chongryon and the main force of the movement of Koreans in Japan, he paid close attention to encouraging them to display the spirit of patriotic devotion. He made sure that education in the revolutionary faith was intensified among the officials of Chongryon and education in love for their homeland and nation was conducted among other compatriots, with a focus on implanting in them the Korean-nation-first spirit and the spirit of devoted service to their motherland.

He also led Chongryon to defend the democratic national rights of the Korean compatriots and push forward the patriotic movement to support socialist construction in their homeland and Korea's independent and peaceful reunification.

He ensured that Chongryon raised it as one of its important duties to protect and expand the Korean compatriots' human rights, business rights and rights to living and education, and waged a struggle to this end by enlisting the broad sections of the compatriots. He also had a new drive for wining the Patriotic Honour Flag launched so as to bring about a fresh turn in the patriotic work of Chongryon.

Under his leadership Chongryon developed into a model Juche-oriented organization of overseas Korean compatriots, and a fresh revolutionary change took place in the movement of Koreans in Japan.

10. PROMOTING THE CAUSE OF GLOBAL INDEPENDENCE

Entering the 1980s a strong tide of independence swept the world. In the international arena an acute struggle was going on between the revolutionary and counterrevolutionary forces, between the anti-imperialist independent and dominationist forces.

Many nations, freed from the yoke of imperialist colonial rule, took the road to independence and the revolutionary movement for anti-imperialist independence was gaining momentum. On the other hand, imperialists got more frantic in their moves for interference and aggression to maintain and expand their spheres of influence. In particular, the US imperialists resorted to more vicious means to disintegrate socialist countries from within and intensified their schemes for aggression, plunder and war against developing countries.

With a keen insight into these developments in the political arena of the world and the requirements of the times, Kim Il Sung advanced a policy of making the whole world independent in his speech titled, *Tasks Facing the People's Government to Model the Whole Society on the Juche Idea*, delivered at a joint conference of the WPK Central Committee and the Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK on April 14, 1982.

True to his lofty intention, Kim Jong Il made public a treatise titled, *Let Us Advance under the Banner of Marxism-Leninism and the Juche Idea* on May 3, 1983 to mark the 165th anniversary of the birth of Marx and the 100th anniversary of his death. In this paper he defined accelerating the cause of

global independence as a common task of mankind, and he led the struggle for its implementation.

Kim Jong Il said:

“At present the important task to be tackled in bringing to completion the revolutionary cause of the working class pioneered by Marx is to oppose imperialism and accelerate the cause of global independence.”

To make the whole world independent means to build a world in which all countries and nations are not subordinated to and obey any powers or dominationist forces and in which their independent development is ensured.

Kim Jong Il led the effort to promote unity of and cooperation among anti-imperialist independent forces.

The motive force of the struggle for global independence is the anti-imperialist independent forces and its strength lies in unity. As imperialist nations were in collusion with one another to oppose socialist countries and progressive peoples, it was all the more urgent to achieve unity of all the anti-imperialist independent forces of the world.

Kim Jong Il paid primary concern to strengthening the unity of socialist countries.

He adopted necessary steps to assist Kim Il Sung in his visit to the former Soviet Union and other East European socialist countries from May 16 to July 1, 1984 and his external activities with leaders of socialist countries and their parties. This served as an important occasion for strengthening the unity of socialist countries.

At the Ninth Plenary Meeting of the Sixth Congress of the WPK Central Committee held in July 1984 he set out a task of improving relations and strengthening unity with all progressive parties, social organizations and revolutionary organizations of the world and took measures to promote exchanges between party delegations.

The WPK dispatched its delegations of different levels to many countries and invited leaders of parties and their delegations to promote ties of friendship with them. In 1985 alone the WPK sent its delegations abroad on more than 70 occasions and over 90 party delegations of foreign countries visited the DPRK.

Kim Jong Il paid concern to developing the non-aligned movement.

First of all, he strived to consolidate unity and cohesion of non-aligned countries.

In the early 1980s imperialists got more frenzied in their schemes to sow discord among non-aligned countries and undermine the non-aligned movement from within.

On May 3, 1983, Kim Jong Il made public a work titled, *Let Us Advance under the Banner of Marxism-Leninism and the Juche Idea*. He stressed in this work that non-aligned countries should hold fast to the fundamental principles of the non-aligned movement and achieve firm political unity and promote economic cooperation with one another on the principle of complete equality and non-interference in others' internal affairs.

And he ensured that prior to summit meetings of the non-aligned movement reports on a joint meeting of the Political Bureau of the WPK Central Committee and the Central People's Committee of the DPRK were made public in February 1983, June 1986 and June 1989 clarifying the principled stand of the WPK towards the consolidation of unity and cohesion of the non-aligned movement.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the Korean delegation played a positive role at several meetings of non-aligned countries.

In the 1980s he set the specific direction of the work of the Korean delegations that would attend important meetings of the non-aligned movement including three summit meetings.

The Korean delegations strived to make the meetings put a focus on discussing basic principles for development of the non-aligned movement and preparing a common strategy, thus rendering great services to consolidating unity of non-aligned countries under the banner of anti-imperialist independence.

Next, Kim Jong Il paid concern to expanding South-South cooperation as part of the effort to develop the non-aligned movement.

He ensured that international meetings on South-South cooperation held in the DPRK served as important occasions in promoting this cooperation. Typical examples were the seminar of non-aligned and other developing countries on food and agricultural growth in August 1981, the seventh meeting of the coordinating committee of the association of news agencies of non-aligned countries in May 1982, the first meeting of ministers of education and culture of non-aligned and other developing countries in September 1983, and the special ministerial meeting of non-aligned countries on South-South cooperation in June 1987. At these meetings non-aligned and other developing countries discussed realistic ways of achieving economic self-sufficiency and promoting South-South cooperation.

Kim Jong Il also took positive steps to assist non-aligned countries in agricultural development.

In August 1981 he set forth a task of setting up a research centre for

agricultural development of African countries and took steps to establish agricultural institutes and experimental farms in Tanzania, Guinea and other African countries. According to the measures taken by him, the DPRK sent many experts, together with materials and equipment, to Mali, Benin, the then Democratic Yemen, Guyana and others to help them in 30-odd irrigation projects, dispatched technicians and specialists to many other African countries, and trained agricultural technicians from African countries.

Kim Jong Il adopted steps to help newly-emerging countries in party and government building, industry, education, healthcare, art and literature, and many other fields.

According to his instructions, the DPRK government established ties of economic cooperation and technical exchange with over 80 countries and offered aid to dozens of projects. It also sent a large number of specialists to many countries to help them in party and government building, economic management, medical service and cultural construction.

Kim Jong Il directed concern to intensifying the joint anti-imperialist struggle of the peace-loving peoples of the world.

He advanced principles to be maintained in frustrating the moves of the US and other imperialists for aggression and war and ensuring global peace and security.

In a work published on May 3, 1983, he stressed that it was important to form an anti-US united front involving all anti-imperialist independent forces and deal a collective blow at the US imperialists, frustrate the imperialists' schemes for expansion of armaments and war preparation, remove the US military bases, troops and weapons of mass destruction including nuclear weapons from foreign countries, disband military blocs, and establish and expand nuclear-free, peace zones in different parts of the world.

In his talk titled, *Let Us March Forward Dynamically along the Road of Socialism and Communism under the Unfurled Banner of the Anti-Imperialist Struggle*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on September 25, 1987, Kim Jong Il underlined the need to maintain the anti-imperialist stand with a correct understanding of the true features of modern imperialism and its destiny and wage a dynamic struggle against it by achieving solid unity of all anti-imperialist independent forces of the world.

He paid close concern to inspiring the peace-loving peoples of the world to the struggle for peace and against imperialism, war and nuclearization.

In May 1983 he set forth the task of making the World Conference of

Journalists Conference serve as an important occasion in rousing the peace-loving peoples of the world to the joint struggle against imperialism. In July the same year the conference was held in Pyongyang successfully, drawing 169 delegations and delegates from 118 countries and 17 international organizations. Kim Jong Il arranged positive external activities to give an impetus to the world peace-loving peoples' movement against imperialism and for peace.

In March 1981 the WPK and a delegation of the Socialist Party of Japan on a visit to the DPRK had talks, at which they adopted a joint statement on establishing a non-nuclear, peace zone in Northeast Asia. In another talks held in the DPRK in September 1984 the two parties agreed to launch an anti-nuclear movement involving all peoples of Asia by achieving unity of political parties and social organizations in the region and wage a joint struggle against the establishment of the tripartite military alliance between the United States, Japan and south Korea. In September 1986 the WPK hosted an international conference for denuclearization and peace of the Korean peninsula and took positive measures to ensure the conference a success.

The WPK and the government of the DPRK rendered an active support to the progressive peoples of the world in their struggle against the imperialists' schemes for war and aggression, and for independence, sovereignty and peace. Typical examples were their support to the people of India and its surrounding region in their struggle to make the Indian Ocean a peace zone, to the people in the Caribbean region in the effort to create a zone for peace, independence and development and to the Southeast Asian people in their struggle to make the region a nuclear-free zone.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students was held in Pyongyang as a grand festival for anti-imperialist solidarity, peace and friendship.

He paid special concern to keeping up the anti-imperialist character of the festival.

He defined the ideals of the festival as anti-imperialist solidarity, peace and friendship. In his talk titled, *The Present Times and the Tasks Facing Young People* given on October 12, 1988 to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee, he stressed the need to maintain the ideals of the festival in the face of the imperialists' obstructive schemes.

He met officials related with the festival several times and gave advice to this end. Looking round the venues of the events of the festival, he stressed the importance of maintaining the noble ideals of the festival throughout the events.

He provided energetic leadership to make the Pyongyang festival a model unprecedented in the history of the festival.

He organized a national preparatory committee for the festival to make preparations for it as an undertaking involving the entire WPK, the entire country and all the people. Underlining the importance of establishing the Juche orientation in the festival, he ensured that all the events of the festival were organized in the Korean style, and the opening and closing ceremonies and the events for the Day of Korea were arranged in a unique way and on a high level.

The festival was held from July 1 to 8, 1989, attended by 1 245 youth and student organizations from 180 countries, 16 000 representatives of 64 international and regional organizations, 470 guests of honour from 90 countries and other foreign tourists and overseas Korean compatriots. A delegate of Jondaehyop (National Council of Student Representatives of south Korea) participated in the festival highlighting its significance.

Kim Jong Il, in company of Kim Il Sung, attended the opening and closing ceremonies and encouraged the youth and students from all over the world.

The Pyongyang festival was of historic significance, in that it contributed greatly to consolidating the international solidarity with the Korean revolution and inspired the youth and students and other revolutionary peoples of the world to further efforts in their anti-imperialist struggle.

As the struggle to realize global independence was accelerated under Kim Jong Il's leadership, anti-imperialist independent forces were remarkably strengthened and the world revolution vigorously advanced along the road of independence.

**CHAPTER 6. ORGANIZING AND
LEADING THE STRUGGLE TO DEFEND
PEOPLE-CENTRED SOCIALISM
OF THE KOREAN STYLE**
(January 1990-July 1994)

1. IDEOLOGICAL AND THEORETICAL
ACTIVITIES TO DEFEND AND ADVANCE
THE SOCIALIST CAUSE

Kim Jong Il conducted energetic ideological and theoretical activities to defend and advance the socialist cause in the first half of the 1990s.

He said:

“In order to defend and develop socialism in its fierce struggle against enemies of all hues, we must further develop the revolutionary ideology and theory of the working class and make them perfect as required by the times and the developing revolution.”

In the period between the late 1980s and the early 1990s the people’s cause of independence, the socialist cause, encountered vicious challenges by the imperialists and reactionaries.

The wind of reform blew hard in some socialist countries, rapidly degenerating socialism and reviving capitalism.

Consequently, socialism collapsed and capitalism revived in the Soviet Union and some East European countries. Taking advantage of this, the imperialists and reactionaries made a fuss about the end of socialism and slandered the ideal of socialism.

As rapid progress was made in socialist construction, the limitations of the preceding revolutionary ideas and theories of the working class, those on socialist construction in particular, became more apparent.

With a keen insight into the prevailing situation Kim Jong Il elucidated the essential characteristics and advantages of the Korean-style socialism and the

source of its invincible might in several works including the speeches titled, *On Some Problems of the Ideological Foundation of Socialism* and *Socialism of Our Country Is a Socialism of Our Style as the Embodiment of the Juche Idea* delivered to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on May 30 and December 27, 1990, respectively and in a talk titled, *Our Socialism Centred on the Masses Shall Not Perish* given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on May 5, 1991.

First of all, he proved that Korean-style socialism is a unique one, the ideological foundation of which is the great Juche idea.

Socialism is a society based on the revolutionary ideas of the working class and its development is guaranteed by the scientific accuracy, revolutionary character and a practicability of the ideas and theories on which it is based.

Korean-style socialism is a unique one based on the Juche idea, the most scientific and revolutionary idea of the working class. As it is based on the Juche idea it is marching along the road of victory without vacillation in the face of all manner of pressure and slander by the imperialists and reactionaries.

Next, he clarified the advantage of Korean-style socialism.

He said:

“The basic advantage of our form of socialism is that it is a man-centred society, a society which considers everything with man at the centre and makes everything serve him. This advantage is defined by the Juche idea, a man-centred idea.”

He noted that Korean-style socialism is advantageous in that it embodies the intrinsic requirements of man on the highest level.

Independence, creativity and consciousness are the essential attributes of a social being and collectivism is an intrinsic requirement of man who can carve out his own destiny only in the social collective. Korean-style socialism is the advantageous socialism which splendidly embodies this intrinsic requirement of a social being as clarified by the Juche idea.

Kim Jong Il elucidated that Korean-style socialism is the most advantageous social system which provides the masses of the people with a genuine independent and creative life.

Political life, economic life and ideological and cultural life are major fields of social life. How the working people enjoy their independent rights and creative abilities in every field of social life is the key factor in determining the progressive nature and advantage of society.

The advantage of the Korean-style socialism which is based on the Juche idea lies not merely in that the master of the state power and means of production is the masses of the people but in that it substantially provides them with an independent and creative life in all fields of political life, economic life and ideological and cultural life. Herein lies the advantage of the socialist life over the capitalist life and the greatest advantage of the Korean-style socialism over the one in other countries which was established on the basis of the materialistic world outlook.

Next, Kim Jong Il elucidated the invincibility of the Korean-style socialism and its eternal viability.

The driving force of socialist society is the masses of the people. However, only when they are united behind the party and the leader as one can they perform the role of the independent motive force of the revolution and carry out socialist construction successfully. Even after the establishment of socialist system the single-hearted unity of the whole society can not be achieved of its own accord. The work of advancing a correct guiding ideology and scientific strategy and tactics for the masses' struggle and of awakening and organizing them is carried out only by the outstanding leader and the party of the working class.

As they are guided by the outstanding leader and the seasoned leadership of the party the single-hearted unity of the masses around the party and the leader can be achieved, and this unity serves as the source of invincibility of socialism and its eternal viability.

In a talk titled, *The Historical Lesson in Building Socialism and the General Line of Our Party* delivered to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 3, 1992, Kim Jong Il elucidated the reasons for the frustration of socialism in some countries and the lessons drawn from it and the general line to which the WPK was adhering in socialist construction.

Above all else, he specified the reasons for the collapse of socialism in some countries and the lessons drawn from it.

He said:

“In short, the basic reason for the frustration of socialism in some countries is that they did not put the main emphasis on strengthening the motive force for building socialism and on enhancing its role; they failed to understand the essence of socialism, of centring on the masses of the people, the makers of history.”

Socialist society is one in which the masses are the masters and that is

developed by dint of the creativity of the masses who are united as one. The essence of socialist society which makes it different from all exploitative societies and the driving force which promotes the progress of the socialist society lie in the fact that the masses work in comradely unity and with a high degree of consciousness of being masters and displaying their ability as such. Therefore, the basic way to promote the building of socialism successfully is to strengthen the motive force of the revolution by giving priority to the remoulding of the people, as well as to enhance the role of the driving force by giving the fullest play to the revolutionary enthusiasm and creativity of the masses. Because they did not understand this, the parties in some countries which were building socialism failed to strengthen the motive force of the revolution and enhance its role. Herein lies the basic reason for the collapse of socialism.

Kim Jong Il clarified that another reason is that they failed to recognize the qualitative difference between socialism and capitalism and adhere consistently to the fundamental principles of socialism.

Defending the masses' desire for independence and their interests and embodying them is the fundamental principle that should be consistently adhered to in socialist construction.

In order to build socialism to meet the masses' desire for independence and their fundamental interests it is imperative to strengthen the working-class party organizationally and ideologically, ensure its leadership of the revolution and construction, steadily enhance the functions and role of the socialist government, safeguard and develop socialist ownership and resolutely combat imperialism. In the past the people of some countries that were building socialism wavered in the face of transient difficulties that arose in the course of building socialism and went so far as to yield to the pressure of the imperialists, gradually conceding and abandoning their revolutionary principles. This resulted in the frustration of socialism and revival of capitalism.

Kim Jong Il pointed out that the frustration of socialism in some countries is also due to the fact that the parties of those countries had not strengthened international solidarity based on independence in their relations.

To unite and cooperate with one another on the basis of independence and maintain their independence while strengthening international solidarity is a basic principle that the parties of socialist countries must hold up in their relations.

On the basis of the comprehensive analysis of the reasons for the frustration of socialism in some countries Kim Jong Il concluded that

historical experience shows that when people steadily strengthen the motive force of the revolution, with a strong conviction in socialism and a correct guideline, hold fast to socialist principles in all circumstances and strengthen comradely unity and cooperation on the basis of independence, the socialist cause will advance along the road of victory; otherwise it will suffer setback and frustration. He added that this is a serious lesson mankind has learned on its path to socialism.

Next, Kim Jong Il elucidated the general line the WPK pursues in socialist construction and its validity.

He formulated that to carry out the ideological, technological and cultural revolutions thoroughly while strengthening the people's government and steadily enhancing its functions and role is the general line for building socialism put forward by Kim Il Sung.

He clarified that the general line is a scientific and revolutionary line indicating the road for accomplishing the socialist cause and fully realizing the independence of the masses of the people by embodying the Juche idea. He stressed that this line is applied in the building of the Korean-style socialism and its validity and viability have been substantiated through practice.

He advanced principles to be maintained in laying bare the absurd nature of the sophistry by the enemies who are slandering socialism and in shattering it to accomplish the cause of socialism.

Kim Jong Il published a discourse titled, *Abuses of Socialism Are Intolerable* on March 1, 1993 in *Kulloja*, the official magazine of the WPK Central Committee.

He said:

“It is sophistry to call socialism ‘totalitarian,’ ‘barracks-like’ and ‘administrative and commanding.’”

He laid bare the impropriety of the sophistry of the enemies who call socialism “totalitarian.”

Totalitarianism served as the political idea of fascist dictators. The fascist dictators like Hitler and Mussolini stamped out even the most elementary democratic freedom and rights of the masses of the working people and enforced unprecedentedly tyrannical policies, behind the misleading name of “national socialism,” claiming that for the sake of the whole nation and the whole state no working-class movement and no class struggle could be permitted. The reactionary nature of totalitarianism is that the interests of the working people are sacrificed for the sake of the rapacious interests of the

reactionary ruling class under the pretence that the individual should be subordinated to the whole. What is meant by the whole in totalitarianism is not the whole of the masses of the people but a tiny handful of the privileged circles. Calling socialism, under which the masses of the people are the masters of everything, “totalitarianism” is, ultimately, a preposterous lie which identifies the most progressive idea that reflects the demands of the masses of the people with the reactionary idea of fascist rulers.

Kim Jong Il laid bare the impropriety of the preposterous lie of the enemies who are calling socialism barracks-like. Socialism is the most progressive of ideas that reflects the intrinsic demands of people, and the socialist system is the most advanced of systems under which the masses of the people enjoy an independent and creative life to the full. The restraint of their independence and creativity occurs not under the socialist system but under the capitalist system in which the working class are the slaves of capital. Claiming that socialism is “barracks-like” is pernicious propaganda that attempts to turn black into white.

Kim Jong Il also clarified the impropriety of the sophistry of the enemies who claim that socialism is barracks-like.

In general, the administrative and commanding method of management is an old method of rule that serves the demands of the privileged classes by invoking legal authority in an exploiter society. In socialist society the masses of the people, who have become the masters of the state and society, hold the position of masters and play the role of masters in the administration. The administrative and commanding method of management which was manifested in socialist practices in the past did not emanate from the essential nature of socialist society but was a legacy of the exploiter society. Therefore, accusing socialism of being “administrative and commanding” is also unreasonable.

Kim Jong Il also presented important principles to be maintained in defending and accomplishing the socialist cause.

He said that if the socialist cause is to be defended and completed, the socialist idea should be developed and perfected constantly and the masses of the people should be equipped with it, so that they accept socialism as their unshakeable conviction.

He clarified that in order to defend socialism and add eternal brilliance to it, people should regard it as their moral duty to defend it.

He noted that the party and the state of the working class should concentrate their efforts on giving full play to the advantage of socialism by carrying on the construction of socialism properly in order to defend the socialist cause and

bring it to completion. He put forth concrete ways of giving full play to the essential advantage of the socialist society.

He underlined that the principle of collectivism should be thoroughly applied in every field of social life to safeguard and defend socialism.

The pernicious propaganda of dubbing socialism “totalitarian,” “barracks-like” and “administrative and commanding” is aimed at undermining socialist collectivism and eulogizing bourgeois individualism. So opposing individualism and applying the principle of collectivism to the letter in all fields of social life is crucial to defending and accomplishing the socialist cause.

Kim Jong Il’s ideological and theoretical activities in the several years of the first half of the 1990s rendered a great contribution to revitalizing on a new ideological basis the socialist movement that was undergoing temporary setback.

2. TO CELEBRATE THE 80TH BIRTH ANNIVERSARY OF KIM IL SUNG AS A GRAND POLITICAL FESTIVAL OF THE KOREAN NATION AND THE HUMANITY OF THE WORLD

Kim Jong Il led the effort to celebrate the 80th birth anniversary of Kim Il Sung as a grand political festival.

The year 1992 marked the 80th birthday of Kim Il Sung and the 50th birthday of Kim Jong Il. As this significant year began the Korean people grew stronger than ever before in their desire to celebrate of Kim Jong Il’s birthday as the greatest national holiday together with Kim Il Sung’s.

On February 7, 1992 Kim Il Sung ratified a decree of the DPRK Central People’s Committee on instituting February 16, the birthday of Kim Jong Il, as the greatest national holiday.

But Kim Jong Il advised against the announcement of the decree out of his pure loyalty to Kim Il Sung. So the decree was not made public until February in 1995, three years after its adoption.

On the occasion of the February holiday, Kim Il Sung wrote a poem dedicated to Kim Jong Il and prepared some gifts for him.

Having received the gifts from Kim Il Sung, Kim Jong Il hardened his determination to faithfully support the revolutionary cause. Bearing in mind Kim Il Sung’s trust in and expectations for him, he had all national celebrations

scheduled for February 16 cancelled, and ensured that all efforts were concentrated on celebrating the 80th birthday of Kim Il Sung as the greatest national holiday and a grand festival common to humanity.

He ensured that an intensive information campaign was launched for propagation of the Juche idea to mark the 80th birth anniversary of Kim Il Sung. He put stress on information work to give the working people a better understanding of the greatness and vitality of the Juche idea.

He saw to it that a national seminar and sectional symposiums on the Juche idea were held in Pyongyang on a high politico-ideological, scientific and theoretical level.

He also made arrangements for the publication of *Kim Il Sung's Complete Works* (volumes 2-5) and convocation of study sessions and lectures and launch of a media campaign aimed at spreading the originality, veracity and vitality of the Juche idea.

He also took steps to assist the advocates of the Juche idea in different parts of the world in their preparations for international seminars on the Juche idea. Later, international seminars were held in more than 50 countries: one in New Delhi, India, on the theme of global independence and peace (February 8-9); another in Tokyo, Japan, on the theme of the present era and the Juche idea, (April 6-8). And magazines and bulletins on the Juche idea were published in large numbers.

Kim Jong Il paid close concern to handing down the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities and his achievements forever and giving wide publicity to them.

Kim Jong Il said;

“On the occasion of the great leader’s 80th birthday, we must give wide publicity to his glorious revolutionary history and immortal achievements, to enhance our people’s national pride and self-confidence and give the people of the rest of the world a good understanding of the leader’s greatness.”

In order to add eternal glory to the immortal achievements of Kim Il Sung he had statues of Kim Il Sung erected at revolutionary historic sites, as well as monuments to his on-site guidance and those inscribed with his autographic writings and signature

According to a measure adopted by Kim Jong Il several structures were built to mark Kim Il Sung's birthday in 1992. A statue of him and a revolutionary museum in Kangson; letters in his own handwriting inscribed on natural rocks in Mts. Kumgang and Myohyang, including those reading *Mt. Kumgang, Kim Il Sung* and *Mt. Myohyang Is the Best in the World, Kim Il Sung*, monuments inscribed

with his autograph at the entrance to the waterway that runs from the West Sea Barrage to Ongjin through Sinchon and Kangnyong.

Kim Jong Il led the effort to compile a greater number of books which described the greatness and achievements of Kim Il Sung. He had his memoirs *With the Century* (Part I. The Anti-Japanese Revolution vols. 1 and 2) published, as well as the books for education in the revolutionary traditions and for the study of the revolutionary history, such as *Notes of the Anti-Japanese Revolutionary Fighters*, and those dealing with Kim Il Sung's virtues and the history of his leadership in various sectors.

He also saw to it that the study of the revolutionary slogans and education in Kim Il Sung's greatness were intensified through visits to the revolutionary battle sites in the Mt. Paektu area and revolutionary historic sites across the country and to the revolutionary museums including the Korean Revolution Museum.

He made sure that a new upsurge was brought about in every field of socialist construction on the occasion of the 80th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth.

On his initiative the Political Bureau of the WPK Central Committee adopted "A Letter to All Party Members" on October 12, 1991 and discussions of the letter were held amid high political enthusiasm at different levels of the WPK organizations.

On January 1, 1992 in a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee, he advanced a slogan "**Let us greet the great leader's 80th birthday with great political enthusiasm and splendid labour achievements!**" to boost production and construction by relying on the masses' revolutionary enthusiasm.

He also made sure that all efforts were concentrated on increasing the output of electricity and coal and developing rail transport. Thereafter, to mark Kim Il Sung's birth anniversary the East Pyongyang Thermal Power Station's boiler No. 1 started its operation, numerous pits were newly built to increase coal output by millions of tons, and the projects for electrifying the railways between Sinhung and Lake Pujon and between Kujang and Hyangsan were brought to completion.

In addition, Kim Jong Il pushed ahead with the projects for erecting numerous grand monumental edifices and inaugurating new factories and enterprises. So the construction of Thongil Street, as big as a city, was completed and the project for installing trams in Pyongyang (first and second stages) was successfully finished. And the road between Pyongyang and Kaesong was opened, and Aeguk TV Assembling Factory and many other factories and workshops were built.

Kim Jong Il paid close concern to producing April 15 gifts.

He proposed presenting as Kim Il Sung's gifts new clothes for children at nurseries and kindergartens and students at schools at all levels across the country, new working uniforms for factory and office workers, working overcoats and winter shoes for farmers.

He ensured that the sector of light industry enlisted all its production potential. He also learned in detail about how production was going and took every possible measure.

Therefore, those gifts were conveyed to all the children, students and working people across the country to mark Kim Il Sung's birthday.

On April 13, 1992, reflecting the people's unanimous aspiration and desire, the WPK Central Committee, the WPK Central Military Commission, the DPRK National Defence Commission and the DPRK Central People's Committee adopted a resolution on conferring Kim Il Sung the title of Generalissimo of the DPRK.

Kim Jong Il showed specific concern for the arrangement of all events to be held in celebration of the 80th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth.

Thanks to his close concern and energetic guidance all events were held in grand style, including the national meeting, artistic performances, banquets, mass gymnastics *My Country Led by the President* and soiree.

These celebrations were attended by 420 delegations from over 130 countries—seven heads of state, 23 government-level delegations, high-level party delegations headed by over 60 party leaders and deputy leaders. Political and social figures from many countries presented gifts, congratulatory telegrams and letters to Kim Il Sung. The congratulatory banners and gifts totalled more than 1 480.

Meanwhile, the Tenth April Spring Friendship Art Festival was opened in Pyongyang, participated in by 80 art troupes and delegations from over 50 countries.

And over 60 preparatory committees for celebrating the 80th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth were organized in 40 countries to hold colourful events. Other kinds of functions took place in several countries, such as ceremonies to name some units after Kim Il Sung and confer honorary titles to him, rallies, banquets, lectures and film shows. The celebrations held to mark the April holiday numbered 2 500 in more than a hundred countries.

Kim Jong Il said that the grand political festival was of historical significance in that it instilled the Korean people with the great glory and pride of having Kim Il Sung and gave confidence in victory of socialism to the world's revolutionary peoples.

He gave a comprehensive clarification of Kim Il Sung's greatness and revolutionary exploits.

On April 17, 1992, immediately after his birthday, he had a talk with senior officials of the WPK Central Committee under the title of *Let Us Glorify the Great Achievements of the Respected Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung*.

In this talk he scientifically analyzed and comprehensively systematized Kim Il Sung's great personality and achievements.

He clarified that he is the greatest of great men, the incarnation of all the best values and qualifications a great man must possess.

He continued that he is a great ideologist and theoretician who is possessed of extraordinary ideo-theoretical wisdom, a great leader with outstanding leadership ability and a genuine people's leader who is endowed with the noble virtue of loving them most.

He gave a comprehensive clarification of Kim Il Sung's achievements for his people—authoring a guiding ideology with which they can shape their destiny successfully, founding the Juche-type political organizations that take responsibility of their destiny, building the people's revolutionary armed forces that defend their freedom and happiness, training the Korean people into a revolutionary people with a high sense of independence, building the Korean-style socialism centred on the masses and providing a sure guarantee for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche through generations.

Noting that it is a firm determination of the WPK to carry forward these exploits in every aspect, he stressed that Kim Il Sung's revolutionary achievements should be inherited and developed so as to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche down through generations.

3. ENHANCING THE WPK'S LEADERSHIP ROLE AND CONSOLIDATING THE SINGLE-HEARTED UNITY OF THE WHOLE SOCIETY

In the first half of the 1990s Kim Jong Il wisely led the effort to strengthen the WPK organizationally and ideologically, enhance its leadership role and functions, and consolidate the single-hearted unity of the whole society.

He said:

“Success in the revolution and construction depends on how the

Party is strengthened and how it enhances its leadership role.”

His primary concern was the internal affairs of the WPK to build it up organizationally and ideologically.

In order to consolidate the ranks of officials, who are leading members of the revolution, he led the WPK organizations at all levels to be scrupulous in selecting and allocating officials according to the Party's principles while striving to transform them along revolutionary lines. In particular, he ensured that all officials tried hard to train themselves into true revolutionaries who share weal and woe with the WPK and support its ideology and leadership faithfully.

He put stress on building up the ranks of the WPK members as a whole.

He made sure that education was intensified to inculcate in all the WPK members the unfailing loyalty to the Party as was implanted in the mind of Hero Ri In Mo, an incarnation of faith and will, and encourage them to support its leadership in the vanguard. He also stressed the need to intensify organizational life among the WPK members so as to encourage them to take part in Party life voluntarily with a high sense of Party organization.

He ensured that ideological education was intensified to equip the WPK members and other working people with its revolutionary ideology in keeping with the requirements of the developing reality. A focus was put on educating them to cherish loyalty to their Party and leader as an element of their faith and conscience and as a moral obligation and part of their daily concern. The greatness of the WPK and the leader, the advantages of socialist system, the Korean nation-first spirit, revolutionary traditions and class consciousness were selected as main contents of ideological education. Ideological education was conducted to suit the characteristics of the working people and their preparedness, and various forms and methods were used, such as lectures, talks and information campaign through publications and radio. Comparison with evidences and propagation of good deeds were encouraged.

Kim Jong Il directed close concern to strengthening Party cells, the basic organizations of the WPK, so that all of them would become faithful to the WPK and the leader.

In November 1990 he received a letter from the members of a Party cell in which they pledged their loyalty to support the WPK's leadership. After sending his reply, he raised this cell as a model Party cell for others to follow.

He called a national conference of Party cell secretaries in May 1991, the first and largest of its kind in the WPK's history, opening up a new phase in

enhancing the functions and role of Party cells and training them into loyal Party cells.

In his letter titled, *We Must Strengthen Party Cells* addressed to those attending the conference, he advanced a slogan **“Let us make all the Party cells loyal cells!”** He ensured that training loyal Party cells was set as the pivotal task of all Party organizations and it was carried out as a Partywide campaign.

From late March to early April in 1994 the second national conference of Party cell secretaries was held, at which valuable successes and experiences gained in strengthening Party cells and creating loyal Party cells were exchanged.

Subsequently, loyal Party cells were produced in large numbers and all other Party cells were further strengthened.

Kim Jong Il paid close concern to eliminating outmoded method and style of Party work.

In particular, he set forth a slogan **“We serve the people!”** and encouraged Party officials to go deep among the masses, working as their faithful servants, sharing weal and woe with them and trying hard to acquire a spirit of devoted service to them.

In a talk titled, *On Thoroughly Transforming Cadres into Revolutionaries As Required by the Developing Revolution*, delivered to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on May 24, 1994, he stressed the importance of conducting this work without deviation as intended by the WPK.

Party officials improved their working method and style, thus enhancing the leading authority of the WPK and winning deep trust of the masses.

Kim Jong Il directed concern to further consolidating the single-hearted unity of the whole society.

In a talk titled, *Let Us Improve Party Work and Brighten Korean-Style Socialism*, delivered to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 1, 1992, he set forth tasks to be tackled in further consolidating the single-hearted unity of the whole society.

Kim Jong Il said:

“Let us bring greater glory to our style of socialism by the strength of single-minded unity!”—this is a militant slogan our Party is now raising.”

He continued: Single-hearted unity is the most powerful weapon with which to defeat all kinds of challenges by the imperialists and reactionaries and defend and brighten Korean-style socialism centred on the masses of the people; single-hearted unity is the lifeline and eternal banner of the Korean

revolution; the WPK organizations should put a focus in Party work on further consolidating the single-hearted unity of the whole society and make steady efforts to this end.

He led the WPK members and all other working people to unite around the WPK with pure loyalty to their leader.

He ensured that the bereaved children of revolutionary martyrs, family members of the war dead, heroes, honoured disabled soldiers and war veterans played a pivotal role in rallying broad sections of the people behind the WPK, standing in the vanguard of the struggle to defend and support their Party and leader.

The WPK organizations at all levels, regarding the work with the masses as an important aspect of Party work, work with people, educated the bereaved children of revolutionary martyrs and family members of the war dead to keep in mind their class position and live and work as their revolutionary forerunners had done. They also gave prominence to honoured disabled soldiers and war veterans and took good care of their work and living. Kim Jong Il arranged a national conference of the bereaved family members of martyrs in October 1992 and a national conference of war veterans in July 1993 to encourage them to play a pivotal role in supporting the leadership of the WPK and the leader.

He paid concern to intensifying the work with workers, farmers and intellectuals in conformity with their characteristics, especially the work with intellectuals in the light of the lessons taught by collapse of socialism in several countries.

In a speech titled, *Let Us Further Enhance the Role of Intellectuals in the Revolution and Construction*, delivered to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on September 20, 1990, he advanced tasks to be tackled in improving the work with intellectuals in conformity with the demands of the prevailing situation and led the effort to this end.

He ensured that ideological education and organizational life were intensified among intellectuals to establish a revolutionary outlook on the leader among them and they were trained in a revolutionary way through practical struggle. In December 1992 he arranged a national conference of intellectuals to demonstrate to the whole world the proud looks of Korean intellectuals united single-heartedly around the WPK and the leader and help them express their firm determination to throw in their lot with the WPK to the end.

He led the effort to rally youth and students around the WPK.

He paid particular concern to establishing a climate of attaching importance

to young people and training them into the youth vanguard faithful to the WPK and the leader.

In January 1991, as part of a measure to add brilliance to the exploits Kim Il Sung achieved for the youth movement and establish a climate of attaching importance to young people cross the country, he had August 28 instituted as the Day of Youth, the day when Kim Il Sung formed the Korean Communist Youth League.

On August 26, 1991, he sent a letter to young people and officials of the youth league throughout the country on the eve of the first Day of Youth and advanced a slogan, **“Young men and women, be the vanguard unfailingly loyal to the Party and the leader!”** He led young people to make the Juche idea as an element of their firm faith and defend the WPK and the leader in whatever circumstances upholding this slogan and become the vanguard and shock-brigade in implementing the WPK’s line and policies under the leadership of the WPK and the leader.

In February 1993 he ensured that the Eighth Congress of the LSWYK (the League of Socialist Working Youth of Korea) was held in grand style as a meeting of the successors to the revolutionary cause of Juche who were unfailingly loyal to the WPK.

He had the youth league organizations pay constant concern to intensifying education in loyalty to the WPK and the leader, revolutionary traditions, class awareness and socialist patriotism, especially protecting young people from the venom of bourgeois ideas. He put emphasis on strengthening organizational life and training them in a revolutionary way in the practical struggle for labour and national defence.

His close concern was also directed to establishing a social climate of working with devotion for the sake of society and the collective among the WPK members and other working people.

His politics of affection and trust bred a number of laudable deeds among them.

He had wide publicity given to the deeds, sometimes sending thanks and autographed letters to those who performed them. In December 1993 he arranged a national conference of models of communist virtue to encourage people to follow their traits.

On the collectivist principle of **“One for all and all for one!”** the whole country became a great harmonious family, and the single-hearted unity of the whole society was further strengthened.

Kim Jong Il developed the Juche-oriented theory on Party building.

In the early 1990s alone he wrote such works as *The Workers' Party of Korea Organizes and Guides All the Victories of Our People, Juche-oriented Theory on Party Building Is a Guideline to Be Adhered to in the Building of a Working-class Party*, and *On the Fundamentals of Revolutionary Party Building*, thus developing the Juche-oriented theory on Party building onto a new, higher level.

In these works he scientifically clarified the limitations of the theory of the preceding working class on party building and the originality and veracity of the Juche-oriented theory on Party building.

As it was based on the materialistic outlook on history, the former theory could not give proper solutions to many problems such as the principle for ideological building of the party. It could not throw light on the ways for communists in different countries to build their parties independently, since in those days the cause of party building of individual countries was guided mainly by the international central organization. In addition, because of the limitations and immaturity of practical experience it could not give comprehensive answers to the matters of principle arising in party building including the theory on ruling-party building.

On the basis of his analysis of the limitations of the preceding theory of the working class, Kim Jong Il proved that the Juche-oriented theory on party building advanced by Kim Il Sung is the most scientific and revolutionary theory based on the Juche idea, which is a complete collection of the experiences the WPK has gained in different stages of the revolution and under varying conditions.

He stressed that the veracity and vitality of the Juche-oriented theory on party building was fully confirmed by the historical experiences gained in the building of the WPK and the victory and successes achieved in the Korean revolution under its leadership, and also by the lessons drawn from the international communist movement.

He set forth a valuable truth that the party's leadership is the lifeline of the socialist cause.

He explained the reasons: The party's leadership is a decisive guarantee for strengthening the driving force of the socialist cause and enhancing its role; it is fundamental to advancing the socialist cause according to correct strategy and tactics; it is essential in maintaining and applying the revolutionary principles to the letter in the whole course of advancing the socialist cause.

He presented important principles to be adhered to in developing the party of the working class into a genuine revolutionary party of the Juche type as

demanded by the times—building the party and conducting its activities with the Juche idea as the guideline, developing it into a mass-based party for working people, establishing monolithic ideology and leadership within the party, consolidating the unity and cohesion of the party and building it with ideology as its basic criterion, imbuing the whole society with one ideology and establishing monolithic political leadership across society, applying the revolutionary mass line, and ensuring continuity throughout the party’s development.

As a dynamic struggle was waged under Kim Jong Il’s leadership to strengthen the WPK, enhance its leadership role and consolidate the single-hearted unity of the society, the driving force of the revolution was built up and the cause of building the working-class party and the socialist cause gained momentum.

4. STRENGTHENING THE KPA, ESTABLISHING A SOCIAL CLIMATE OF ATTACHING IMPORTANCE TO MILITARY AFFAIRS AND INHERITING THE CAUSE OF BUILDING REVOLUTIONARY ARMED FORCES

Kim Jong Il was elected to the leadership of the revolutionary armed forces in accordance with the unanimous, long-standing desire of the Korean service personnel and people.

Impressed by his military qualification and personality and his achievements in army building, they highly praised him as a preeminent military genius, outstanding military strategist and iron-willed commander.

In appreciation of the distinguished services he rendered to building the revolutionary armed forces he was elected member of the WPK Central Military Commission at the Sixth Congress of the WPK in October 1980 and first vice-chairman of the DPRK National Defence Commission at the First Session of the Ninth Supreme People’s Assembly in May 1990. Since then great changes were brought about in strengthening the revolutionary armed forces and defence capabilities of the country.

The situation of the early 1990s urgently demanded that particular stress be put on further strengthening the revolutionary armed forces politically and militarily.

Reflecting this, the 19th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth WPK Central Committee was convened on December 24, 1991.

At the meeting Kim Il Sung proposed appointing Kim Jong Il as Supreme Commander of the KPA. All those attending the meeting raised enthusiastic cheers in token of their full support.

In recognition of the achievements he made while leading the WPK, the state and the KPA Kim Jong Il was honored with the title of Marshal of the DPRK on April 20, 1992 and elected the chairman of the DPRK NDC at the Fifth Session of the Ninth Supreme People's Assembly on April 9, 1993.

This was a political event of great importance that provided a sure guarantee for strengthening and developing the revolutionary armed forces and defence capabilities of the country onto a new, higher level.

Kim Jong Il led the effort to strengthen the KPA and establish a social climate of attaching importance to military affairs.

On several occasions including in a talk titled, *On Strengthening the People's Army and Creating a Social Climate in Which Prominence Is Given to Military Affairs* delivered to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on February 4, 1992, he set forth tasks and ways for strengthening the defence capabilities of the country and wisely led the effort to this end.

He further strengthened the KPA into invincible revolutionary armed forces.

He paid primary concern to establishing a revolutionary military discipline throughout the KPA.

He said:

“The People's Army must thoroughly establish the revolutionary military discipline of carrying out the orders and instructions of the Supreme Commander unconditionally.”

Kim Jong Il had paid close attention to establishing a revolutionary military discipline from long ago.

Following his appointment as Supreme Commander of the KPA, he set it as the foremost task to create a revolutionary military discipline across the army in line with the requirements of a new stage for the development of the revolutionary armed forces.

First of all he educated commanding officers of the KPA to take the lead in this effort keeping in mind the WPK's intention.

In October 1993 he, referring to the importance of establishing the revolutionary military climate, explained to some senior officers the essentials of the work to establish a revolutionary military climate.

He said that it is of prime importance to thoroughly establish a command

system in the KPA, adding that a focus should be put on making the entire army act as one by command of the Supreme Commander.

He led the effort to establish a revolutionary military discipline in the KPA.

He adopted measures to this end in December 1993. In late January the following year he was satisfied to learn about the great successes achieved in this work and said that the KPA should be faithful to the Supreme Commander and nobody else, regarding it as an iron rule to carry out his orders to the end unconditionally.

Thus, a revolutionary discipline was firmly established in the KPA, in which the orders of the Supreme Commander were accepted unconditionally and carried out to the end.

Kim Jong Il's next concern was on building up the ranks of officers and enhancing their political and practical qualifications.

He saw to it that the ranks of officers were strengthened in view of war.

He had young, competent soldiers trained as officers, who had made loyalty to the WPK and the leader an element of their faith and conscience, a moral obligation and part of their daily concern, and were capable of dealing skilfully with complex situations in modern war.

He also ensured that continued efforts were made to train the Party spirit of officers and improve their military qualifications.

He directed great concern to the short course organized by the WPK for officers of the KPA.

According to his instructions, the short course, which had proved its worth in practice from the late 1970s, was held effectively in such a way as to help the attendees improve their abilities of managing the units under their charge with a focus on training their Party spirit.

In addition, he ensured that other kinds of short courses, discussions for the study of war experiences and workshops for tactical research were organized on a number of occasions to improve the officers' qualifications and abilities of managing units. And in the first half of the 1990s alone he arranged KPA-wide conferences of company commanders and political instructors and other officers including those in charge of political work, in order to generalize the experiences of excellent officers across the army.

Kim Jong Il also directed concern to raising the qualitative level of military education.

He put emphasis on updating the curricula and teaching methods of military academies at all levels in line with the requirements of the developing reality, and enhancing the responsibility and role of the teaching staff who were in

direct charge of military education. In October 1992 he arranged a conference of teachers at military schools of different levels to generalize the successes and experiences in military education.

He had politico-ideological education stepped up among service personnel to develop the KPA into invincible revolutionary armed forces.

Education in the Juche idea was prioritized to make all the service personnel fulfil their basic duty as soldiers of the army of the leader, the WPK and the people. And ideological education aimed at implanting confidence in socialism was stepped up to cope with the enemy's frantic schemes against socialist countries, ideological and cultural infiltration in particular.

Kim Jong Il took measures to improve the forms and methods of ideological education.

Information campaigns through speeches, visual aids and artistic performances, and other methods were combined in an effective way, and particular emphasis was put on education through literary and artistic works and other publications. All kinds of education was conducted in an army style—simply and flexibly—and due concern was paid to education by positive examples such as Kim Kwang Chol, the first hero of the 1990s, and the eight brother officers.

Kim Jong Il showed close concern for combat and political training.

In May 1990 he defined the Juche-oriented outlook on training and advanced new training principles.

The Juche-oriented outlook on training is a viewpoint of and attitude towards training centred on the soldiers who are masters of the revolutionary armed forces and take direct responsibility for a revolutionary war.

To establish the Juche-oriented outlook on training means to view training as an important guarantee for victory in a revolutionary war and find the worth of a soldier's life in making devoted efforts for training.

Kim Jong Il advanced four major principles to be maintained in combat and political training—Juche character, political and ideological preparedness, combat readiness and scientific accuracy.

He led service personnel to conduct effective combat and political training on the basis of the Juche-oriented outlook on training.

Under his leadership KPA service personnel strived to establish the Juche-oriented outlook on training holding up the slogan **“Training is also a battle!”** So a revolutionary climate of training was set up across the KPA, urging service personnel to fulfil their tasks in daily and weekly programmes without fail. Combat training was done according to the five-point policy on

training, ie, with emphasis put on mastering Juche-oriented war tactics, acquiring good marksmanship, building strong physique and establishing rigid discipline, and effectively in an atmosphere of actual warfare. Short courses and meetings were held on a large scale to improve the responsibility and role of the officers in charge of organizing and directing training. Kim Jong Il organized large-scale military drills including that for a scramble of the flying corps in 1994 and gave specific guidance from beginning to end.

Thus the qualitative level of combat and political training was raised further, through which all the service personnel of the army were prepared to be a-match-for-a-hundred combatants.

Kim Jong Il made great efforts to strengthen the companies of the KPA.

Company is the basic combat unit of the KPA and the main link in the whole chain of strengthening it. So, from the first days of his leading the army, Kim Jong Il gave priority to building up companies politico-ideologically and perfecting their combat readiness as required by modern warfare.

As the 1990s began, he decided to make the year 1991 a year of an epochal change in strengthening companies. He arranged in Pyongyang national conferences of company sergeants' major company commanders and company political instructors in mid-October, mid-November and late December, respectively.

He paid due concern to implementing the policy of modernizing the entire army on a higher level.

To update military hardware he gave priority to developing military science and defence industry and encouraged workers in defence industry and soldiers to launch a mass-based technological innovation movement.

He inspired the entire army to fortify the existing positions as required by modern warfare and build new defence lines on a high qualitative level. Thus, the KPA became fully ready for combat and the country turned into an impregnable fortress.

The KPA developed into a strong army unflinchingly loyal to its Supreme Commander.

Its invincible might was demonstrated at the military parade in celebration of the 60th anniversary of the army, the first one after Kim Jong Il's appointment as its Supreme Commander, and another in celebration of the 40th anniversary of victory in the Fatherland Liberation War.

Kim Jong Il directed concern to establishing a social climate of attaching importance to military affairs.

He had wide publicity given to the instances of loving and assisting the soldiers through newspapers, radios and publications. He also saw to it that the

officials and workers who were exemplary in assisting the army were invited to attend the national meeting of models of communist virtue, so that their deeds were generalized across society.

He initiated new types of mass movement to develop the good tradition of army-people unity.

In this way a social climate prevailed of everyone loving and helping service personnel as they did their kith and kin.

Kim Jong Il was concerned about discharged and honoured disabled soldiers.

Social prominence was given to discharged soldiers, ex-officers in particular, and dwelling houses and other living conditions were provided sufficiently. People respected and took good care of honoured disabled soldiers in their living. Those who volunteered to marry them were invited to important national celebrations and their laudable deeds were introduced widely. So a moral climate of respecting and helping honoured disabled soldiers, and volunteering to become supporters and spouses for them and war veterans began to prevail over the country.

Wide publicity was given to the parents of soldiers, and on major anniversaries, such as that of the founding of the KPA, officials visited soldier families to inquire about and solve the problems in their living. Young people became convinced that to defend the country was their most honourable and sacred duty, and their parents regarded it as the noblest expression of patriotism to have their children join the army.

As shown above, to have Kim Jong Il at the helm of the revolutionary armed forces was a milestone in developing the KPA into an invincible army unfailingly loyal to the WPK and the leader, establishing a social climate of attaching importance to military affairs and thus strengthening the defence capabilities of the country.

5. SPEEDING UP SOCIALIST ECONOMIC AND CULTURAL CONSTRUCTION

Kim Jong Il set accelerating socialist economic construction as a key to adding brilliance to Korean-style socialism.

Entering the 1990s, economic construction in the DPRK encountered great challenges.

With the disintegration of the socialist market, the long and short-term trade pacts it had concluded with former socialist countries became almost null and void and the economic cooperation projects came to a standstill, adversely affecting its economy.

On the other hand, the United States and its vassal forces, taking advantage of the collapse of socialism in some countries, made frantic efforts to isolate and stifle the DPRK by bringing political and military pressure to bear upon it and applying economic sanctions against it.

To cope with the changing international situation and economic difficulties, Kim Il Sung, in his 1990 New Year Address and at the 17th Plenary Meeting of the Sixth WPK Central Committee in January the same year, took steps to adjust the economic structure of the country in such a way as to improve its economic self-sufficiency and thus develop independently in whatever circumstances. He also called for a new revolutionary upsurge in socialist construction.

True to his lofty intentions Kim Jong Il roused the entire WPK, the whole army and all the people to implement the decisions adopted at the above plenary meeting.

In January 1990 he made sure that the WPK organizations at all levels held discussions to carry out the tasks advanced by Kim Il Sung in his New Year Address and implement the decisions of the plenary meeting. He also had all publicity and information resources enlisted in an ideological campaign to kindle the flames of a new revolutionary upsurge across the country in the 1990s.

He directed concern to holding national meetings by economic sector.

A national conference of innovative workers was held in late February 1990, and meetings of active workers in machine-building and metal industries in March the same year. These meetings served as an important occasion to launch a campaign for creating the speed of the 1990s in all sectors of the national economy and effect a fresh upsurge on all fronts of socialist construction in the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude. In April that year a national meeting of active young people was held to inspire young people to further efforts in the grand socialist march of the 1990s.

Kim Jong Il put great emphasis on improving the people's living standards in the early 1990s.

In his talk titled, *Let Us Effect a Change in Party Work and Socialist Construction to Brighten the 1990s* given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee and the Administration Council on January 1, 1990, he

defined improving the people's standard of living as the central task of socialist economic construction.

He said:

“The most important economic matter is to improve the living standards of the people as soon as possible.”

He ensured that according to the plan of economic construction for the 1990s, main emphasis was put on light industry, agriculture and housing projects while making the existing foundations of the self-sufficient heavy industry pay off.

He adopted measures to develop light industry.

He had the construction plan of heavy industry factories and enterprises adjusted to invest more in light industry. He also saw to it that the existing factories and enterprises strived to put production on a normal footing and turn out larger quantities of goods necessary for the people's living by actively introducing advanced technology.

To bring about a decisive turn in development of light industry he arranged a national meeting of light industry workers in June 1990 and sent a letter titled, *On Effecting a Sweeping Revolution in Light Industry* to those attending the meeting.

In the letter he set forth theoretical and practical problems arising in implementing the WPK's policy for the development of light industry, such as the essence and significance of the struggle to bring about a turn in the development of light industry, the main tasks and ways for it, and roles of the WPK organizations in the struggle.

After the meeting he continued to pay close concern to the development of light industry.

In his talk titled, *On Developing Light Industry and Conducting Effective Research into Economic Management*, given on April 4, 1992 to senior officials of light industry after going over the light industry goods produced on the occasion of the 80th birth anniversary of Kim Il Sung, he spoke highly of the successes in light industry and presented tasks to be tackled in further developing the branches of light industry such as food processing. In May 1992 the WPK Central Committee issued a directive under the title of *On Thoroughly Implementing the Party's Policy of Effecting a Revolution in Light Industry by Rousing the Entire Party, the Whole Country and All the People*. Party guidance teams were sent down to the branches of light industry to promote their development.

Kim Jong Il paid due concern to developing the country's agriculture.

He set solving the problem of water as one of the priorities for the agricultural sector and led the effort to this end.

In the early years of the 1990s the entire WPK, the whole army and all the people were roused to push forward the hundreds-km-long waterway projects near the western coast of the country, the ones that required a huge expenditure of labour, materials and fund. The projects included the second-stage waterway between the West Sea Barrage and Onchon, West Sea Barrage-Sinchon-Kangnyong-Ongjin Waterway, Nam River-Miru Plain Waterway and Ryesong River-Yonbaek Plain waterway. Thus, an irrigation system was set up for the breadbaskets of the country.

In late March 1990 Ponghwa-ri, Kangdong County set an example in irrigation with sprinklers for cooperative farms across the country to follow.

Kim Jong Il also saw to it that more machines and chemicals were introduced in the rural economy, a mass movement was launched to improve the fertility of land, and unfavourable natural and climatic conditions were overcome by applying the Juche farming methods to increase annual output of grains.

He put stress on building more dwelling houses and improving city management to meet the growing demands of the people.

To solve the housing problem for Pyongyang citizens he set forth the task of building 50 000 flats in the city by the 80th birth anniversary of Kim Il Sung. He took measures to provide necessary equipment, materials and manpower in time and assist the project as a Partywide and nationwide campaign. So Thongil Street, as big as a city, was built, and other housing projects were completed in different parts of Pyongyang. He also ensured that all provinces endeavoured to build dwelling houses in urban and rural areas in conformity with their actual conditions so as to meet the growing demands of people.

He paid close concern to improving city management to meet the people's aspirations.

In September 1992 he arranged a national short course for city management officials and sent those attending it a letter titled, *Let Us Further Improve City Management in Conformity with the Requirements of the Developing Situation*.

In the letter he defined city management in socialist society as a public service to provide the people with ample conditions for an independent and creative life and a worthwhile undertaking to keep the country's precious assets in a good state of maintenance and hand them down to posterity. He specified tasks and ways for improving city management as demanded by the developing reality.

For thorough implementation of the tasks he had a reasonable mass-based city management system set up, the ranks of officials and workers in this sector built up and their responsibility and role enhanced, personnel training stepped up, supervision and control over the sector tightened, and social prominence given to the workers in the sector.

He directed great efforts to implement the revolutionary economic strategy.

At the 21st Plenary Meeting of the Sixth WPK Congress in December 1993, Kim Il Sung advanced the revolutionary economic strategy for improvement of the people's living standards—setting the upcoming three years as a period of adjustment and implementing the agriculture-first, light industry-first and trade-first policies to the letter.

In his talk titled, *Let Us Thoroughly Implement the Party's Revolutionary Economic Strategy* given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on March 1, 1994, Kim Jong Il defined the essence and requirements of the strategy and set forth ways for its implementation. He also stressed the importance of effective organizational and political work to this end.

He made sure that the WPK organizations at all levels and their officials went deep among the masses to explain in plain language the revolutionary economic strategy and the WPK's intention of setting it out, launch an information and motivation campaign to make them accept it as absolutely correct and implement it unconditionally in the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance and fortitude, and make careful arrangements for its implementation.

In 1994, the first year of the adjustment period, great successes were made in agriculture, light industry and foreign trade, and an upswing brought about in production at the vanguard sectors of the national economy.

Kim Jong Il comprehensively systematized the theory of Juche-oriented socialist economic management and had them applied thoroughly.

In a letter titled, *Let Us Firmly Equip Ourselves with the Theory of Juche-oriented Socialist Economic Management* sent to the teaching staff and students of the University of National Economics on the 45th anniversary of its establishment on July 1, 1991, he gave a scientific clarification of the fundamentals and principles of socialist economic management, the essential features and advantages of the socialist economic management system, the ways for its application and the basic methods of economic management.

He directed close concern to applying the theory in practice.

In order to equip economic officials with the theory, he ensured that educational work was improved at the University of National Economics, the hub for training hard-core officials for economic management. On the other hand, he had research and information campaign intensified to champion and apply the theory, while guarding against all elements in contravention of it.

To propagate the successes and the good experiences gained in applying the theory, he arranged the national conference of financial and banking officials in September 1990, and the national meetings of officials in charge of the supply of materials and of those in pricing sector in September 1993.

He led the effort to step up socialist cultural construction.

His primary concern was to develop the country's science and technology.

He said:

“To develop science and technology is now urgent for safeguarding the cause of socialism and brightening our style of people-centred socialism all the more.”

In October 1991 he initiated the holding of the national conference of scientists and sent those attending it a letter titled, *Let Us Make a Fresh Turn in the Development of Science and Technology*.

In this letter he said that to develop the country's science and technology to the advanced level of the world in the near future was the WPK's unshakeable determination. Then he specified the long-term goal, immediate tasks and ways for their implementation.

Under his guidance a new three-year plan for the development of science and technology was drawn with 1991 as the starting year, whose central task was to advance major scientific and technological units onto a new, higher level and step up the modernization of the national economy by introducing latest successes in this field. State investment in the sector of scientific research was increased and ample conditions provided for it. Measures were taken to give effective Party guidance over the sector. A social climate was established of respecting the scientists who produced brilliant research results and giving prominence and preferential treatment to them. Thus, the scientists and technicians were encouraged to fulfil their responsibility and role in developing the country's science and technology.

Kim Jong Il continued to put emphasis on further developing Juche-oriented art and literature.

On the basis of the successes and experiences gained in the course of effecting a revolution in art and literature and consolidating the achievements

made so far, he enriched the theory of Juche-oriented art and literature.

In a few years of the early 1990s he made public such works as *On the Art of Dance* (November 30, 1990), *On the Art of Music* (July 17, 1991), *On Fine Art* (October 16, 1991) and *On Juche Literature* (January 20, 1992). Thus, he formulated the theory of Juche-oriented art and literature into a perfect one comprising all branches of art and literature—dance, architecture, music, fine art and literature, as well as cinema, opera and drama.

He led the effort to effect a fresh turn in the creation of artistic and literary works.

On May 23, 1991 he initiated the production of a multi-part film with the song *Pyongyang Is Best* as its theme. Under his energetic guidance the film *The Nation and Destiny* (parts 1 to 7) was produced in no more than a year.

One year later, on May 23, 1992, he had a talk with the officials and creative workers and artistes in the sector of art and literature under the title, *Let Us Effect a Fresh Turn in the Creation of Art and Literature on the Basis of the Success in the Production of the Multi-part Film The Nation and Destiny*.

In this talk he spoke highly of the film's ideological and artistic values and its cognitive and educational significance, before presenting the task of producing the film's series on a high level and effecting a fresh turn in all other branches such as literature, theatrical art and fine art.

In the first half of the 1990s the multi-part film *The Nation and Destiny* (parts 1 to 30) was produced as a prototype of Korean cinema, as well as other films on various themes including *Young Chief of Staff*, *My Mother Was a Hunter* and *A Kind Girl*.

Kim Jong Il paid close concern to developing Juche-oriented musical art. He specified tasks and ways to this end on several occasions including in his talk titled, *Let Us Compose Revolutionary Musical Pieces Which People Love to Sing* given to senior officials of the musical art sector on February 25, 1990, another titled, *On Learning from the Artistic Qualities of the Artistes of the Pochonbo Electronic Ensemble* given to officials and creative workers attending the recital of the artistes of the Pochonbo Electronic Ensemble on June 21, 1990, and the other titled, *On Developing Traditional Music in Keeping with Modern Tastes* given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on November 13, 1993.

In the first half of the 1990s the song *Pyongyang Is Best* and many other contemporary masterpieces were created and great strides were made in discovering and introducing the legacy of traditional music including folk songs. Musical art was further developed by arranging the famous songs, which had been created in each decade of the revolutionary

struggle, to meet modern aesthetic standards, reproducing them into various forms of musical art and disseminating them among the broad sections of the masses.

In this period literature, dance, fine art, acrobatics, architecture and other cultural fields, to speak nothing of cinema and music, boomed under Kim Jong Il's leadership. The efflorescence of culture rendered a positive contribution to satisfying the growing cultural demands of the people and consolidating the ideological and cultural position of socialist Korea.

Kim Jong Il channelled a great deal of effort into carrying forward and developing the national cultural property.

With a keen insight into the significance of this work in equipping the working people with the Korean-nation-first spirit, he ensured that the relics and remains which showcase the time-honoured history of the nation were treasured and preserved well, and proactive efforts were made to add lustre to its proud history and brilliant traditions.

In 1993 alone he stressed several times the importance of intensifying research into King Tangun, the ancestral father of the Korean nation. Later, after it was verified that the king had been a real historical figure, not a mythical being and Kim Il Sung initiated the rebuilding of his mausoleum, he led the project in a responsible manner.

Subsequently, the Mausoleum of King Tangun was rebuilt majestically as befits that of the founder of the Korean nation, contributing to putting to rights the distorted history of the nation and adding eternal brilliance to its brilliant culture and patriotic traditions.

Kim Jong Il paid due attention to improving public health.

In his talk titled, *Some Problems Arising in Improving Public Health* given to senior officials of the public health sector on July 22, 1992 he underlined the need to improve public health with a focus on giving full play to the advantages of the country's socialist healthcare system and to effect a fresh turn in preventive medicine.

He took proactive measures to this end. According to the WPK's policy on preventive medicine, hygienic and anti-epidemic work was done as a campaign involving all the people, and close concern was directed to the health of women and children so as to protect them from various diseases. Priority was given to developing dentistry and preventing cancer. Mineral water, hot springs and peloid were widely used for medical treatment.

In order to rapidly develop medical science and technology Kim Jong Il made sure that medical workers studied hard to keep abreast of world trends

and strived to adopt advanced technology, while redoubling efforts to develop special departments.

Thus, despite the country's economic difficulties, the public health sector made a positive contribution to promoting the people's health.

6. FRUSTRATING THE US RACKET FOR NUCLEAR INSPECTION AND DEFENDING THE COUNTRY'S SOVEREIGNTY AND THE KOREAN STYLE OF SOCIALISM

Entering the 1990s the machinations of the United States to isolate and suffocate the DPRK reached an extreme.

Kim Jong Il said:

“In an attempt to isolate and suffocate our country, the bastion of socialism, the US imperialists last year resorted to unprecedented machinations against socialism and our Republic, and staged the ‘Team Spirit’ joint military exercise, citing as an excuse the nuclear inspection issue. This created a touch-and-go situation in our country, and our Party and people were faced with the choice of whether to defend socialism or not.”

By taking advantage of the collapse of socialism and the revival of capitalism in the former Soviet Union and several countries in East Europe, the US imperialists intensified its onslaught against the DPRK so as to isolate and stifle it.

The United States, in an attempt to isolate the DPRK internationally, took issue with the latter's suspected development of nuclear weapons and demanded nuclear inspection.

The DPRK had already ratified the NPT (Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty) in December 1985, in order to facilitate the withdrawal of the US nuclear weapons from south Korea, remove the US nuclear threats against it and turn the Korean peninsula into a nuclear-free zone.

The United States, however, resorted to a wild racket for a unilateral inspection over it, rather than implementing its duty under the NPT, which stipulates that nuclear states must refrain from nuclear threats against non-nuclear states.

Kim Jong Il wisely organized and led the struggle to crush the unreasonable racket over the DPRK's "suspected nuclear development."

In mid-May 1991 he stressed to a senior relevant official of the WPK Central Committee to lay bare the aim and danger of the United States of having over 1 000 nuclear weapons deployed in south Korea even after the détente had been achieved with the Soviet Union and its ulterior motive for making a fuss of the DPRK's nuclear development capability and for resorting tenaciously to the nuclear inspection racket so as to justify its deployment of nuclear weapons in south Korea.

June 10 that year witnessed simultaneous publication by mass media of a joint statement by the political parties and social organizations in the DPRK that clarified the origin of the emergence of the nuclear issue on the Korean peninsula, the reason why it had failed to be resolved and their attitude towards the nuclear issue.

No sooner had it been released than the statement made a tremendous positive impact upon the world public: In less than a month, more than 400 statements and talks by numerous political parties, public organizations and individual figures in over 90 countries were made public followed by press conferences, radio addresses and demonstrations.

In June 1991, to cope with the situation in which the United States was persisting in their demand that Korea sign the safeguards accord as soon as possible, the DPRK made strong demand that the United States accept the requisite preconditions put forward by it.

The DPRK government gave wide publicity to its principled approach to the issue, that its failure to conclude the safeguards accord was ascribable entirely to the US non-compliance with its duty as a nuclear power bound by the NPT, and that, accordingly, the United States must provide binding assurances that it would withdraw its nuclear weapons from south Korea and remove its nuclear threat to and refrain from the use of nuclear weapons against the DPRK, so that the DPRK could conclude a safeguards accord with the NPT and accept nuclear inspection therefrom.

On September 17, 1991 the United States officially declared its willingness to withdraw its short-range tactical nuclear weapons deployed in foreign countries. And it made the south Korean authorities publish a declaration that "there exists no nuclear weapon in south Korea."

Given this situation, the DPRK government reaffirmed its position that the country was ready to sign the safeguards accord and accept nuclear inspection

in accordance with the IAEA's procedures, provided the "absence of nuclear weapons" in south Korea was confirmed.

As a result, the US assertion that nuclear inspection of the DPRK and the withdrawal of its nuclear weapons from south Korea were separate issues could cut no ice any longer, and the DPRK's signing of the safeguards accord and the withdrawal of the US nuclear weapons from south Korea became closely interrelated.

Driven to a tight corner, the United States acknowledged that it had deployed nuclear weapons in south Korea and accepted the DPRK's proposal to settle the nuclear issue on the Korean peninsula through high-level negotiations between the two sides.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the DPRK's delegation maintained its principled stand at the talks.

At the high-level talks held in New York on January 22, 1992, the DPRK's delegation took the initiative and received the US side's commitment to refrain from its nuclear threat to the DPRK and give up the Team Spirit joint military exercise.

Kim Jong Il led to victory the showdown without gunshot for frustrating the US clamour for special inspection and defending the country's sovereignty and the Korean style of socialism.

Given the US commitment, the DPRK entered into the nuclear safeguards accord with the IAEA on January 30, 1992, and received IAEA's ad hoc inspections on several occasions, in the course of which it was proved that the nuclear facilities in the DPRK had nothing to do with the development of nuclear weapons.

This notwithstanding, the United States asked for a special inspection of some general military sites.

The DPRK government declared that the issue of special inspection was a serious political and military issue which was directly related with the schemes of the United States, a country at war with the DPRK, and in which the IAEA was involved, and that if the special inspection was allowed, it would mean the starting point of opening all its military installations. It continued that if the unjustifiable inspection was enforced upon it, it could not but take due self-defensive measures.

The United States, on January 26, 1993, threatened that it would resume the Team Spirit joint war game. And the IAEA passed a resolution on coercive special inspection at a meeting of its Board of Governors held on February 25. These created a hair-trigger situation on the Korean peninsula.

In order to cope the counterrevolutionary offensive by the United States with a revolutionary offensive, Kim Jong Il, on March 8, 1993, when the provocative Team Spirit war game started, issued Order No. 0034 of the Supreme Commander of the KPA, *On Declaring a State of War Readiness for the Whole Country, All the People and the Entire Army*.

The order declared that if the US imperialists and their south Korean puppets unleashed another war, the people and army of the DPRK would fight to the death for the sake of the WPK, the leader and their style of people-centred socialism that had been achieved at the cost of their blood, and would thus deal a crushing blow to the aggressors and raise the dignity and honour of the heroic country even further. It also warned that the enemy must clearly understand that they shall not trample with impunity upon an inch of land or a blade of grass in the DPRK.

True to the order, the civilians, while performing feats of labour at their posts, helped service personnel materially and spiritually, and the service personnel defended their military posts reliably with a determination to fight to the death for the WPK, the leader, the country and fellow people, should they receive an order.

On March 12, 1993, four days after the issuing of the Supreme Commander's order, the DPRK government published a statement declaring that it would withdraw from the NPT in order to safeguard the national sovereignty and the country's supreme interest.

The world social and press circles commented that even though all the A-bombs in the world may explode, they would not be more powerful than recent north Korea's statement, that it was a manifestation of north Korea's political, ideological and military might, that north Korea is the only country that stands face-to-face with the United States, and that Kim Jong Il's art of leadership of changing the current of the times has shaken the whole world.

Struck by the successive blows from the DPRK, the United States could not but announce its suspension of the Team Spirit 93 joint military exercise ahead of schedule. The IAEA, too, gave up its spurious special inspection demand.

As the United States agreed with the DPRK's proposal for resolving the nuclear issue on the Korean peninsula through negotiations between the two sides, its previous attempt to internationalize the issue was scuttled and government-level talks began to be held.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that the DPRK delegation to the talks adhered to the stand and principle of independence.

At the first round of talks held in New York between June 2 and 11, 1993 a joint statement was announced. It was the first of its kind in the history of relations between the two countries. The statement proclaimed that the two sides had agreed on the principles of assurances against the threat and use of force, including nuclear weapons, peace and security on a nuclear-free Korean peninsula, including impartial application of full-scope safeguards, respect for each other's sovereignty, and non-interference in each other's internal affairs, and support for the peaceful reunification of Korea.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the DPRK delegation to the second round of talks held in Geneva between July 14 and 19 reaffirmed the principles agreed through the New York joint statement, particularly the principle of assurances against the use of force, including nuclear weapons, advanced a more proactive proposal for the resolving of the nuclear issue and realized it to the letter.

At the talks the DPRK side put forward a proposal for replacing its graphite-moderated reactors (GMRs) and other relevant nuclear facilities with light-water reactors (LWRs). The US side expressed support for this proposal and reaffirmed its willingness to cooperate with its dialogue partner in finding ways for provision of LWRs.

After the winding up of the second round of the talks, the US side schemed to postpone the opening of the third round of the talks by claiming that the DPRK's acceptance of the IAEA's inspections and resumption of inter-Korean negotiations should be a prerequisite to the DPRK-US talks.

On January 31, 1994 the spokesman for the DPRK Ministry of Foreign Affairs issued a statement reflecting its government's principled stand. The statement said that the DPRK would not bind itself to the promises it had made with the United States if the latter went back on its own, and had no intention of coming back to the negotiation table if it refused to do so. It declared that if the United States was choosing any other option, the DPRK would choose a way to counter it.

The United States had no other option but to come back to the negotiation table.

At the third round of the talks, which began on August 5, 1994 in Geneva, was adopted the DPRK-USA Agreed Framework for the settlement of the Korean peninsula nuclear issue.

On October 20 that year US President Clinton sent to Kim Jong Il a letter of assurance, in which he affirmed his will to implement the Agreed Framework in a responsible manner by exercising all of his authority.

7. DEVELOPING THE NATIONAL REUNIFICATION MOVEMENT INTO A NATIONWIDE CAMPAIGN

In the first half of the 1990s Kim Jong Il led the effort to open up an epochal phase of the country's reunification by developing the reunification movement into a nationwide campaign.

He ensured that the Korean people at home and abroad strived to achieve national reconciliation and unity.

He said:

“The consistent stand of our Party in the struggle for national reunification is that the Korean nation must reunify the country by the united efforts of the nation on its own responsibility without relying on others.”

He directed concern to creating a climate favourable for achieving national reconciliation and unity true to Kim Il Sung's idea of great national unity.

He endeavoured to promote north-south cooperation and exchanges in the sports.

At the 11th Asian Games held in China in September 1990 spectators from the north and south of Korea cheered the Korean players demonstrating the nation's mounting enthusiasm for reunification.

Kim Jong Il initiated the holding of the Reunification Football Match between the north and the south both in Pyongyang and Seoul in October the same year.

Accordingly, the match was held amid great concern of the entire nation.

Both sides resumed talks at Panmunjom over the formation of a single team to participate in the 41st World Table-Tennis Championships and the Sixth Under-20 World Cup Football Finals.

Kim Jong Il told officials concerned that they should never fail to form a single team in order to demonstrate the unity of the Korea people to the world and heighten their zeal for national reunification. Thus, a single team of the north and the south, called Korea team, was formed, the first of its kind since national division, to take part in the 41st World Table-Tennis Championships held in Chiba, Japan, between April 24 and May 6, 1991 and the Sixth Under-20 World Cup Football Finals in Lisbon, Portugal, in June the same year.

Kim Jong Il also paid concern to promoting national cooperation and exchanges in the field of art.

He had a pan-national concert on the theme of reunification arranged in grand style so that the artistes in the north, the south and abroad could contribute to enlivening the climate for national reconciliation and unity.

When the issue of holding a concert attended by the artistes in the north, the south and abroad was raised, he said that it would not accord with the national desire for reunification to make them merely get together and sing songs. He proposed naming the concert the Pan-National Reunification Concert.

The concert was held in grand style in Pyongyang between October 18 and 23, 1990, attended by the Pyongyang Music Band, the Seoul traditional music performers group and 15 delegations of overseas Korean musicians from the United States, Canada, Germany, the former Soviet Union, China, Japan and other countries.

This served as an important occasion in urging the artistes and other compatriots in the north, the south and abroad to remove the feelings of distrust, misunderstanding and confrontation and create a climate favourable for achieving national reconciliation and unity.

In addition, Kim Jong Il paid attention to holding the Reunification Concert of Traditional Music to Bid Farewell to 1990. He ensured that the numbers for the concert were arranged with a focus on folk songs and traditional instruments, and a music band was formed of the artistes who majored in traditional vocal and instrumental music.

The concert was held in Seoul between December 9 and 12, 1990 amid great expectations and concern of all the people in the north and the south.

National cooperation and exchanges in the fields of sports and art at the beginning of the 1990s heightened the entire nation's enthusiasm for reunification and played a significant role in removing the decades-long feelings of distrust and confrontation between the north and the south and enlivening the climate for achieving national reconciliation and unity.

Kim Jong Il directed great efforts to putting the nationwide reunification movement on an organized and systematic footing.

As the 1990s began, the Korean compatriots in the north, the south and abroad grew stronger in their desire to reunify their country as soon as possible by broadening the scope of the talks for reunification. The reality required that the nationwide reunification movement be put on an organized and systematic footing by promoting dialogue and negotiations for the country's reunification.

Kim Jong Il directed close concern to putting the nationwide reunification movement on an organized basis.

On August 15, 1990, 45 years after Korea's liberation, the first Pan-National Rally for the Peace and Reunification of the Country was held in grand style at Panmunjom, attended by pro-reunification organizations and representatives of the Korean compatriots of different strata in the north, in the south and abroad. At the same time a similar rally was held in Seoul.

The Pan-National Rally adopted a resolution on strengthening solidarity and joint struggle for the independent and peaceful reunification of Korea and making proactive efforts to expand the coalition of pro-reunification patriotic forces. This amounted to a declaration of the formation of the united front of the whole nation for the country's reunification.

After the first Pan-National Rally, Kim Jong Il directed concern to setting up a permanent pan-national organization for united front.

In November 1990 three-party working-level talks of the representatives of the Korean compatriots in the north, in the south and abroad were held in Berlin, in which the Pan-National Alliance for Korea's Reunification (Pomminryon) was founded as an association embracing all the pro-reunification patriotic forces of the nation. On August 15, 1992 the Pan-National Alliance of Youth and Students for Korea's Reunification (Pomchonghangnyon) was formed at Panmunjom.

Kim Jong Il took measures to systematize the reunification movement in a well-regulated way by building up Pomminryon and Pomchonghangnyon and enhancing their role.

The north headquarters of Pomminryon perfected its organizational system at an early date and its overseas headquarters expanded its head offices in various regions embracing large numbers of compatriots in their organizations. The preparatory committee for the establishment of the south-side headquarters of Pomminryon made proactive efforts to fulfil its mission.

Pomminryon reached an agreement on its Programme and Rules, and made public their effectuation in December 1993.

Pomchonghangnyon, too, strived to establish a well-knit organizational system in the north, in the south and abroad.

As a result, these pan-national organizations were strengthened, and they played a positive role in holding pan-national rallies and other ceremonious events for reunification on an annual basis to live up to the great expectations of the whole nation.

All of this contributed to strengthening the tripartite solidarity and association of the north, south and overseas sides and enlivening the climate for national reconciliation and unity.

Kim Jong Il paid concern to making the inter-Korean high-level talks serve as a milestone in achieving national reconciliation and unity.

At the threshold of the 1990s the south Korean authorities could no longer turn a blind eye to the nation's unprecedentedly strong desire for reunification. They were compelled to come back to the negotiation table. High-level talks between the delegations from the north and the south headed by prime ministers of both sides began in September 1990 and at the fifth round of the talks, held in December 1991, the Agreement on Reconciliation, Nonaggression, Cooperation and Exchange between the North and the South was adopted, followed by the adoption of the Joint Declaration on the Denuclearization of the Korean Peninsula.

Kim Jong Il led the effort to bring about a turning point in the reunification movement under the banner of the **Ten-Point Programme for the Great Unity of the Whole Nation for the Reunification of the Country**.

As the 1990s began, the US imperialists and their south Korean puppets resorted to more vicious means to isolate and suffocate the DPRK. This precipitated a critical situation in the country. In the spring of 1993 there prevailed unprecedented political and military tension.

By reflecting the unanimous desire of all the Korean people for national reunification Kim Il Sung made public the *Ten-Point Programme for the Great Unity of the Whole Nation for the Reunification of the Country* at the Fifth Session of the Ninth Supreme People's Assembly held in April that year. The newspaper of the WPK and other mass media gave wide publicity to the contents of this programme and its validity, as well as the feedback from different strata of compatriots in and out of the country and the political and social circles of many other countries. They also reported the mass rallies held in support of the programme and the statements issued by various political parties and social organizations.

As a result, the Korean people at home and abroad turned all out to implement the programme.

From June to August the same year officials of Chongryon and other Korean compatriots in Japan conducted a 300 000-signature campaign in support of the programme and obtained signatures from more than 324 000 people. Korean students and other young people there held a 1 200-km-long march on a grand scale. Many members of Chongryon went deep among those

of the pro-Seoul Federation of Korean Residents in Japan, unaffiliated and naturalized compatriots and others who often travelled to south Korea, in order to bring home to them Kim Il Sung's and Kim Jong Il's lofty ideas of great national unity and love for the nation.

All the Korean compatriots in the north, in the south and abroad accepted the above programme as the sole guideline for national reunification, and heads of party and state and personages in various circles of many countries expressed whole-hearted support and solidarity.

Kim Jong Il led the effort to achieve national unity of all compatriots at home and abroad under the banner of the programme.

From October 12 to 23 in 1993 fine-arts festivals on the theme of Korea's reunification were held in Tokyo and Osaka, the first of their kind in the 48-year period after national division.

On the 16th the Korean artistes from the north, the south and abroad issued a joint statement in Tokyo calling for concerted efforts to reunify the country on the principle of independence, peaceful reunification and great national unity, and to achieve reconciliation and unity transcending differences in ideology, ideals and systems.

Support for the ten-point programme was also expressed in various festivals and international meetings held in Japan around this time, including the fourth Tokyo meeting of Christians on peaceful reunification of Korea and mission and the fourth international seminar on Asian peace and women's role.

Kim Jong Il made painstaking efforts to ensure the success of the inter-Korean summit meeting so as to set up a milestone in achieving national reunification under the banner of the above programme.

National enthusiasm for the country's reunification was running high in the mid-1990s. This favourable situation demanded that positive measures be taken.

From October 1993 working-level contacts for the exchange of special envoys of the north and south authorities were held. On June 28 the following year a vice-premier-level preliminary contact for the inter-Korean summit meeting was held at Panmunjom, at which an agreement on holding a summit in Pyongyang from July 25 to 27 was signed.

Kim Jong Il exerted all possible efforts to make good preparations for the upcoming summit, going over all the documents concerned.

Kim Il Sung, a few hours before his death, reviewed a summit-related document and wrote his last signature on it, reading **“Kim Il Sung, July 7, 1994.”** The day before he discussed with Kim Jong Il important matters for the summit.

The historic meeting could not be held because of Kim Il Sung's death, which was the greatest loss to the Korean nation in its history spanning 5 000 years. Although the inter-Korean summit meeting was not held in the 1990s as Kim Il Sung passed away too unexpectedly, his and Kim Jong Il's painstaking efforts and exploits for the country's reunification will shine forever with the monument bearing the former's last signature at Panmunjom.

8. RECONSTRUCTING THE SOCIALIST MOVEMENT UNDER THE BANNER OF THE PYONGYANG DECLARATION

Kim Jong Il led the effort to reconstruct the socialist movement, which was undergoing twists and turns, on a new basis and bring about an upsurge in implementing the cause of socialism.

Socialism collapsed and capitalism revived in the Soviet Union and other East European countries, owing to the anti-socialist schemes of the US and other imperialists and the treachery of the modern social democrats.

In this situation the attention of the world's revolutionary parties and peoples was focused on the DPRK which was invariably holding aloft the banner of socialism.

On January 3, 1992 Kim Jong Il published his work titled, *The Historical Lesson in Building Socialism and the General Line of Our Party*.

In this work he gave answers to the pressing problems facing the world socialist movement, such as the reasons for the frustration of socialism in some countries, the lesson drawn from it and the general line to be maintained by socialist parties.

The revolutionaries and other progressive people of the world called this work "life-giving water," "encyclopaedia of socialist construction," and "great programme for socialist construction." They also praised the author as "great ideologist and statesman" and "the bright sun shedding light on the path for mankind to follow."

Kim Jong Il ensured that the international seminar on the Juche idea to be held in celebration of the 80th birth anniversary of Kim Il Sung would serve as an important occasion in demonstrating the validity of the socialist cause of Juche and its invincibility.

He paid close concern to ensuring a high theoretical level of the seminar.

He told officials concerned that at the seminar matters of common concern to the peoples of the world should be discussed in a profound way by department on the basis of the fundamentals of the Juche idea. He underlined that the seminar should be organized in such a way as to help the attendees discard outdated view of socialism and give them a better understanding of the advantages of Korean-style socialism based on the Juche idea.

The seminar on the present era and the Juche idea held in Tokyo in April 1992 contributed to bringing home to the revolutionaries and other progressive people of the world the validity and truthfulness of the Juche idea and the invincibility of the Juche-oriented socialism of the Korean style.

Kim Jong Il ensured that representatives of many progressive political parties aspiring after socialism visited Pyongyang on the occasion of Kim Il Sung's 80th birthday.

On November 20, 1991 he set out the general direction for the invitation of delegations and specified those to be invited.

Especially, to give fresh impetus to the world socialist movement, he had invitations extended to the parties aspiring after anti-imperialist independence such as the progressive parties of the former socialist countries.

As a result, delegations of many progressive parties visited Pyongyang to attend the celebrations of Kim Il Sung's 80th birthday.

The DPRK held bilateral and multilateral contacts with them, giving wide publicity to the ideological and theoretical contents of Kim Jong Il's work *The Historical Lesson in Building Socialism and the General Line of Our Party* and arranging tours of various places where they could witness the reality of Korean-style socialism based on the Juche idea.

Many heads of party and representatives proposed adopting a joint statement reflecting the fundamentals of the above work.

As a result the Pyongyang Declaration titled, *Let Us Defend and Advance the Cause of Socialism* was adopted in Pyongyang on April 20, 1992.

The declaration made a correct analysis of the cause of the frustration of socialism in some countries and gave a scientific elucidation of the essential superiority of socialism over capitalism and the historical inevitability of the victory of socialism. Then it set out tasks facing political parties of the world in defending and advancing the cause of socialism: To build up their motive forces, to firmly maintain independence and revolutionary principles and keep up the banner of socialism at all times, and to strengthen unity and solidarity among all progressive parties in the struggle for socialism. It reaffirmed the

truthfulness and validity of socialism and the inevitability of its final victory. It demonstrated to the world that a powerful force faithful to the ideals of socialism still exists, and socialism lives on and is making progress. Thus it inspired the progressive people of the world with firm faith in the victory of the socialist cause.

Following the publication of the Pyongyang Declaration, revolutionary parties of the world signed it one after another, calling it a “new Communist Manifesto,” “historic document heralding a new start of the international communist movement” and “guideline showing the path for revolutionary parties.” At the time of the adoption of the declaration 70 political parties signed it. In April 2012 the number rose to 289.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that active support was given to revolutionary parties and peoples of the world in their struggle to reconstruct the socialist movement under the banner of the Pyongyang Declaration.

He said:

“Our Party will, as ever, unite firmly and cooperate actively with the revolutionary parties across the world for the victory of the cause of independence, the cause of socialism, of the masses of the people, and will discharge its noble mission and responsibility for the Korean revolution and the world revolution.”

On the day marking the 47th anniversary of the founding of the WPK, he made public his work titled, *On the Fundamentals of Revolutionary Party Building*. He also took measures to sincerely assist revolutionaries of various countries in their endeavour to rebuild revolutionary parties and restore socialism.

According to his long-term plan, delegations of the WPK were dispatched to many countries in 1991 and 1992.

Kim Jong Il made sure that heads of revolutionary parties of many countries visited the DPRK to meet Kim Il Sung.

At a time when the world socialist movement was undergoing twists and turns and the imperialists were getting frantic in their anti-socialist moves, the WPK resolutely thwarted the challenges by the enemy, defending the ideals of socialism and supporting the just cause of revolutionary parties.

Heads of revolutionary parties including the Communist and Workers’ parties in European capitalist countries visited the DPRK to have a true picture of Juche-oriented socialism and met Kim Il Sung.

Kim Jong Il met heads of many revolutionary parties that were struggling to reconstruct the socialist movement and gave them advice. He paid particular

concern to the work with the political parties that were struggling to restore socialism.

On several occasions following the collapse of socialism in Europe he told officials concerned that they should work effectively with and give sincere help to the political parties there. He often met the visiting heads of political parties and gave a pep talk to them.

In April 1992, when he was meeting a general secretary of a political party, he affirmed the WPK's full support for her party in its arduous struggle to restore socialism, and posed for a photo with her and arranged a dinner in her honour. After the meeting, the general secretary expressed her whole-hearted thanks for his valuable advice and said that he was really a great statesman, polite, unceremonious, affectionate and generous.

After meeting Kim Jong Il, the heads of revolutionary parties and revolutionaries were unanimous in their praises of him.

He told the officials in the foreign affairs sector that there was no other party than the WPK which could help and support the communist and workers' parties of the world, stressing that when their delegations visited the DPRK, they should give them warm hospitality, adopt a joint statement to promote the ties of friendship with them and give them active encouragement.

On important ceremonious events such as the July 1993 celebrations of the 40th anniversary of victory in the Fatherland Liberation War, he had the front row of the rostrum reserved for the heads of political parties that were struggling to reconstruct the socialist movement.

The delegations of leftist political parties of many countries including former socialist countries visited the DPRK and reaffirmed their commitment to the socialist cause.

As shown above, in the first half of the 1990s Kim Jong Il made tireless efforts to reconstruct the world socialist movement on the basis of the Juche idea and thus rendered a great, historic contribution to advancing the socialist cause.

**CHAPTER 7. REALIZING THE CAUSE
OF IMMORTALIZING THE LEADER,
ALL-OUT ADMINISTRATION OF SONGUN
POLITICS ON A HIGHER LEVEL,
AND LEADING THE ARDUOUS MARCH
AND FORCED MARCH TO VICTORY**
(July 1994-December 1998)

**1. REALIZING THE CAUSE OF IMMORTALIZING
THE LEADER**

The WPK and the Korean people suffered an unexpected great loss in the mid-1990s when they were waging a struggle to defend socialism and bring about an epochal turn in the movement for national reunification.

On July 8, 1994 President Kim Il Sung passed away, a leader who had embarked on the road of revolution in his early years, authored the immortal Juche idea and Songun idea illuminating the path for mankind to follow, and devoted himself unreservedly to their cause of independence.

His death caused by a sudden illness was the greatest sorrow and loss to the Korean people and other peoples of the world.

Kim Jong Il did not abandon himself to the bitter grief but worked heart and soul to realize the cause of immortalizing the leader.

He specified the principles in this regard on several occasions including in his talks *Let Us Uphold the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung as Eternal President of Our Republic* and *Let Us Hold the Great Leader in High Esteem Forever and Accomplish His Cause* given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on July 11 and 19, and on October 16, 1994, respectively and *Respecting the Forerunners of the Revolution Is a Noble Moral Obligation of Revolutionaries* published on December 25, 1995 on *Rodong Sinmun*, the organ of the WPK Central Committee. In these works he clarified that to realize the cause of immortalizing the leader was an important matter not

simply aimed at fulfilling the people's desire but at setting ennobling moral values for the world socialist movement.

He said:

“We speak a lot about the immortality of the great leader; that the leader is immortal means that his ideology and achievements last forever and he always lives in the hearts of our people.”

What is important in realizing the cause of immortalizing the leader is to keep him alive in the people's hearts, preserve him in his lifetime appearance and add glory to his ideology and achievements through generations.

Kim Jong Il worked energetically to realize the cause of immortalizing the President.

First of all, he ensured that memorial services in honour of him served as an occasion in implanting in the people's hearts the conviction that he will always be with them.

He had the ceremony of bidding last farewell to the President and other memorial services held with solemnity during the mourning period.

On the morning of July 8, a few hours after his death, he called an emergency meeting of the Political Bureau of the WPK Central Committee. He consoled the members of the bureau who were in deep grief over the sudden death of their leader, and adopted steps to hold memorial services with utmost loyalty.

In consideration of all the people's longing for the President, he had the mourning period extended to let more people visit his bier and express their condolences.

Accordingly, the mourning period, which was announced by the National Funeral Commission to last until the 17th of July, was extended up to the 20th and people were allowed to visit the bier of the President until the 18th, two more days than the originally set 16th.

During this period a total of 212 million people visited the bier and other mourning places.

Kim Jong Il ensured that memorial services were held solemnly at the DPRK's foreign missions. Overseas Korean compatriots, and heads of party and state and other people of different strata of foreign countries expressed their condolences on the death of Kim Il Sung.

On July 10, while directing the preparations for the last-farewell ceremony, he said that the portrait of the beaming President should be shown to the mourners and selected the photograph himself.

On several other occasions he gave advice on how to put the finishing touches on the portrait. On July 19, the day of the ceremony, a car carrying the portrait

ran in front of the hearse, and this portrait was put up at all mourning places and venues of public education in Pyongyang and other parts of the country.

On July 20, in Kim Jong Il's presence, the national memorial ceremony was held in Pyongyang. All the participants prayed in deep reverence for the immortality of Kim Il Sung who, to the last moment of his life, had worked with devotion for the prosperity of the nation, freedom and happiness of the people, reunification of the country and independence of the whole world.

On February 11, 1996 Kim Jong Il said that it should be made a tradition to mark July 8 as the greatest national day of mourning so that the coming generations, as well as those who had lived happily in the embrace of the President, would remember him as the founding father of socialist Korea.

In subsequent years, as the day comes round, the Korean people have kept it as a nationwide custom to look back with reverence for Kim Il Sung on his ennobling revolutionary career.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that slogans, towers, documentary films, and works of art and literature were created to instil in the people the conviction that Kim Il Sung will always be with them.

On July 16, 1994 he advanced the slogan **“The great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung will always be with us”** and had words in praise of him engraved at scenic spots and on natural rocks in Mts. Kumgang and Myohyang.

He also got towers to the immortality of the President built all over the country—industrial establishments, rural areas, military units, streets and villages. In early July 1996 he initiated the construction of a large tower at the entrance to Kumsong Street which had been frequented by Kim Il Sung, and gave detailed guidance over the whole course of the project.

Under his great concern many documentary films and works of art and literature on the theme of the immortality of Kim Il Sung were produced and used for educational purposes: documentary films *The Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung Will Be Immortal* (parts 1-7) and *1994 of the Great Career*, song *The Leader Will Always Be with Us*, epic *Our Eternal Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung* and full-length novel *Immortality*.

After Kim Il Sung's death petitions were made from members of the Political Bureau of the WPK Central Committee and many other people to elect Kim Jong Il president of the DPRK.

In his talks titled, *Let Us Uphold the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung as Eternal President of Our Republic* and *Let Us Hold the Great Leader in High Esteem Forever and Accomplish His Cause* given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on July 11 and 19, and on October 16, 1994,

respectively, Kim Jong Il underlined that Kim Il Sung should be held in high esteem as eternal President of the DPRK and founding father of socialist Korea.

He noted that the title *President* was imprinted in the minds of all the Korean people as being inseparably linked with the name of their leader and foreigners all over the world remembered him as President Kim Il Sung. He continued that Kim Il Sung should be kept in the minds of the Korean people and other progressive peoples of the world along with the honourable title and his high prestige. He stated that it was his steadfast determination to uphold Kim Il Sung as the eternal President of the DPRK, the one and only President in the history of the nation, as he had won the highest respect and admiration for his outstanding contributions to the prosperity of his country and people and mankind as a whole. He stressed that the present era would no longer see such a gifted leader as Kim Il Sung, adding that it should be stipulated by law that he would, in the future, too, be upheld as the sole President and nobody else could not hold the title.

Accordingly, the First Session of the Tenth Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK held on September 5, 1998 adopted the Socialist Constitution which stipulated that the great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung, the founder of the DPRK and the father of socialist Korea, will be upheld as the eternal President of the DPRK.

Kim Jong Il led the work of laying out the then Kumsusan Assembly Hall as the supreme sanctuary of Juche to preserve the President in his lifetime appearance.

On July 11, 1994 he told senior officials of the WPK Central Committee that the Kumsusan Assembly Hall, where the President had stayed long to lead the revolution and construction, should be renovated splendidly as befitting the house to preserve him in his lifetime appearance.

He entrusted the KPA with the renovation project and took necessary steps to supply all equipment and materials on a priority basis.

In the course of the project spanning one year he gave instructions on more than 400 occasions and visited the site almost everyday or two or three times a day to provide specific guidance over the laying out of the hall and the surrounding area—the erection of a marble statue of the President in the lobby, the staircase leading to the room where he would be preserved in his lifetime appearance, the illuminations and acoustic equipment inside the building and tram service in Kumsong Street for visitors' convenience.

On June 12, 1995, when the project was nearing completion, the WPK Central Committee, the WPK Central Military Commission, the DPRK National Defence

Commission, the then DPRK Central People's Committee and the then DPRK Administration Council adopted a decision titled, *On Permanently Keeping the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung in the Form of Eternal Life*.

On July 8, 1995, the first anniversary of the death of President Kim Il Sung, the renovated Kumsusan Assembly Hall (renamed Kumsusan Memorial Palace) was opened to public with due ceremony in Kim Jong Il's presence.

Under his direction further efforts were made to better lay out the palace and the surrounding area: improvements in the interior of the palace, a wide, granite-paved square, a new access corridor for visitors' convenience, stone railing and gate with a Korean flavour and suited to modern taste, a large arboretum and construction of September 9 Street connecting the palace to the Pyongyang Airport.

Kim Jong Il strived to carry forward Kim Il Sung's ideology and achievements through generations.

He attached special importance to establishing Kim Il Sung's ideology as the eternal guiding ideology of the revolution.

On July 18, 1994, a day before the ceremony of bidding last farewell to the deceased leader, he told senior officials of the WPK Central Committee that just as they had done before, they should uphold the President's ideology in its entirety and he would be immortal if his ideology was applied forever and thoroughly.

On July 22, 1994 he advanced the main slogan of the WPK **"Let us arm ourselves more firmly with the revolutionary ideas of the great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung!"** and adopted positive steps for its implementation.

He gave instructions on publishing continuing editions of Kim Il Sung's memoirs *With the Century*, and initiated the construction of an exhibition of the works on the Juche idea and specified a wide range of issues to this end.

He took measures to add lasting brilliance to Kim Il Sung's revolutionary career and achievements.

He saw to it that statues of Kim Il Sung were erected in historic places associated with his revolutionary activities, as well as monuments to his on-site guidance and to his on-site instructions, and some of the historic places were named after him. Statues of Kim Il Sung in the uniform of Generalissimo were erected in Kim Il Sung University of Politics and Kim Il Sung Military University and the above monuments were built in many establishments of the country.

In January 1996 the League of Socialist Working Youth of Korea was renamed Kim Il Sung Socialist Youth League and Pyongyang Taedongmun Primary School, Kim Song Ju Primary School (Kim Song Ju was Kim Il Sung's

name in childhood–Tr.), as the President had visited it several times.

To hand down the revolutionary achievements of Kim Il Sung who had been concerned about the national reunification to the last moment of his life, a monument inscribed with his last autograph ***Kim Il Sung July 7, 1994*** was erected in front of Thongil House at Panmunjom on the occasion of the first anniversary of his death. The Monument to the Party Founding was built to mark the 50th anniversary of the founding of the WPK. Letters in praise of Kim Il Sung were inscribed on natural rocks in Mt. Kungang: ***The Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung Will Always Be with Us*** on Popgi Peak and ***Korea, Demonstrate the Honour of Having Kim Il Sung, the Greatest Leader in the Nation's History Spanning 5 000 Years*** on Myongdang Rock on Ongnyo Peak.

On Kim Jong Il's initiative books on the theme of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary career were published in large numbers, such as the cycle of 21 volumes *The Immortal Revolutionary Achievements of the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung* which was written in a few years.

Kim Jong Il had the Juche era and the Day of the Sun instituted to add glory to the Kim Il Sung's career and exploits through generations.

On July 8, 1997 the WPK Central Committee, the WPK Central Military Commission, the DPRK National Defence Commission, the then DPRK Central People's Committee and the then DPRK Administration Council published a joint decision titled, *On Glorifying the Revolutionary Life and Immortal Exploits of the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung for All Eternity*.

The joint decision declared that the Juche era shall be instituted with 1912 as the first year, the year when Kim Il Sung was born as the sun of Juche, and that his birthday, April 15, the greatest national holiday, shall be designated as the Day of the Sun.

2. ESTABLISHING THE MODE OF SONGUN POLITICS AND ELECTED TO THE TOP POSITION OF THE WPK AND THE STATE

In the mid-1990s when the showdown with the United States reached an extreme Kim Jong Il strived for full establishment of the mode of Songun politics, based on the experience he had gained through his long Songun-based revolutionary leadership, Songun politics.

At that time establishing a scientific and revolutionary mode of politics was urgent in view of the internal and external situation of the Korean revolution which was more complex and critical than ever before.

In the wake of the collapse of socialism in the Soviet Union and other East European countries the imperialists were going frantic in their moves to stamp out socialist Korea. Worse still, President Kim Il Sung passed away, the greatest loss to the nation, and natural calamities hit the country for several years in a row.

With a keen insight into the grave situation of the Korean revolution Kim Jong Il went all out to establish the mode of Songun politics.

He put forward the KPA as the main force of the revolution and the buttress of the nation.

After meditating on the problem of political mode which is decisive of the future of the country and nation and the revolutionary cause of Juche, he concluded that the KPA should be the main force of the revolution and the buttress of the nation and that the cause pioneered by Kim Il Sung should be accomplished by relying on the army which had been trained for long years.

On July 13, 1994 he told commanding officers of the KPA that the army should be the main force in carrying forward the revolutionary cause pioneered and led by Kim Il Sung.

On January 1, 1995 he inspected the Dwarf-pine Company, a historic event signalling that he would administer Songun politics at full throttle.

On that windy day he stood long on an artillery position guiding the soldiers' training. He said there and then that as long as there was the strong army with boundless loyalty to the WPK, it was certain that the country could be reunified and the revolutionary cause of Juche accomplished with success.

Then he made the rounds of the education room, barracks and other places of the unit to learn about its ideological education, cultural life and supply services. He set forth ways for intensifying political and ideological education among the soldiers and improving their combat preparedness and living conditions, before posing for a photograph with them.

This inspection trip signified the declaration of his unshakeable faith and determination to consolidate the might of the KPA in the prevailing situation and accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche by relying on the army. This was the signal of all-out administration of Songun politics on a higher level.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the revolutionary spirit created by the soldiers of the KPA was applied throughout society.

He said:

“I defined the spirit displayed by the soldiers during the Arduous March, the one of defending their leader unto death and preparing themselves to be human bullets and bombs, as the revolutionary soldier spirit, and ensured that the whole Party and society learned from this spirit. I announced that my leadership was Songun-based leadership and my politics Songun politics after a climate of emulating the revolutionary soldier spirit was created throughout the Party and society and the might of the army was further strengthened.”

Subsequently, Kim Jong Il continued to inspect military units, including the Persimmon-tree Company and those in Mt. Osong and Chol Pass. In administering Songun politics he led the army to fulfil its mission as an invincible revolutionary army that defends the leadership of the revolution unto death and an artist of people’s happiness.

During his ceaseless inspection trips he used to go deep among the soldiers and take loving care of their living with firm trust in them. And he made sure that the units intensified Party and political work to train the soldiers in a revolutionary way.

Under his energetic guidance a new turn was brought about in the political and ideological traits and the fighting style of the army. The KPA was developed into a revolutionary army imbued with the spirit of defending the leadership of the revolution unto death and into the creator of the revolutionary soldier spirit which is representative of the Songun era.

The KPA produced many heroic combatants who did not hesitate to sacrifice their lives for the WPK and the leader, the country and the people. In particular, the soldiers who were seconded to build the Anbyon Youth Power Station devoted wisdom and energy to the tunnelling. Some even lost their lives but they soldiered on, shouting the slogan, “Let us not see the blue sky over the country before carrying out the Supreme Commander’s order!”

Kim Jong Il visited the construction site on June 10, 1996 and named the builders’ spirit the revolutionary soldier spirit.

The revolutionary soldier spirit is an ennobling spirit peculiar to the soldiers of the KPA, whose major characteristics are to defend their leader, their Supreme Commander, even at the cost of their lives, implement his instructions without fail and sacrifice themselves for him.

In order to generalize this spirit throughout the WPK and society, Kim Jong Il arranged study sessions, visits to the construction site, and urged the press, art and literature and other sectors to launch an information campaign to this end.

In his talk titled, *On Emulating the Revolutionary Soldier Spirit* given to

senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on March 17, 1997, he set out tasks and ways for all sectors and all units to be more efficient in this work, and took necessary measures.

He also established a state structure based on the principle of giving priority to military affairs.

Immediately after Kim Il Sung's demise he planned to restructure the state mechanism in such a way as to ensure continuity of leadership and meet the requirements of the idea of attaching importance to military affairs. Later, in his talks to officials, he specified the direction and ways to this end.

Accordingly, a new Constitution for setting up a state structure centred on the National Defence Commission was drafted.

On September 5, 1998 the First Session of the Tenth Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK deliberated and adopted a new Socialist Constitution, whereby the state's structural mechanism was turned into a political system that assures the realization of the idea of attaching importance to military affairs with the NDC as its backbone.

This measure provided a legal and institutional guarantee for Songun politics and the country's political system developed into a perfect mechanism that meets the requirements of this mode of politics.

It was a historic event that laid a firm legal basis for administering the original Songun politics all round.

On February 8, 1999 Kim Jong Il announced that Songun politics was the basic mode of his politics and an all-powerful sword with which to lead the revolution to victory.

He was elected to the top position of the WPK and the state by a unanimous desire of the WPK members, service personnel and all other people.

After Kim Il Sung's death the Korean people had an earnest desire to elect him as General Secretary of the WPK and head of state.

Letters conveying this wish were posted to the WPK Central Committee almost every day.

But Kim Jong Il declined their urging, saying that the bitter grief in which people had wailed before the President's bier did not subside and it was morally wrong for his men to elect a new leadership of the Party and the state and hold celebrations for it.

He endeavoured day and night to hold the President in high esteem and implement his instructions to the letter.

As days went by, the people's desire to have him at the helm of the WPK and the state grew stronger.

Reflecting this desire, the WPK organizations at all levels held political events for the acclamation of Kim Jong Il as General Secretary of the WPK in the run-up to the 52nd anniversary of its founding. They were a conference of the South Phyongan Provincial Committee of the WPK in Phyongsong in September 1997 and similar meetings in the KPA and provinces. These meetings discussed the agenda for the acclamation and adopted necessary decisions with the unanimous approval of the participants.

Finally, on October 8, 1997, the Central Committee and the Central Military Commission of the WPK released a special report announcing that Kim Jong Il was elected General Secretary of the WPK by the unanimous desire of all the WPK members.

Thus the Korean people's wish to have him at the top position of the WPK came true three years after Kim Il Sung's death.

The First Session of the Tenth Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK held on September 5, 1998 reelected Kim Jong Il to the chairmanship of the DPRK National Defence Commission in accordance with the unanimous will and desire of the Korean people.

The election of Kim Jong Il to the helm of the WPK and the state was a milestone which provided a decisive guarantee for accomplishing the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by Kim Il Sung.

3. STRENGTHENING THE KPA AND LAUNCHING THE MOVEMENT FOR WINNING THE TITLE OF O JUNG HUP-LED 7TH REGIMENT

In the light of the pressing requirements of the developing reality when Songun politics was fully administered on a higher level, Kim Jong Il directed attention to strengthening the KPA, the main force of the revolution and the buttress of the nation.

He said:

“We should further build up the People's Army as an army of our own style, an army of the Party. We should direct unremitting efforts to strengthening the army, to prepare all the soldiers as matchless combatants who are prepared to defend the Party and the leader at all costs.”

First of all, he channelled efforts into developing the KPA into an army strong in ideology and faith.

He defined the training of the service personnel into human bullets and bombs defending the leadership of the revolution unto death, as the ultimate objective and main direction of the Party and political work in the army.

He made sure that political and ideological work was intensified among the service personnel according to this objective. Political study sessions for the soldiers put the main emphasis on bringing home to them the greatness of Kim Il Sung and the WPK. And an information campaign was waged on important occasions, including the Day of the Sun and the anniversary of the KPA's founding, to explain the achievements Kim Il Sung and the WPK had made in carrying out the revolutionary cause of Juche and the Juche-based cause of army building.

Kim Jong Il also saw to it that every unit of the KPA compiled data about Kim Il Sung's and the WPK's activities related to it so as to intensify education of the service personnel.

On the anniversary of the KPA's founding in April 1996 he inspected a military unit in the western sector of the front. He stressed that intensifying education with the above data was very important in implanting the glorious history of the revolutionary activities of Kim Il Sung and the WPK and their imperishable leadership exploits in the minds of the service personnel. Then he set forth the direction and ways to this end, such as organizing visits to the room for preserving the revolutionary relics. In June the following year, while looking round a similar room of another unit, he told officials that they should be efficient in education of the soldiers so that they would hold Kim Il Sung in high esteem and remain faithful to the WPK's leadership forever.

He directed close concern to educating the service personnel to learn from the martyrs O Jung Hup, Ri Su Bok and Kil Yong Jo. Newspapers, radios and other mass media gave wide publicity to the martyrs' heroic deeds. Party and youth league organizations conducted this work effectively in close combination with their members' organizational and ideological life and with the work of educating them in their units' feats.

In those years the KPA produced many heroes who were exemplary in defending their leader death-defyingly.

Kim Jong Il had class education intensified among the service personnel.

In his talks on November 22, 1998 and on several other occasions he underlined the need to step up class education in the army units. During his visit to Panmunjom on the frontline he educated the soldiers to have a higher sense of class

consciousness. When seeing an artistic performance featuring the soldiers' high sense of class consciousness, he had their example generalized across the army.

He also got army units to conduct ideological education in various original forms and by various novel methods.

During his inspection of a company he saw desktop calendar-style materials which were used for education of the soldiers in the greatness of Kim Il Sung and the WPK. He had similar materials made and sent to all other companies of the army to be displayed in their education rooms.

He ensured that the army units conducted ideological education in keeping with the requirements of the times and in such a militant way as they would do on the battlefields and encouraged the soldiers to sing powerful songs like those sung by the State Merited Chorus, post appealing notices on the newsboard and make stirring speeches for motivational purposes.

Thanks to his energetic inspections trips and scrupulous care, ideological education in the KPA was oriented towards preparing all the service personnel to sacrifice their lives for the defence of their leader, and it was done in a novel and lively style.

In this way the KPA developed into a strong force whose soldiers were imbued with the spirit of defending their Supreme Commander unto death.

Next, Kim Jong Il showed close concern for raising the combat efficiency of the KPA.

He put particular stress on educating all the officers of the army to cultivate loyalty to the WPK and possess high commanding abilities.

He had a new workshop system set up for this purpose and took a series of measures to improve its quality. On several occasions he gave instructions on selection of the attendants, duration, lessons, schedule, form and methods. During his visits to military academies he pointed out the necessity of conducting education from the Juche-based standpoint and on the principle of ensuring efficiency.

He ensured that combat training was intensified to increase the combat efficiency of army units.

First, he gave priority to applying the principle of establishing Juche orientation in combat training.

When visiting army units, he saw the soldiers in training and said that it was important to adapt the manuals to the specific conditions of the country and conduct training in keeping with the requirements of Juche-based art of war.

Second, he had the principle of raising efficiency maintained in combat training.

On an inspection trip around the frontline he saw a firing drill by a coast artillery unit. He pointed out that the main emphasis in firing drills should be put on increasing the rate of hits.

Third, he pushed forward the work of modernizing the hardware of the KPA.

He ensured that all sectors and all units gave top priority to providing the supplies necessary for strengthening the KPA and developing defence industry. He often visited establishments in the sector of defence industry, encouraging the scientists, technicians and workers there. He had a mass technological innovation campaign launched to retrofit and improve the performance of the existing weapons and equipment.

He adopted important steps to tighten military discipline. On his instructions all army units had study sessions for military rules for several months from the beginning of 1996. On later occasions he set out policy of making the units stationed in Pyongyang exemplary in this respect and took effective measures for its implementation.

He showed scrupulous care for improving the conditions for the soldiers' material and cultural life.

Even during the Arduous March, when the country was undergoing economic difficulties, he took positive steps to supply basic foodstuffs to the service personnel on a regular basis. Whenever he visited army units, he would look round their bedrooms, mess halls and subsidiary food stores.

Seeing the soldiers during his inspection trips in winter, he would feel their overcoats and took measures for timely supply of better overcoats and shoes for the cold season. In order to provide a good diet to the soldiers he instructed the officers to run the Day for the Soldiers and do sideline farming in an effective way.

He made sure that the service personnel lived optimistically, leading a cultural life with a company, the basic combat group, as a unit. On his inspection trips he would see performances given by amateur art groups of the companies he was visiting, as well as their amusement parties, basketball and volleyball games. He also had musical instruments and other apparatuses for recreation and sports including accordions, colour TV sets, tape recorders and CD players, sent to all the companies and posts of the army.

As part of a measure to build up the KPA he ensured that the movement for winning the title of O Jung Hup-led 7th Regiment was waged vigorously.

On January 1, 1996 he advanced the slogan **“Let the whole army become today's O Jung Hup-led 7th Regiment and defend the leadership of the**

revolution unto death!” and initiated the launch of the Movement for Winning the Title of O Jung Hup-led 7th Regiment as a mass movement of a new type to this end.

This movement is aimed at making all service personnel defenders of the leadership of the Korean revolution by influencing them with the example set by the 7th Regiment of the Korean People’s Revolutionary Army during the anti-Japanese struggle.

Kim Jong Il defined this movement as the general orientation of military and political work in the army and ensured that its WPK committees regarded the movement as part of their concerns. He gave on-site guidance at several units to encourage the soldiers and make a success of the movement.

Upholding the slogan “Let us defend with our very lives the leadership of the revolution headed by the great Comrade Kim Jong Il!” the service personnel pushed ahead with the movement, with the result that new changes were brought about in their political and ideological traits and fighting spirit. According to the order of the WPK Central Military Commission on February 12, 1997, a KPA unit became the first to be conferred with the title of O Jung Hup-led 7th Regiment.

Under Kim Jong Il’s leadership the KPA could fulfil its mission and role as the main force of the revolution and the buttress of the nation.

4. FORTIFYING THE POLITICAL AND IDEOLOGICAL POSITION OF KOREAN-STYLE SOCIALISM

Kim Jong Il raised the consolidation of the political and ideological position of Korean-style socialism as the key to accomplishing the socialist cause of Juche.

He said:

“To maintain socialism and lead it to victory, we must intensify ideological work. Only when we have solidly armed the masses of the people with socialist ideology and strengthened the ideological bulwark of socialism can we consolidate and develop socialism and firmly defend it from any storm.”

The most serious lesson of the collapse of socialism in several countries is that the corruption of socialism begins with ideological corruption, and that a

breakdown on the ideological front results in the crumbling of all socialism's fronts and ends in the total ruin of socialism.

To build up the ideological bulwark of socialism through intensive ideological work presents itself as a more urgent requirement because the imperialists persist in ideological and cultural infiltration in a bid to disintegrate the socialist system of Korea from within.

Kim Jong Il put emphasis on fortifying the ideological bulwark of Korean-style socialism.

He made painstaking efforts to safeguard socialist ideology and theories and develop them in depth to meet modern-day requirements.

He authored and made public a number of works including *Socialism Is a Science, Giving Priority to Ideological Work Is Essential for Accomplishing Socialism* and *On Preserving the Juche Character and National Character of the Revolution and Construction*.

In these works he proved the scientific accuracy, veracity and viability of socialism, refuting the imperialists' and their stooges' reactionary sophistries that the defects in the socialist ideals and system led to the collapse of some socialist countries. And on the basis of the fundamentals of the Juche idea and the revolutionary outlook on the leader he gave answers to all theoretical and practical problems arising in consolidating the most advantageous Korean-style socialism centred on the masses of the people and accomplishing the socialist cause.

He also exerted great efforts to step up the work of studying and disseminating the Juche idea to maintain the purity of the ideology and theories of Juche-oriented socialism.

In a discourse titled, *The Juche Philosophy Is an Original Revolutionary Philosophy* published on July 26, 1996 in *Kulloja*, theoretical magazine of the WPK Central Committee and other works, he pointed out the deviations in the study and dissemination of the Juche idea and the reasons for them, and set forth tasks of adhering to the Juche-based stand and methodology in the study of social sciences and theoretical information work.

He gave strong impetus to educating the masses in socialist ideology.

He maintained that the working-class party must not only evolve a correct guiding ideology and theories for accomplishing socialism, but also inculcate them efficiently in the masses of the people.

He attached importance to adapting the contents of ideological education to the complex international situation and the advancing Korean revolution.

He paid primary concern to educating the WPK members and other working

people in the greatness of the leader and the WPK and loyalty to them and faith. Through efficient education work they became better aware of the greatness of their leader and the WPK, regarding it as an element of their revolutionary faith and moral obligation to support their leader invariably.

Kim Jong Il defined education in the Juche idea as the main link in the whole chain of the WPK's ideological work and made sure that education in the fundamentals of the idea was intensified among the WPK members and other working people to equip them with the Juche-based revolutionary outlook on the world and encourage them to live and work as demanded by the idea.

He also ensured that they were imbued with the unshakeable faith in the certainty of victory and the spirit of overcoming difficulties to cope with the complex situation.

On January 14, 1996 he told senior officials of the WPK Central Committee that education in the confidence in the certainty of victory should be stepped up, noting that living not merely for today but for tomorrow was his motto and that revolutionaries should regard it as an element of their faith. And on February 17 and March 5, 1997 and other occasions he stressed that officials and other WPK members should be educated to value revolutionary faith and conscience as they were the touchstone distinguishing revolutionaries from renegades.

He stepped up education in the revolutionary traditions.

He arranged a study tour to revolutionary battle sites and historic places for secondary school students from all around the country in January 1995 to mark the 70th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's 1 000-*ri* journey for national liberation, as well as similar tours for students and working people.

He took a series of measures to step up anti-imperialist, anti-US and class education.

On December 10, 1994 he said that class education should be intensified among the WPK members and other working people, young people in particular, to make them reject any illusions about class enemies. During his visit to the Sinchon Museum on November 22, 1998 he said that it should be used as an important base for heightening the anti-US spirit and hatred against class enemies. He had similar museums set up in Pyongyang and other towns, and rooms for class education in schools, industrial establishments and rural areas. He also had the US armed spy ship *Pueblo* moved to the bank of the Taedong River in Pyongyang to be used as a means of class education. (Now the ship is on display at the Victorious Fatherland Liberation War Museum-Tr.)

He put great efforts into educating the WPK members and other working people in socialist patriotism.

He adopted measures to inculcate in them socialist patriotism and the Korean-nation-first spirit: properly compiling data on the Korean history and giving wide publicity to it; discovering wholesome traditional customs and adapting them to the present reality; cultivating warm affection for their socialist homeland in the course of sprucing up their villages, workplaces and neighbourhoods.

He saw to it that ideological work was oriented towards educating people to break through the trials and difficulties they were facing at that time.

In December 1996 and on other occasions he emphasized that civilian officials, by following the example set by the KPA officers in information and motivational work, should mingle well with the masses and conduct effective political work sharing joys and sorrows with them and inspiring them to further efforts. And in May 1997 he said that itinerant artistic squads and other artistic groups across the country should make innovative changes in their activities in conformity with the demands of the developing reality to inspire the masses to increased production. This marked a milestone in developing the work of such artistic groups in the same way as was done in the army. He also made sure that the desktop calendar-style materials used for education of the service personnel were generalized to all civilian sectors and units, so that the WPK organizations there could conduct ideological work in a novel way.

He pushed ahead with the work of educating the masses in socialist ideology in close combination with the campaign against non-socialist practices.

He pointed out that as the imperialists were persisting in ideological and cultural infiltration, prompt measures should be adopted to block all channels they were using to spread their capitalist ideology and lifestyle and eliminate any undesirable elements within the country.

Kim Jong Il directed a great deal of effort to building up the WPK and strengthening the single-hearted unity of the revolutionary ranks.

He held that in order to defend and accomplish Kim Il Sung's revolutionary cause it was essential to build up the WPK and strengthen the single-hearted unity of the leader, the Party and the masses.

He channelled primary efforts into building up the WPK.

In his work titled, *The Workers' Party of Korea Is the Party of the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung* published on October 2, 1995, he set forth tasks to be tackled in developing the WPK into the glorious party of President

Kim Il Sung forever by adding brilliance to the achievements he had made in pioneering and leading the cause of building a Juche-oriented party: safeguarding and putting into effect his revolutionary ideology thoroughly; defending and cherishing the unity and solidarity of the WPK created by him; consolidating the blood-sealed ties between the WPK and the people and developing the single-hearted unity of the whole society.

He made every effort to ensure the unity of the WPK by establishing the monolithic ideological and leadership system more firmly in it.

He put stress on setting up revolutionary discipline whereby all the WPK members and other working people would move as one under the monolithic leadership of the WPK Central Committee, and establishing throughout the Party and society a revolutionary climate of accepting the Party's lines and policies unconditionally and implementing them to the letter.

In order to bring about fundamental improvements in the methods of Party work and the fighting spirit he arranged for national conferences of the WPK officials in January 1997 and in January 1998, and took positive steps to introduce the KPA's way of Party and political work throughout the WPK.

He made great efforts to ensure rock-solid unity of the revolutionary ranks.

On December 31, 1994 he told senior officials of the WPK Central Committee: The single-hearted unity of the revolutionary ranks is an important guarantee for making our country, our motherland, ever more prosperous; what is important in this respect is to ensure that the entire WPK, the whole KPA and all the people uphold their leader with loyalty.

He directed close concern to educating officials to support the WPK's leadership more faithfully. He led them to remain loyal to the WPK rain or shine by emulating the revolutionary spirit of the anti-Japanese war veterans who had followed the road of revolution with unshakeable loyalty to Kim Il Sung.

He often recollected Kim Hyok, Cha Kwang Su, Kim Chaek, Choe Hyon and other anti-Japanese fighters, stressing that all officials should learn from their absolute trust in the leader and their ennobling view of life. He made sure that they made positive efforts to follow the example of these faithful fighters in their work and life.

He also ensured that not only officials but also other WPK members and working people learned from the exemplary deeds of those who had supported their leader loyally in different periods of the Korean revolution, especially the heroes of the 1990s who were working hard at their jobs with pure conscience and loyalty to their leader.

He consolidated the harmonious whole with his men based on comradely affection and revolutionary obligation.

Even in the days when the whole country was writhing in bitter sorrow over Kim Il Sung's death, he showed warm concern for the health of the anti-Japanese revolutionary veterans so that they would follow the road of revolution invariably. He had a cemetery built in honour of patriotic martyrs, gave prominence to the officials who had been faithful to the WPK and the leader and took good care of the bereaved families of his revolutionary soldiers and heroes so that they would live a worthwhile life on the road of revolution.

He paid due concern to making socialist morality prevail across society.

In his talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on February 26, 1996 and on other occasions he underlined the importance of establishing socialist moral traits throughout society and set forth tasks to this end.

He corrected the officials' wrong view of regarding education in loyalty to the WPK and the leader as the whole of education in socialist morality. He said that it was important to define the contents of education in morality properly by taking into account etiquette, public ethics and all other moral qualities to be observed by revolutionaries, and then intensify education in socialist morality.

In particular, he took radical steps to rectify the shortcomings in the subject of Socialist Morality taught at schools and intensify education in socialist morality throughout society.

He ensured that wide publicity was given to the deeds of selfless devotion to society, comrades and the collective, and sound socialist morality prevailed across society.

He led officials to work with devotion for the people.

True to his intention, officials strived to mingle with the people, upholding the slogan "Let the whole Party go among the masses!" They tried hard to acquire a revolutionary work style of teaching and learning from the masses and arousing their creative zeal and ingenuity to implement the revolutionary tasks. And ideological education was intensified to make them possessed of modest and unassuming qualities and a simple and honest lifestyle.

With all officials training themselves as true servants of the people and the WPK's benevolent politics being administered to the letter, the single-hearted unity of the WPK and the revolutionary ranks was built up rock-solid.

Kim Jong Il consolidated the single-hearted unity of society by applying the idea of army-people unity. The army-people unity, which is the foundation of Korean society, means the unity of the army and the people in ideology and fighting spirit, based on the revolutionary soldier spirit.

In a talk given to commanding officers of the KPA on February 22, 1998 and another on March 29 the same year after seeing the April 25 Film Studio's light comedy *Letter* on the theme of army-people unity, he gave a new definition of the essence of the idea of army-people unity and its significance, and stressed that the army should play the leading role in consolidating the unity. He set the application of this idea as an important task facing the WPK organizations at different levels and had a vigorous mass movement launched for the purpose. He also ensured that more service personnel and people would see the above comedy to follow the example of the hero.

As a result, the climate of aiding service personnel with parental care prevailed throughout society, strengthening the blood-sealed ties between the army and people.

In this way, under Kim Jong Il's leadership, the political and ideological bulwark of Korean-style socialism was fortified on the basis of the single-hearted unity of society.

5. FRUSTRATING THE IMPERIALISTS' SCHEMES TO ISOLATE AND SUFFOCATE THE DPRK

Kim Jong Il led the struggle to frustrate the imperialists' schemes to isolate and suffocate the country and safeguard Korean-style socialism.

He said:

“I took hold of the army and have administered Songun politics true to the President's intention, thus frustrating the imperialist schemes to suffocate our Republic and safeguarding our socialist system and the destiny of our country and nation in the most trying period of the Arduous March and forced march.”

In the mid-1990s the US and other imperialist reactionaries went frantic in their moves to isolate and suffocate the DPRK.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the KPA dealt a merciless blow to the enemy's reckless armed provocations in the sky, on the land and in the sea.

On November 19, 1994 he told commanding officers of the KPA that the enemy was outwardly advocating peace and cooperation but there was no slight change in their nature. He stressed that the service personnel should sharpen their revolutionary vigilance and keep a watchful eye on the manoeuvrings of

the US imperialists, Japanese militarists and south Korean reactionaries. He added that ideological education should be intensified among the service personnel to defend socialism against their vicious schemes.

Afterwards, he sent senior officers of the Ministry of the People's Armed Forces various data on the military and political situation showing the enemy's war schemes behind the curtain of dialogue. At one time he telephoned the commanding officers on the frontline to learn about the situation, underlining the need to defend the sky, land and seas of the homeland with sharp revolutionary vigilance.

On December 17, 1994 a US helicopter was shot down at a single shot after flying into the airspace of the DPRK over the Military Demarcation Line on the eastern sector of the front.

That day Kim Jong Il said to senior officers of the KPA: This time the KPA demonstrated the mettle of Korea to the US aggressors; the incident illustrated that Korea's declaration that it will never pardon any enemy who violates its territory, airspace or waters is not empty talk; it was a severe punishment for the United States that is hell-bent on its manoeuvres to start a new war against Korea behind the curtain of the bilateral talks.

On December 28, 1994 a US presidential envoy visited Pyongyang to make an official apology for the plane's illegal act and signed a memorandum of understanding under which an assurance was given to prevent recurrence of such incident.

On September 13, 1995 Kim Jong Il inspected an army unit on Height 351. He told the soldiers there that during the Fatherland Liberation War the combatants had fought bravely to the last in hearty response to the order of their Supreme Commander Kim Il Sung. He continued that as the country had been defended at the cost of their blood, the aggressors should not be allowed to touch even a single tree or blade of grass of its sacred land and invade it by even a tiny fraction of a millimetre.

In the middle of July 1997 when the enemy opened fire on a KPA patrol without warning near the Military Demarcation Line in the central sector of the front, the soldiers launched an immediate counterattack. The enemy suffered heavy casualties and their provost guard post was virtually razed to the ground in a moment.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the KPA took actions against the military drills and war manoeuvres of the US imperialists.

In early 1996 the situation grew tense owing to the US imperialists and the south Korean authorities. At the start of the year the enemy brought in the

major nuclear submarine of the US Navy to conduct joint anti-submarine drills. In February they launched large-scale joint military exercises and from March 28, Hoguk-96 joint military exercises of the ground, navy and air forces. The US defence secretary stated in his Annual Defence Report that it was necessary to contain the threats against the vital interests of the United States and win victory in the fight. Taking up the refrain of their American master, the south Korean reactionaries clamoured that the “inter-Korean relations can be solved only by military means.” Worse still, they brought the situation to the brink of war by playing on the DPRK’s economic difficulties caused by natural calamities that hit the country.

To cope with the prevailing situation the first deputy minister of the People’s Armed Forces made public a talk on March 29, 1996, announcing that it was the temperament of the KPA to return fire with fire and stick with stick. He added that the KPA would take resolute self-defensive measures if the south Korean reactionaries dared to touch even an inch of land and a blade of grass in the north.

Frightened by the DPRK’s resolute response, the enemy gave up their scheme to ignite another war by taking advantage of its economic difficulties.

In 1998, however, the US imperialists started to strain the situation again, dubbing the DPRK’s launch of an artificial earth satellite as the blast-off of a ballistic missile and clamouring about “suspicions of underground nuclear facilities.” The enemy deliberately leaked in the publications of a third country details of the so-called OPLAN 5027, a plan for a second Korean war for “avenging” their defeat in the previous Korean war, and began to execute a plan to isolate the DPRK.

On November 22, 1998 Kim Jong Il explained to commanding officers of the KPA the enemy’s real intention of unveiling the war plan and told them that a statement should be released to disclose the aggressive nature of OPLAN 5027.

December 2, 1998 saw the announcement of a statement by the spokesman for the General Staff of the KPA: *Our Revolutionary Armed Forces Will Return the Challenge of the US Imperialist Aggressive Forces with a Merciless and Deadly Blow*. After giving a detailed account of the contents of OPLAN 5027 and its aggressive nature, the statement noted that the US imperialists were driving the situation to the brink of war throwing off the mask of “dialogue” and “negotiations,” and warned that the revolutionary forces of the DPRK would never tolerate such a reckless challenge from the US aggressive army but answer it with a merciless, annihilating blow. This bold response shook the

whole world, leaving the United States speechless with astonishment.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the diplomatic warfare with the United States after the adoption of the DPRK-USA Agreed Framework.

In this bilateral agreement the United States promised the provision of a LWR project with a total generating capacity of approximately 2 000 MW(e) by a target date in 2003, deliveries of heavy oil at a rate of 500 000 tons per annum, reduction of barriers to trade and investment, setting up of a liaison office and establishment of diplomatic relations, in exchange for the DPRK's freezing and dismantling of its graphite-moderated reactors (GMR) and related facilities, expression of willingness towards denuclearization and assurance of its return to membership of the NPT.

With the conclusion of this agreement the United States was obliged to respect the sovereignty of the DPRK, finding it hard to dodge its national and international obligations. However, it resorted to every means to evade its commitments.

Kim Jong Il instructed that on October 30, 1994 the Administration Council adopted a resolution on freezing nuclear facilities.

Accordingly, the DPRK Administration Council announced that it took immediate measures to discontinue the operation of 5MW trial reactor from early November the same year, allow the IAEA to monitor the process and suspend the construction of GMRs with a capacity of 200 MW(e).

The spokesman for the Foreign Ministry of the DPRK announced on November 1 that the DPRK adopted steps to freeze nuclear activities on its own initiative. Soon afterwards, the spokesman reaffirmed that it took similar measures for the freezing of all nuclear activities by going beyond its obligations under the agreed framework, and made it clear that the agreed framework became an international treaty beyond the scope of the DPRK and the United States because the IAEA had expressed its support for the agreement and taken relevant measures for its implementation. He also proposed expert-level negotiations on such issues as storage of fuel rods of the above-mentioned trial reactor.

Following the announcement of these proactive measures, the United States was compelled to meet its obligations under the agreed framework. The Clinton Administration ensured that 50 000 tons of heavy oil, one-third of 150 000 tons for the first year, was delivered by January 1995.

Kim Jong Il sagaciously led the diplomatic warfare to force the United States to meet its obligation for the provision of a LWR project, the core of the bilateral agreement.

What was essential in this regard was to make a clear definition of the United States' responsibility.

The United States, in collusion with south Korea and Japan, knocked together the Korean Energy Development Organization (KEDO) in March 1995 and inveigled these vassal states to be involved in the LWR project with a sinister aim of evading its own responsibility. The south Korean puppets made a proposal of the so-called south Korean-style LWRs, which was virtually non-existent, in a foolish bid to hold the reins of the above project, and sought to act as the "representative" in the supply of the reactors.

Subsequently, political talks between the DPRK and the United States were held in Malaysia from May 19 to June 12, 1995.

The talks reaffirmed that the United States shall assume full responsibility in the whole course of the LWR project according to the agreed framework and adopted a joint statement, which stipulated that the US-led KEDO shall supply only funds and equipment for construction of the LWR power station, the key partner of the DPRK is the United States and the former shall settle all issues with the latter only.

A Japanese newspaper commented that the Clinton Administration accepted the DPRK's demands without complaint and Pyongyang won victory without fighting a war. An American newspaper observed that the United States and south Korea seemingly had no option but to show patience in the face of pressures from such a small country as the DPRK.

On December 15, 1995, after the publication of the joint statement, the KEDO under the influence of the United States signed the agreement for the supply of LWRs, and in August 1997 the ground-breaking ceremony of the LWR project was held in the Kumho area, the DPRK. And the United States continued to bring shipments of heavy oil to the DPRK as it had agreed to supply alternative energy till the completion of the LWR project on a turnkey basis.

Kim Jong Il strived to force the United States to withdraw its unjustifiable policy of economic sanctions against the DPRK.

At the time of signing the above-mentioned agreed framework the United States promised the reduction of barriers to trade and investment, including lifting in three months' time of restrictions on communications service and financial settlement, and gradual normalization of political and economic relations between the two countries. However, it procrastinated on the excuse of LWR acquisition and did not take sincere measures to make good any of its pledges concerning relaxation of economic sanctions. It even opposed discussing about the lifting of economic sanctions, dubbing the DPRK's

launch of artificial satellite Kwangmyongsong 1 as a missile launch.

To cope with the acute situation the DPRK government adopted proactive steps at working-level contacts and negotiations to pressure the United States to lift its hostile sanctions.

On June 19, 2000 the United States was compelled to lift some of its economic sanctions against the DPRK as it had been deferring the move after its September 17, 1998 announcement. Over the past half a century it had applied economic sanctions against the DPRK, calling it an “enemy state,” and now it gave permission to investment in such economic sectors as trade in general commodities, agriculture and mining, use of commercial vessels and airplanes, and part of financial transactions.

6. PROVIDING A SPRINGBOARD FOR THE BUILDING OF A THRIVING NATION BY PLACING THE KPA AT THE FOREFRONT

After the death of Kim Il Sung the Korean people were faced with numerous challenges in their socialist construction work.

Clamouring about “absence of national leader,” the United States and other imperialist countries were making futile attempts to find out any signs of “change” in the DPRK and putting political, diplomatic, military and economic pressure to bear upon it.

Worse still, with the collapse of some socialist countries and the subsequent vanishing of the world socialist market, the DPRK had to import commodities of strategic importance and some of raw and other materials and equipment needed for its socialist construction from the capitalist market. Given economic blockade of the country, it was not so easy. The natural calamities that hit the country for several consecutive years laid more obstacles in the way of its people’s struggle for socialist economic construction.

Owing to the worsening difficulties in economic construction and people’s living the country was compelled to set out on the Arduous March and forced march in the mid-1990s, over half a century after its national liberation.

In this trying period Kim Jong Il made energetic efforts to provide a springboard for the building of a thriving country by placing the KPA at the forefront.

He roused the whole Party, the entire army and all the people to the struggle against economic adversity at hand.

He had organizational and political work done effectively to inspire all the service personnel and people.

Ringling out 1994, the year of the bitterest grief in the nation's history, and ringing in the New Year 1995, he sent a letter addressed to all the people, which reads: Let all of us work energetically, single-heartedly and with one purpose to make our country, our motherland, ever more prosperous as befits the soldiers and devoted followers of the great leader. Reading his letter, they all hardened their resolve to support Kim Jong Il with a single mind.

He placed emphasis on educating all the people to live and work in the spirit of the Arduous March.

He said:

“To meet the demands of the prevailing situation and present developments, the Party has presented the slogan that cadres, Party members and other working people should live and work in the spirit of the Arduous March.”

The spirit of the Arduous March is a staunch, undaunted revolutionary spirit which saved the Korean revolution and brought about a great upsurge in it during the severest period of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle fought under the command of General Kim Il Sung.

In his talks titled, *Let Us Live Not Merely for Today But for Tomorrow* and *Officials Must Live and Work in the Spirit of the Arduous March* given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 14 and October 14, 1996 respectively, and on several other occasions Kim Jong Il emphasized the need to encourage all officials and other working people to display this spirit.

He noted that they should not merely put up with the difficulties but break through them and advance forcefully, adding that the harder the times were, the harder they should work and the more effort they should make to carry out the impossible, as required by this slogan put forward by the WPK.

He got Party work done more effectively in keeping with the requirements of the period of the Arduous March so as to inspire the masses to a new revolutionary upsurge.

In his talks on December 7, 1996 and January 1, 1997 and on several other occasions he said that the WPK officials should go among the masses and inspire them to a revolutionary upsurge by conducting vigorous political work in the same way as was done on the battleground. And in his letter titled, *Let Us Make This Year a Year of a Revolutionary Turn in Socialist Economic Construction* sent to those attending the National Conference of Party Workers

in January 1997, he stressed that true to the WPK's ideas and policies all the WPK organizations and officials should conduct Party work in a revolutionary and militant way and thus bring about a turn in solving the problems arising in economic construction and people's living.

In those difficult years many industrial establishments enlisted all possible internal reserves to overfulfil their quotas of the national economic plan.

Kim Jong Il roused the service personnel and people to a revolutionary upsurge through his super-intense on-site guidance trips.

Even in the coldest and hottest seasons he inspected army units on the frontline and visited civilian establishments, taking a nap and eating rice balls. He worked day and night to increase the combat efficiency of army units and fortify the defence lines of the country, thus imbuing all the people with confidence in victory.

To reenergize production across the national economy, he inspected urban and rural areas, industrial establishments and construction sites of power stations and land realignment projects.

Greatly encouraged by his ceaseless guidance trips, the service personnel and people turned out as one in the struggle to emerge victorious in the Arduous March overcoming the manifold difficulties and trials with indomitable willpower.

Kim Jong Il led the KPA to play a vanguard role in tiding over economic difficulties.

He entrusted army units with all the major construction projects for the implementation of Kim Il Sung's instructions and led them to finish their tasks on schedule.

On November 9, 1994 Kim Jong Il issued Order of Supreme Commander of the KPA No. 0051 ***On Building Chongnyu Bridge (second stage) and Kumnung Tunnel No. 2 in Pyongyang***, entrusting army units to complete the projects to mark the 50th anniversary of the founding of the WPK. In addition, army units took charge of other important projects including the Anbyon Youth Power Station, the tourist road between Pyongyang and Hyangsan and the holiday resort in Mt. Kuwol.

Kim Jong Il defined agriculture, power industry, coal-mining industry and rail transport as the priority sectors in shoring up the country's economy as a whole.

On March 18, 1997 he took measures to send army units to rural areas so that they would play a positive role in assisting the farmers. The following year he made sure that the service personnel rendered a great contribution to solving the problem of food.

He also encouraged army units to build a number of small- and medium-sized power stations and, in October 1997, had numerous discharged soldiers posted to the Pukchang Thermal Power Complex and the sectors of coal-mining industry and rail transport.

He seconded some other army units to important construction projects.

Upholding the slogan “Let us take charge of both national defence and socialist construction,” the service personnel played a pivotal role in pushing forward the important projects of Kim Jong Il’s concern while fortifying the defence lines of their socialist country. At construction sites they conducted proactive political work and set personal examples for civilian officials and working people to follow, demonstrating their revolutionary soldier spirit.

In those years many industrial establishments were restored and the country’s economy began to be put back on normal track.

Kim Jong Il made sure that all sectors of the national economy boosted production by displaying the Kanggye spirit, an embodiment of the revolutionary soldier spirit.

He decided to make Jagang Province a model unit for bringing the Arduous March and forced march to a successful end because it had been undergoing the severest hardships owing to its unfavourable natural and climatic conditions and inefficient management of economic affairs. From the beginning of the Arduous March he paid special concern to the province as he was determined to make it an exemplary province in revitalizing the economy and stabilizing people’s living on the strength of self-reliance.

In September 1996, after learning in detail about the economic situation of the province and its residents’ living conditions, he told a senior official of the province about his determination and encouraged him to launch a bold campaign.

The following year he acquainted himself on several occasions with the construction of small- and medium-sized power stations in the province, and adopted necessary steps to accelerate the power projects on a large scale.

All the officials and working people in the province turned out as one to prove themselves worthy of their leader’s great trust in them. Holding aloft the slogan “Let us go the thorny path cheerfully!” they built or renovated scores of small- and medium-sized power stations of various types by their own effort and thus created a huge generating capacity in a little more than half a year by displaying the spirit of the Arduous March and the revolutionary soldier spirit. Local industry factories, household lighting and electric heating were all powered by local sources and the province became a new model in construction

and operation of small- and medium-sized power stations. And the residents launched an all-out campaign to spruce up the industrial establishments, streets, villages and houses.

In January 1998 Kim Jong Il visited the province to learn about the local situation and stayed for several days giving guidance over several sectors.

He named the revolutionary spirit which the people in Jagang Province displayed in their struggle to emulate the revolutionary soldier spirit, **Kanggye spirit** and ensured that the whole country learned from that spirit.

The Kanggye spirit is the spirit of defending socialism which the working class and other people in Jagang Province created when the WPK and the country were undergoing worst trials, and it is the spirit which kindled the flames of a new Chollima upsurge.

The Kanggye spirit is based on the firm conviction that the nation will surely emerge victorious as it is led by Kim Jong Il. Also it is the spirit of implementing his intentions and plans even at the cost of one's own life, the spirit of creating something out of nothing by relying solely on one's own effort and the spirit of revolutionary optimism.

Kim Jong Il exerted efforts to spread this spirit across the country.

In June and October 1998 he visited Jagang Province again and encouraged the creators of the Kanggye spirit to keep taking the lead in the struggle to build a thriving country. Then he arranged for officials in other parts of the country, including officials of national institutions, senior officials of provincial, city and county Party committees and Party secretaries of factories, to visit the factories in the province and learn from their examples.

He made sure that newspapers, radio and other media gave wide publicity to the Jagang people's revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, working style and achievements.

He also had national meetings, such as the National Meeting of Officials Exemplary in Displaying the Spirit of Self-Reliance, held for similar purposes.

Especially on March 9, 1998 he said that the workers at the Songjin Steel Complex should light the torch of Songgang, the torch of a new upswing.

The employees of the complex held a meeting and appealed to all other working people across the country to bring about a new revolutionary upsurge in socialist economic construction holding aloft the torch of Songgang in the Songun era and in the spirit of Chollima.

The whole country responded positively to this appeal.

Amid the flames of the torch of Songgang based on the Kanggye spirit, the embodiment of the revolutionary soldier spirit, eye-opening changes were made

in all parts of the country. Solid foundations were laid for reenergizing metal, machine-building and other key industrial sectors of the national economy. Potato farming was boosted in Taehongdan County, Ryanggang Province, and good experiences of double and triple cropping were created in Yonan County, South Hwanghae Province and Janggang County, Jagang Province. Ambitious projects for land realignment and comprehensive mechanization of the rural economy started in Kangwon Province, and goat, poultry and fish farms were built in all parts of the country. Following the publication of Kim Jong Il's work titled, *On Bringing About a Fresh Change in Land Management*, a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on August 11, 1996, the service personnel and people across the country turned all out to change the appearance of the land.

As shown above, the Korean people did not succumb to the economic difficulties during the Arduous March but waged an unyielding struggle with confidence in victory and indomitable willpower to provide a solid springboard for the building of a thriving country under Kim Jong Il's leadership.

7. BRINGING ABOUT A RADICAL TURN IN THE CONSTRUCTION OF SOCIALIST CULTURE

Kim Jong Il wisely led the effort to bring about a radical turn in the construction of socialist culture during the Arduous March and forced march when the country was undergoing severe difficulties.

He gave priority to developing science and technology of the country.

He said:

“In order to make our country, our motherland, ever more prosperous, we should rapidly develop science and technology.”

He ensured that a climate of attaching importance to science prevailed across society.

He pointed out that officials, before anybody else, should have a proper attitude towards science and technology and deal with all relevant affairs in a responsible manner, regarding it as one of their major concern to develop them. He also stressed that they should pay close concern to the living of scientists and technicians and their work as they were directly responsible for development of science and technology. And he made sure that ideological

education was intensified among scientists and technicians to train them as intellectuals strong in Juche principle and Juche orientation was established in their scientific research.

He took a series of steps to provide ample conditions for their scientific research: revamping scientific research bases in line with modern trend; building a scientists' district in such a way as to be immaculate even by the standards of the next century and accelerating the project with the backing of the state; increasing state investment in the sector of scientific research on the principle of giving definite priority to science and technology over economic development; ensuring timely supply of major requisites for experiments such as equipment, materials and reagents. He also adopted measures to make scientists and technicians devote themselves to their research and establish a climate of giving prominence to them and according them preferential treatment.

He made energetic efforts to develop the country's science and technology rapidly.

During his visit to the State Academy of Sciences in April 1995 he gave instructions on improving scientific research and raising the country's science and technology onto world standard.

In September 1995 he had well-regulated systems set up for administrative guidance over scientific research institutions across the country and for the deliberation and introduction of research results. He ensured that the ranks of scientists and technicians were built with the main emphasis on their academic abilities and on the principle of combining old, middle-aged and young people. He took various steps to improve information services and scientific and technological exchanges with foreign countries.

In April 1997 he set forth a task of drawing up a five-year plan for scientific and technological development (1998-2002) and defined the key objectives of the plan: solving scientific and technological problems arising in implementation of the WPK's revolutionary economic strategy in order to put production on normal track and improve people's standard of living; putting stress on developing electronics engineering, bioengineering and a few other leading-edge fields to raise them onto world standard.

He directed particular concern to rapidly developing computer technology and other major scientific fields.

He specified the direction and ways for developing software technology and took steps to provide scientific research institutions with a varied assortment of latest computers. He ensured that research institutes, educational institutions

and economic sectors laid stress on software development. For this purpose he arranged national program contests and exhibitions on a number of occasions. He advanced the task of setting up a countrywide computer network for search of scientific and technological information and led the effort for its implementation. As a result, the computer network was completed to mark his birthday in February 1997.

Kim Jong Il set the specific direction and ways of the scientific research for raising electronics engineering and industry onto a new higher level and developing cytogenetics, heat engineering and other branches of science.

He also showed close concern for the scientific research to develop the key sectors of the national economy, including power, mining, metal, machine-building, chemical, construction and building-materials industries and rail transport, to improve people's standard of living by modernizing light industry and developing fishery, to make advances in geology and geography, and to develop information technology related with artificial earth satellite.

As a result, in the period of the Arduous March and forced march Korean scientists and technicians made great strides in raising their country's science and technology onto world standard. Especially on August 31, 1998 they successfully launched the country's first artificial earth satellite Kwangmyongsong 1.

Kim Jong Il put great efforts into raising the qualitative level of education.

He said that it was an urgent requirement of the Korean revolution to produce large numbers of revolutionary intellectuals faithful to the socialist cause by improving education and edification at universities and colleges.

In his letter titled, *On Intensifying University Education as a Requisite for the Development of the Revolution* addressed to the teaching staff and students of Kim Il Sung University on the 50th anniversary of its establishment on October 1, 1996, in his instructions during his visit to the university on December 7 the same year and on several other occasions, he set forth the ways for bringing about a radical improvement in educational work in keeping with the requirements of the present reality.

He accelerated the effort to bring about a fresh turn in development of Juche-oriented education.

He improved the country's education system to produce larger numbers of competent personnel who could play an important part in socialist construction.

On the basis of the experiences gained in the 1980s in the course of operating Pyongyang Secondary School No. 1 in the capital city and similar

schools in provincial seats, he took a measure in July 1995 to increase the number of such schools in the sector of general education.

From September 1, 1995 similar schools were opened in Pyongyang, Sunchon and other towns in provinces as bases for educating gifted children.

Kim Jong Il underlined the need to eliminate the tendency of leaning on the quantitative increase in training scientists, technicians and specialists and readjust the higher education system in such a way as to produce talented people who could render a substantial contribution to socialist construction.

According to his instructions on March 18, 1997 and September 19, 1998 some colleges were converted into specialized schools or merged with universities, and such major educational institutions as Kim Il Sung University and Kim Chaek University of Technology were built up. And a well-knit system of educating gifted students for special fields was established.

Kim Jong Il also saw to it that educational contents were improved in such a way as to produce more competent people.

He attached foremost importance to political and ideological education.

Noting that the main focus of political and ideological education was education in the Juche idea, he ensured that stress was put on education in the glorious history of revolutionary activities of the three commanders of Mt. Paektu and study of Kim Il Sung's works and that the contents of Juche-oriented Philosophy and Juche-oriented Political Economy were updated to conform with the WPK's ideas and intentions.

In order to raise the level of education in basic sciences and special subjects, he made sure that the general secondary education sector intensified education in basic sciences such as mathematics, physics, biology, chemistry and computer technology.

He pointed out that institutions of higher education should steadily improve scientific and technological education on the principle of producing talented people who could render a contribution to developing the country's science and technology rapidly in conformity with its actual conditions and the requirements of the developing revolution.

Subsequently, all universities and specialized schools put the main emphasis on teaching their students what were urgently needed for pushing forward the revolution and construction. And they promptly obtained latest scientific achievements and advanced technological developments to inform their students of them, and intensified computer education.

Kim Jong Il put particular stress on applying advantageous teaching methods of the Korean style in a comprehensive way.

Heuristic methods of teaching, extensive use of visual aids, discussions, exercises, experiments and internships helped students acquire working knowledge. Universities in particular taught their students principles and developed their thinking abilities to help them learn truth independently and proactively, while paying due concern to practical training and internship. Teachers' contests, experience-swapping meetings and teaching aids exhibitions were arranged to generalize advanced teaching methods.

Kim Jong Il took measures to enhance the teachers' role and establish a revolutionary habit of studying among students.

To improve their responsibility and role as direct undertakers of educational work, teachers endeavoured to enrich their scientific and theoretical knowledge. The ranks of teachers were built on the principle of combining old, middle-aged and young people, and refresher and reserve training was done efficiently to better the qualitative composition of teachers' ranks.

Kim Jong Il made sure that students upheld the learning-first slogan and they were assessed mainly by their academic performance. In a congratulatory message he sent in February 1997 to those attending the National Meeting of July 15 Top Honour Prize-Winning Secondary School Students he stressed that studying was the major revolutionary task of students and all of them should study hard with an ambition of becoming world-renowned scientists, artistes and inventors in their twenties or thirties.

He also pushed ahead with the work of bringing about innovations in all other sectors of socialist culture.

His major concern was the development of Juche-oriented art and literature.

In his talk titled, *Let Us Produce a Greater Number of Masterpieces of Art and Literature* given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee and in the sector of art and literature on April 26, 1996, he set out principles to be maintained in creating and disseminating masterpieces of the Songun era, stressing that the masterpieces which the WPK needed at present were works reflecting the spirit of the red flag that bore the lifetime will of Kim Il Sung, the spirit of the Arduous March and the WPK's revolutionary outlook on life that one should live not merely for today but for tomorrow.

He ensured that the KPA, the pillar and main force of the revolution, played a leading role in creating and disseminating revolutionary art and literature of the Songun era.

He built up the State Merited Chorus as an independent art troupe which was perfect in ideological and artistic terms. He took it with him on his on-site guidance trips to the frontline units and other places, developing it into a unit of

revolutionary artistes who were supporting the WPK's Songun-based politics in the van. He also led the then KPA April 25 Film Studio to play an important role in creating revolutionary art and literature in the Songun era by producing many excellent films on military themes and light comedies worthy of national treasure. When visiting army units, he would see artistic performances given by their art troupes and company soldiers and encourage them to take the lead in the creation of new culture in the Songun era. Under his specific guidance an artistic contest of KPA officers' wives was held for the first time and it became an annual event.

He led the workers in the sector of art and literature to learn from the revolutionary soldier spirit and create many works representative of the era.

Under his close concern were produced the multi-part feature film *The Nation and Destiny (Workers)* and others on the theme of socialist reality.

He also selected the seeds of several literary works and gave specific guidance in the whole course of their creation—the full-length novel *Immortality* in the cycle *Immortal History*, the full-length novel *The Rushing Current of History* in the cycle *Immortal Guidance*, the epic *Our Eternal Leader Kim Il Sung* and the poem *The Great Leader Is Always with Us*.

He led music, dance, fine art, performing arts and other sectors to bring about an upsurge in creative work and took steps to put artistic and literary activities on a mass basis.

His next concern was the development of the country's physical culture and sports.

Mass rhythmic exercise and health-promoting Taekwon-Do were created to suit people's characteristics by age group and popularized across society to promote public health. All sectors and all units made it part of their routine to do mass sports activities such as morning jogging and exercises during a break, and on national holidays or off-days they often arranged for sports competitions. Basketball in particular became a favourite game as it was good for human health.

Kim Jong Il directed great concern to developing professional sports skills.

He ensured that athletes adhered to the WPK's policy of competing with a high degree of ideological awareness, a strong fighting spirit, speed and skill, sports science was developed, stress was put on the events in which Korean players were most likely to win at international competitions, and promising children were trained in a far-sighted way.

He also made sure that cultured practices were established at workplaces and residential areas.

During his ceaseless inspection trips to army units he pointed out that the service personnel should lead civilian units in this respect, too.

As a result of innovative successes being brought about in all aspects of socialist culture during the Arduous March and forced march, the DPRK laid solid foundations for developing into a cultured country.

8. TO ACHIEVE NATIONAL REUNIFICATION UNDER THE BANNER OF THE THREE CHARTERS FOR THE COUNTRY'S REUNIFICATION AND DEVELOP THE OVERSEAS COMPATRIOTS' MOVEMENT ONTO A NEW, HIGHER LEVEL

Reunification of Korea was Kim Il Sung's greatest concern to the last moment of his life.

Regarding it as his noble mission to implement Kim Il Sung's instructions concerning reunification of the country, Kim Jong Il led the struggle to this end under the banner of the three charters for the country's reunification.

He defined the three charters for the country's reunification and set out principles and ways for their implementation.

In the instructions he gave looking round the monument inscribed with Kim Il Sung's signature at Panmunjom on November 24, 1996 and his work titled, *Let Us Carry Out the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung's Instructions for National Reunification* published on August 4, 1997, he defined the three principles of national reunification, the ten-point programme of the great unity of the whole nation and the plan of establishing the DFRK as the three charters of national reunification.

He said:

“The three principles of national reunification, the ten-point programme of the great unity of the whole nation and the plan of establishing the DFRK constitute the three charters of national reunification by which Comrade Kim Il Sung elaborated the basic principles and methods of national reunification into an integral system on the basis of his great Juche idea and his valuable experience of the struggle to reunify the country.”

In this work he reaffirmed the principled position of the WPK in achieving national reunification on the basis of the three charters.

He underlined that the country must be reunified, to all intents and purposes, on the principle of national independence, in a peaceful way without recourse to the armed forces and by a federal mode.

He set out the ways for improving inter-Korean relations and bringing about an epochal turn in the reunification movement on the basis of the three charters.

He pointed out that the south Korean authorities, before anything else, should desist from depending on foreign forces and cooperating with them, oppose and reject them by uniting efforts with their fellow countrymen from the stand of national independence. He stressed the need to remove political and military tension between the north and the south and democratize the socio-political life in south Korea.

He directed the struggle to achieve national reunification on the strength of great national unity under the banner of the three charters.

He set out the five-point policy for great national unity in *Let Us Reunify the Country Independently and Peacefully through the Great Unity of the Entire Nation*, a letter which he sent on April 18, 1998 to the National Symposium to Mark the 50th Anniversary of the Historic Joint Conference of Representatives of Political Parties and Public Organizations in North and South Korea.

He clarified that great national unity must be based thoroughly on the principle of national independence and the entire nation must achieve unity under the banner of patriotism, the banner of national reunification. He also explained that for the great unity of the nation, it was important to improve the relations between the north and the south, reject domination and interference by the foreign forces, and fight against the traitors to the nation, the anti-reunification forces, who are in collusion with the foreign forces. He added that all the Koreans in the north, south and abroad must visit one another, hold contacts, promote dialogue and strengthen solidarity.

He pushed ahead with the struggle to achieve great national unity.

First of all, he ensured that the people in the north and the south consolidated their national unity through visits, contacts, cooperation and exchanges.

Subsequently, many people of different strata in south Korea visited Pyongyang, among them being the wife of Rev. Mun Ik Hwan, a patriotic, pro-reunification figure, in July 1995, the honorary chairman of the Hyundai Business Group and his party in June and October 1998, and a group of instrumentalists from Seoul to take part in the Yun I Sang Concert for Reunification in November the same year.

The Pyongyang visits by the south Korean people served as an important occasion in bringing home to all the compatriots in the north and the south the fact that the Korean nation is one and great national unity is the fundamental way of reunifying the country.

Kim Jong Il met people of various strata from south Korea during their visits to Pyongyang, heightening the nation's zeal for reunification.

As he was talking with Pak Yong Gil, widow of Rev. Mun, who visited Pyongyang on the occasion of the first anniversary of the death of Kim Il Sung, he said that he was grateful to her for having come such a long way at her advanced age and reaffirmed his determination to devote himself to accelerating the cause of the country's reunification, true to Kim Il Sung's will. And on October 30, 1998 he met Jong Ju Yong, honorary chairman of the Hyundai Business Group, and his party and posed for a photograph with them.

These meetings brought the south Korean people of different strata to the realization that the WPK's idea and policy on great national unity is not empty talk and it is the consistent line of the WPK and the DPRK government to join hands in the reunification movement with anybody who has even an iota of love for the country and nation.

Kim Jong Il showed close concern for promoting inter-Korean visits, cooperation and exchanges at non-governmental level.

He adopted steps to give impetus to reconciliation, cooperation and exchanges with many civil organizations and companies in south Korea.

Despite severe suppression and crackdown by the south Korean authorities civil and non-governmental organizations and personages used open and secret channels to have a sincere discussion with relevant officials in the north over creating an atmosphere favourable for national reconciliation and unity. Soon it was followed by some visits and exchanges. Particularly, the representatives of the south Korean Federation of University Student Councils under the South Headquarters of Pomchonghangnyon (Pan-National Alliance of Youth and Students for Korea's Reunification) took part in the reunification festivals, which Pomchonghangnyon hosted almost annually in Pyongyang. This demonstrated the south Korean students' yearning for national reunification.

All these events helped towards encouraging broad sections of south Korean people in their struggle to have the fascist "National Security Law" of south Korea repealed and enlivening the atmosphere for national reconciliation and unity.

Kim Jong Il paid concern to forming a tripartite alliance among the Korean people in the north, the south and abroad.

A joint meeting of political parties and social organizations in the north held in January 1995 adopted an appeal to the political parties, social organizations and compatriots of different strata in south Korea and abroad, proposing the convocation of a grand festival for national reunification to mark the 50th anniversary of Korea's liberation. Later, from August 13 to 15 that year, the festival was held on a large scale, attended by delegates of all social standings from the north, the south and abroad, including representatives of the south Korean Federation of University Student Councils under the South Headquarters of Pomchonghangnyon and a member of the sponsors' group for the Family Movement for Realizing Democracy.

Recognizing particular importance of the role of the organizations of Pomminryon (the Pan-National Alliance for Korea's Reunification) and Pomchonghangnyon in forming the tripartite alliance for national reunification, Kim Jong Il ensured that the pan-national rallies hosted by Pomminryon served as an important occasion for the purpose.

Under his close concern the Fifth Pan-National Rally was held on schedule although it was not so long after Kim Il Sung's death, and the sixth, seventh, eighth and ninth pan-national rallies were held with success despite the anti-reunification moves of separatist forces, thus demonstrating the unanimous aspiration for reunification of all the Korean people in the north, the south and abroad.

Kim Jong Il also pushed forward the work of developing the movement of overseas Korean compatriots.

In a letter titled, *On Developing the Movement of Koreans in Japan onto a New, Higher Stage*, sent to Chongryon (the General Association of Korean Residents in Japan) and the Korean compatriots in Japan on its 40th anniversary on May 24, 1995, he set out tasks and ways for developing the movement of Koreans in Japan.

He wrote that education should be intensified to imbue the members of Chongryon and other compatriots in Japan with confidence in their socialist homeland.

In his talks with the visiting officials of the Central Standing Committee of Chongryon on March 2 and October 20, 1995 and with the visiting delegates of Chongryon who attended the celebration of the 50th anniversary of the then League of Socialist Working Youth of Korea (LSWYK) and the conference of the LSWYK in January 1996, he stressed the need to implant unshakeable confidence in socialism, the spirit of Juche and the national soul in Chongryon officials and other compatriots, especially those of the third and fourth

generations. In October 1996 he sent the Pyongyang Music and Dance Troupe to Japan in order to imbue Chongryon officials and other compatriots with confidence in their socialist homeland.

Kim Jong Il put great stress on consolidating the unity in ideology and purpose within Chongryon.

In his talk with the visiting senior officials of the Central Standing Committee of Chongryon in mid-October 1995 he said that they should remain faithful to Chongryon like the revolutionaries of the older generation. He added that the senior officials of the Central Standing Committee of Chongryon should achieve ideological unity, respect one another and strive for a consensus of opinion about the problems through earnest discussion.

He led Chongryon to widen the scope of its work with compatriots.

He instructed that after the 17th Congress of Chongryon, all its officials should mingle with the compatriots to learn about their thoughts and, based on it, work effectively with them.

In order to strengthen the basic organizations of Chongryon he saw to it that the ranks of heads of Chongryon branches were built with competent people. And whenever they visited their homeland, he would meet them and give advice on how to improve the work of their branches.

Kim Jong Il also led the struggle to frustrate the Japanese reactionaries' and south Korean puppets' moves against Chongryon.

In the latter half of the 1990s they resorted to more vicious means to break up Chongryon. After setting 1996 as the "year of disbanding Chongryon," they clamoured about "its right to participate in the Japanese government."

In June 1996 Kim Jong Il explained the vicious nature of this scheme to officials concerned and specified ways of shattering it. On later occasions he met the visiting delegations of Chongryon and gave advice on how to frustrate the anti-Chongryon campaign of the Japanese reactionaries and south Korean puppets.

The organizations of Chongryon roused the compatriots to the struggle against the enemy's campaign and the media in their socialist homeland were loud in denunciation of the anti-Chongryon campaign. The organizations of Chongryon grew stronger in the course of foiling the enemy's schemes.

Kim Jong Il showed warm care for Chongryon officials of the older generation who had worked with devotion all their lives to build up the association, and ensured that their achievements were handed down to posterity.

On May 23, 1995, on the occasion of the 40th anniversary of Chongryon,

Pyongyang University of Light Industry was renamed Pyongyang Han Tok Su University of Light Industry with due ceremony. And the structures built with donations from Chongryon and compatriots in Japan were named after the donors or *Aeguk* (patriotism) was affixed to some of their names to add eternal brilliance to their patriotic deeds.

He also saw to it that though the country was undergoing economic difficulties, a huge sum of educational aid funds and stipends was annually sent to Chongryon to help it develop national education of Korean children in Japan. And in January 1995 when the Korean compatriots in the Kinki area including Hyogo Prefecture were suffering a severe calamity of a great earthquake, he sent a message of sympathy to them and took a measure to send a large sum of consolatory money.

He channelled efforts into developing the overall overseas Korean compatriots' movement into a national patriotic movement.

Before anything else, he ensured that Koreans' organizations were formed in all countries and regions where they were resident.

The General Association of Korean Nationals in China, which had been established in the early 1990s, was reorganized into the General Association of Korean Residents in China in April 1998, and in September 1997 the United Federation of Koreans in the Far East was formed under the International United Confederation of Koreans. Besides, similar organizations were set up in all parts of the world where the Korean compatriots lived.

Kim Jong Il took measures to encourage all overseas Koreans to take an active part in the struggle for national reunification.

To reunify the country is the most pressing task facing the Korean people, be they resident in the north or south of Korea or in other countries. Nobody can shun away from this national task.

According to Kim Jong Il's instructions an information and publicity campaign was launched to bring home to all the overseas Koreans the independent policy on national reunification. For this campaign specific data were used about the vicious schemes of the anti-reunification forces including the traitors to the nation, worshippers of foreign forces and separatists.

As a result, a growing number of overseas Koreans, once preoccupied with their own businesses, were informed of the reality of their homeland, the cause of national division and its grave consequences lasting half a century. They turned all out in the struggle to put an end to the history of Korea's division.

Kim Jong Il adopted steps to enhance the role of overseas Koreans' organizations, Pomminryon and Pomchonghangnyon.

He saw to it that to mark August 15, 1995, the 50th anniversary of Korea's liberation and its division, colourful functions were held in grand style, attended by Korean compatriots in the north and south of Korea and abroad.

August 1995 witnessed a grand festival for national reunification participated in by a broad spectrum of compatriots in and out of Korea—representatives of different strata of people in the north and the south, delegations of Chongryon and the General Association of Korean Nationals in China, delegations of Koreans in Australia, the United States and Canada, the adviser to Pomminryon and his party, the secretary general of Pomminryon who is concurrently head of the secretariat of its Overseas Headquarters, delegations of the International United Confederation of Koreans and the Overseas Headquarters of Pomchonghangnyon, and delegation of the China Headquarters of Pomchonghangnyon.

Kim Jong Il also ensured that all overseas Korean compatriots preserved their national identity with high national pride and worked hard to defend their socialist homeland and develop it into a prosperous country.

As a result of his energetic leadership the movement of overseas Koreans expanded into a pan-national patriotic movement spanning all parts of the world where there are Korean people.

9. PUBLICATION OF THE WORK *SOCIALISM IS A SCIENCE* AND FOR SUCCESSFUL ADVANCE OF THE SOCIALIST CAUSE AND THE CAUSE OF ANTI-IMPERIALIST INDEPENDENCE

After the demise of Kim Il Sung, Kim Jong Il wisely led the struggle to shatter the imperialists' anti-socialist campaign and ensure successful advance of the socialist cause and the cause of anti-imperialist independence.

On November 1, 1994 he published a treatise titled, *Socialism Is a Science* in *Rodong Sinmun*, organ of the Central Committee of the WPK.

He said:

“I wrote the treatise *Socialism Is a Science* and published it in order to deal a blow at the imperialists and reactionaries who are opposed to socialism, and to instil confidence in the sure victory of socialism in the

hearts of the people. The treatise clarifies the scientific accuracy and truthfulness of socialism.”

In the treatise he noted that socialism was frustrated in several countries but scientific socialism is as alive as ever in the minds of the people. He affirmed that although socialism is temporarily experiencing a heartrending setback because of opportunism, it will without fail be revived and win ultimate victory for its scientific accuracy and truthfulness. Then he clarified the principles to be maintained in defending the scientific accuracy and truthfulness of socialism and advancing the socialist cause.

At the beginning of the paper he wrote that the masses achieve their independence by means of socialism and the transition of a society based on individualism to socialist society based on collectivism, man's intrinsic need, is an inevitable demand of historical development as the latter is the most progressive society which conforms with man's independent nature.

He clarified that the scientific accuracy and truth of Korean-style socialism lie in the fact that it is based on the absolutely correct Juche-oriented view and attitude to man.

He also elucidated that Korean-style socialism based on the Juche-oriented view of and attitude to the masses is the most advantageous and powerful socialism which enjoyed their full support and trust.

In conclusion he reaffirmed that man-centred socialism, socialism centred on the masses, is absolutely scientific, the most advantageous and powerful socialism and for its scientific accuracy and truthfulness, socialism is sure to be victorious.

The revolutionary peoples of the world were unstinting in their praises of this treatise, calling it Kim Jong Il's political programme, the guideline for the current world socialist movement and the revolutionary line for the struggle of progressive mankind.

Kim Jong Il made every effort to give fresh impetus to the socialist movement and propel the cause of anti-imperialist independence victoriously by dint of the Juche idea.

He made sure that active encouragement and substantial assistance were rendered to the revolutionary parties and peoples in their struggle to revive socialism by dint of the idea.

Subsequently, Kim Il Sung's and Kim Jong Il's works were translated in many languages and distributed worldwide. In a little more than three months after the publication of the above treatise, the works were carried by over 210 mass media of various countries, and workshops, lecture meetings, reading

sessions, explanatory meetings and the like were held on more than 220 occasions in 60-odd countries.

Kim Jong Il directed concern to spreading Juche-oriented ideology and theory of socialism through international meetings of the Juche idea followers.

The International Seminar on the Juche Idea for Global Independence was held in Copenhagen, Denmark, in February 1995, attended by heads of political parties, delegations and delegates, representatives of public organizations and Juche idea study groups, and personages in the academic and media circles, at which Kim Jong Il's work *Socialism Is a Science* was adopted as an official document of the meeting.

Similar meetings were held in many parts of the world, including the International Academic Seminar on the Juche Idea for Independence, Peace and Friendship in Moscow in February 1996 and the International Seminar on the Juche Idea for Independent Development of Latin America in Cuenca, Ecuador, in April the same year.

Publication of the works dealing with the Juche-oriented ideology and theory of socialism and international seminars on the Juche idea were of epochal significance in equipping the revolutionary peoples of the world with the Juche idea and encouraging them in their struggle to reenergize the socialist movement by dint of the Juche-oriented theory of socialism.

Kim Jong Il saw to it that sincere assistance was rendered to revolutionary parties and peoples of many countries aspiring after socialism.

After the collapse of Soviet Union-style socialism in several countries a growing number of revolutionary parties strived to learn from the DPRK in party building and socialist construction out of respect for the Juche idea and Korean-style socialism. And many political parties and organizations advocating the revival of socialism sprang up in former socialist countries.

Given the situation, the WPK sent its delegations to various countries to work actively with communist parties and other revolutionary parties there.

And WPK delegations were invited to the conferences of those revolutionary parties and international meetings co-hosted by them, including seminars for swapping experiences in party building. They explained the Juche idea, theory on and experiences in party building and expressed full support for and solidarity in the parties' struggle for socialism.

Meanwhile heads of political parties and personages advocating the revival of socialism were invited to the DPRK, so that they could get firsthand knowledge of the socialist reality based on the Juche idea. So heads of Leftist parties, delegations and revolutionary people in former socialist countries

visited the country, learning from its party building and socialist construction and getting fully convinced in the validity of the socialist cause.

Kim Jong Il led the effort for the successful advance of the cause of anti-imperialist independence.

The US-led imperialists persisted in their schemes to undermine the Juche character and national identity of other countries and assimilate their peoples under the cloak of “globalization” and “integration.” So opposing imperialism and dominationism and championing independence presented itself as an urgent necessity for mankind’s cause of independence.

With a view to providing an ideological and theoretical weapon for defending national independence against the imperialists’ manoeuvres for “globalization” and “integration,” Kim Jong Il published a work titled, *On Preserving the Juche Character and National Character of the Revolution and Construction* on June 19, 1997.

He laid bare the reactionary nature of the imperialists’ sophistries about “globalization” and “integration” and specified the principles, tasks and ways for the struggle to oppose them.

He elucidated that maintaining the Juche character and sustaining the national character of the revolution and construction is a principled requirement for carrying out the socialist cause in keeping with its own nature of independence and past and present conditions, as well as an essential requirement for strengthening international unity and solidarity and contributing truly to the development of the world revolutionary movement..

He continued that loving one’s country and nation is a prerequisite for maintaining the Juche character and national character of the revolution and construction, adding that carrying out the revolution and construction in one’s own style on the principle of national independence is the fundamental requirement for preserving the Juche character and national character. And he stressed that strengthening the driving force is the struggle for preserving the Juche character and national character.

He pointed out that in order to oppose imperialism and dominationism, the illusions about and fear of imperialism should be dispelled and international unity and cooperation among the progressive peoples of the world must be strengthened. Then he set forth specific ways to this end.

He directed great concern to developing the non-aligned movement into a political force for anti-imperialist independence.

He ensured that the meeting to be held to mark the 40th anniversary of the Bandung Conference served as a milestone in adding brilliance to Kim Il Sung’s

achievements in the non-aligned movement and defending the fundamental principles of the movement and demonstrating the unity and cohesion of its members. He also saw to it that the 11th and 12th summits of the non-aligned countries held in Cartagena, Colombia, in October 1995 and in Durban, South Africa, in September 1998, respectively, maintained the fundamental ideals and principles of the non-aligned movement.

As shown above, the WPK and the Korean people under the leadership of Kim Jong Il could wage a vigorous struggle for anti-imperialist independence even during the Arduous March and forced march, raising the international authority and prestige of their country.

CHAPTER 8. LEADING THE EFFORT TO BUILD A THRIVING SOCIALIST COUNTRY UNDER THE UNFURLED BANNER OF SONGUN

(January 1999-December 2011)

1. ADVANCING THE LINE OF BUILDING A THRIVING SOCIALIST COUNTRY

Kim Jong Il advanced the line of building a thriving socialist country and led the effort for its implementation.

Building a thriving socialist county was a lifetime wish of Kim Il Sung, an unshakeable will of Kim Jong Il and an ideal and objective of the struggle of the Korean people.

Kim Jong Il made preparations for building such a country during the Arduous March and forced march, unprecedentedly difficult periods in the history of the DPRK.

In a talk titled, *Let Us Make Our Country, Our Motherland, Ever More Prosperous, True to the Great Leader Comrade Kim Il Sung's Intention*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on December 31, 1994 and an autographed letter to all the people on January 1, 1995, he proclaimed his will and determination to build the country into a thriving nation.

Directing primary efforts to strengthening the KPA, he encouraged all the people to learn from the revolutionary soldier spirit in their struggle to defend the leadership of the revolution and strive to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche under the leadership of the WPK.

He gave on-site guidance to many KPA units and various sectors in provinces so as to lay foundations for bringing about a fresh leap forward in stepping up economic construction and improving the people's standard of living.

From early January 1998 he visited factories and enterprises of key

importance in economic construction, those in Jagang Province in particular, kindling a torch of a new revolutionary upswing and encouraging all the workers to turn out in building a thriving country.

His energetic leadership bore fruits. In pursuance of the WPK's slogan, "Forward on the Arduous March for final victory!" the Korean army and people started to record successes in their effort to turn the Arduous March into a march to paradise, displaying Kanggye spirit and upholding the torch of Songgang, in the course of which a firm springboard for building a prosperous nation was provided.

Good signs for an economic revitalization were shown in various sectors of the national economy. Small- and medium-sized power stations were built across the country in an all-people drive, remarkably contributing to easing the strain on electricity supply, and new foundations for solving the food problem and developing livestock farming and sericulture on an extensive scale were laid.

Proceeding from the demands of the developing revolution, he advanced the line of building a thriving socialist country on several occasions including in a talk titled, *Let Us Make This Year One in Which a Major Advance Is Made in the Building of a Great, Prosperous and Powerful Country*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 1, 1999 and in a talk, *On Bringing About a Decisive Advance in Building a Great, Prosperous and Powerful Socialist Country*, to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 1, 2000.

First, he clarified the essential contents and revolutionary nature of such a country.

Kim Jong Il said:

"By a great, prosperous and powerful country, I mean a thriving socialist country. It will be a country where the national strength is great, everything prospers and the people are living without envying anything in the world."

The thriving country as outlined by Kim Jong Il was a Juche-based socialist one.

Next, he elucidated fundamental principles that should be adhered to in building a thriving socialist country.

The first principle is to defend and embody the independent demand of the masses of the people and their interests.

The next one is to preserve the Juche character and national identity of the revolution and construction.

The masses of the people live and carve out their destiny with the country

and nation as the unit. A thriving socialist country is inconceivable apart from the country and nation.

All countries and peoples demand that their independence be fully realized and have a vital interest in preserving and developing the excellent characteristics unique to their nations. If a thriving socialist country is to take its root deep in the people's mind and enjoy their support and trust, it should embody the Juche character and national identity.

Juche character and national identity do not contravene internationalism. International unity and solidarity can be developed into truly voluntary and unbreakable relations only when the independence of each country and nation is respected. When Juche character and national identity are safeguarded, it will be possible to consolidate international unity and solidarity and create international environment and conditions favourable for building a thriving socialist country.

Another principle is to hold fast to the line of attaching importance to ideology, force of arms and science and technology.

Kim Jong Il also advanced tasks and ways for building a thriving socialist country.

One of the tasks is to further consolidate the politico-ideological position of the socialist country.

The might of socialism is its politico-ideological might and to solidify the politico-ideological position of the socialist country is a prerequisite for building a thriving nation. Therefore, it is important to intensify ideological work in keeping with the requirements of the developing revolution and construction so as to bring the inexhaustible mental might of the service personnel and people into full play and demonstrate the might of socialist Korea as a politico-ideological power on a higher level.

To this end, great efforts should be continuously directed to strengthening the country's defence capabilities under the banner of Songun.

Its defence capabilities represent the sovereignty and right to existence of Songun Korea and its prestige, dignity and destiny. It is only when defence capabilities are constantly strengthened that it is possible to defend the security of the country and people and provide a firm military guarantee for building a thriving socialist country.

Another task is to forcefully step up socialist economic construction, a major field in building a thriving country, and make the country an economic giant. Only then is it possible to further consolidate the country's political and military might, make the country prosperous and improve the people's livelihoods.

It is also important to develop all the spheres of socialist cultural construction, including education, public health and art and literature.

The ways are: fully displaying the might of Songun, the might of single-hearted unity, under the WPK's leadership; bringing the inexhaustible mental might and patriotism of all the service personnel and people into full play; and displaying the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance based on latest science and technology.

Because Kim Jong Il advanced the line of building a thriving socialist country, the WPK and the Korean people could have a clear-cut objective and plan and turn out in a dynamic drive to build such a country.

2. MAKING PUBLIC THE WORK TITLED,
*OUR PARTY'S SONGUN POLITICS
IS A POWERFUL POLITICAL MODE
OF SOCIALISM* AND CONDUCTING
IDEOLOGICAL AND THEORETICAL
ACTIVITIES TO DEVELOP
THE SONGUN IDEA IN DEPTH

By developing Kim Il Sung's Songun idea through his energetic ideological and theoretical activities, Kim Jong Il enhanced the attraction and viability of Kimilsungism and provided a guideline for accomplishing the revolutionary cause of Songun.

Kim Jong Un said:

“The General developed the President's idea of giving priority to arms into the idea of the Songun revolution and the theory of Songun politics, and advanced the theory of building a thriving socialist nation, thus significantly enhancing the attraction and viability of Kimilsungism and clearly verifying its justness in the revolutionary practice.”

Having keenly realized the importance of arms in the flames of the anti-Japanese struggle and the Fatherland Liberation War, Kim Jong Il commenced his Songun-based revolutionary leadership on August 25, 1960. Throughout half a century since then he had staunchly defended Kim Il Sung's idea of giving priority to arms, military affairs, and consistently adhered to it. In particular, he developed and systematized the Songun idea through great

revolutionary practice of administering Songun-based revolutionary leadership, Songun politics, in an all-round way.

In the work titled, *Our Party's Songun Politics Is a Powerful Political Mode of Socialism*, published on July 5, 2001, Kim Jong Il developed the Songun idea in greater depth.

In the work he gave a clear explanation of the interrelations between Songun politics and Kim Il Sung's idea of giving priority to arms, military affairs, the essence of Songun politics and its position in the political mode of socialism.

As for the interrelations between Songun politics and Kim Il Sung's idea of giving priority to arms, military affairs, Kim Jong Il said:

“Our Party's Songun politics is a unique political mode of socialism in which the idea of giving priority to arms, military affairs, is brilliantly applied.”

First, he pointed out that the army is precisely the party, the state and the people and reviewed the history of the revolutionary activities of Kim Il Sung who had pioneered and developed the Korean revolution by force of arms.

As the history of the revolutionary struggle of the working class shows, victory in a revolution is unthinkable apart from strengthening the revolutionary armed forces. Because revolutionary struggle is accompanied by showdown with counterrevolutionary forces, one can emerge victorious in a revolution and defend the revolution only when one relies on powerful revolutionary armed forces. This is a principle and formula of revolution.

Throughout the course of leading the Korean revolution since he embarked on the road of revolution, Kim Il Sung had consistently adhered to the line of giving priority to arms, military affairs. He advanced the idea that the only way for defeating an armed enemy and liberating the country was waging an armed struggle and organized an anti-Japanese guerrilla army first. It was only after the country's liberation that he founded the party and the state.

Kim Jong Il reviewed the history of the revolutionary activities of Kim Il Sung who had consistently maintained the line of giving priority to arms, military affairs, and on this basis formulated Kim Il Sung's Songun idea into a political mode in line with the actual conditions of the present times.

Kim Jong Il also elucidated the essence of Songun politics and its position in the political mode of socialism.

He said that the WPK's Songun politics is a political mode that defends the

country by strengthening the KPA into an invincible army, builds up the motive force of the revolution with the KPA as the core and model and pushes ahead with the overall socialist construction with the KPA as a pillar of the revolution.

On the basis of clarifying the essence of Songun politics, Kim Jong Il gave a scientific explanation of its position in the political mode of socialism.

Songun politics is the basic political mode of socialism. It is a unique political mode which makes it possible to carry out the revolution and construction by one's own efforts, in conformity with one's own conditions and in one's own way, and it is an all-powerful treasured sword with which to win victory in the revolution and construction in any adversity and a strategic line and political mode which should be consistently adhered to as long as there remains imperialism on earth and its moves for aggression continue.

Kim Jong Il made public several other works to develop the Songun idea in depth.

In a talk titled, *The Songun-Based Revolutionary Line Is a Great Revolutionary Line of Our Era and an Ever-victorious Banner of Our Revolution*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 29, 2003, he gave an original solution to the problem of the main force of the revolution and clarified the position and role of the revolutionary soldier spirit and the character of Songun politics.

As for the main force of the revolution, he said:

“On the basis of its deep analysis of the development of the times and the changed social and class relations, our Party put forward, for the first time in the history of the revolutionary movement, the idea of ‘precedence of the army over the working class,’ giving prominence to the People’s Army as the core unit and main force of the revolution.”

In the work he profoundly analyzed the preceding revolutionary theories of Marxism which regarded the working class as the main force of the revolution and proved that the WPK, in pursuing Songun politics, had given prominence to the KPA as the main force of the revolution, prompted by a new viewpoint of and attitude towards the issue of the main force of the revolution and the role of the revolutionary army in the revolution and construction.

Having analyzed the social and class relations in the Western capitalist countries in the mid-19th century, the preceding revolutionary theories of Marxism identified the working class as the most advanced and revolutionary class entrusted with the mission of liquidating domination by capital and all sorts of exploitation, and building socialism and communism, and defined it as

the leading class and the main force of the revolution. This was the reflection of the reality of capitalist society in those times. Later, socialist revolution emerged victorious in several countries of the world, and socialist construction got under way, with the working class as the main force. However, Marx's theories and formulas, which had been set forth one and a half centuries before, cannot accord with the present reality. The times have advanced further, witnessing a great change in social atmosphere, class relations and the status of the working class.

Saying that the WPK, unfettered by any established theories or formulas, strengthened the KPA and upgraded its role as required by the development of the situation and the revolution, thus leading the revolution and construction to victory, Kim Jong Il explained that the WPK gives prominence to the KPA as the main force of the revolution because it is the revolutionary ranks that defend the lifeline of the Korean revolution and the most revolutionary, militant and powerful of all social classes and strata.

He also expounded on the position and role of the revolutionary soldier spirit and the character of Songun politics.

The revolutionary soldier spirit is the lofty revolutionary spirit of the KPA, characterized mainly by a spirit of defending the leader at the risk of one's life, a spirit of carrying out his instructions at all costs, and a heroic self-sacrificing spirit.

The revolutionary soldier spirit is a noble spirit symbolic and representative of the Songun era and constitutes a revolutionary and militant ideological and spiritual weapon, which makes it possible to create miracles and perform meritorious deeds in the revolution and construction.

The revolutionary character of Songun politics lies in that it is a principled and righteous politics of anti-imperialist independence and politics of lofty love for the country, the nation and the people, which reliably defends and guarantees the independent demands and interests of the masses of the people, and the sovereignty and dignity of the country and the people from all sorts of infringement by the imperialist reactionaries.

In a talk titled, *Let Us Victoriously Accomplish the Cause of Comrade Kim Il Sung, the Revolutionary Cause of Juche, under the Great Banner of Songun*, given to senior officials of the WPK and the KPA on April 18, 2007, Kim Jong Il illuminated the fundamentals of the WPK's philosophy of arms and Songun politics and the buttresses of Songun politics.

According to him, the WPK's philosophy of arms is that one should counter arms with arms and guarantee the revolution with arms, and that the victory of

the cause of independence for the masses of the people, the cause of socialism, the prosperity of a country and nation rest on arms is a principle and law of the revolution which is illumined by the Juche idea and whose justness has been proved by history.

Kim Jong Il, by further developing the idea of the revolutionary soldier spirit, formulated it as a fundamental of Songun politics and defined a revolutionary party of the Juche type, invincible revolutionary armed forces and single-hearted unity of revolutionary ranks as the buttresses of Songun politics and powerful driving force of the revolutionary cause of Juche.

He also clarified the system and art of Songun-based leadership, principles of the Songun revolution and objectives of Songun politics in his works titled, *Let Us Make This Year a Turning Point in Opening the Road of Advance in the New Century* and *Journalists and Other Men of the Pen Are Ideological Standard-Bearers Who Staunchly Champion Our Ideology, Our System and Our Cause*.

On October 16, 2011 he gave instructions on systematizing the compositional system of the Songun idea into the theory and principles of the Songun revolution and theory of Songun politics.

As a result the Songun idea could be developed into a Juche-based revolutionary theory with an integrated system.

Kim Jong Il's energetic ideological and theoretical activities to develop and systematize the Songun idea enriched the Juche-based revolutionary theory and provided a powerful ideological and theoretical weapon for accomplishing the revolutionary cause of Juche and building a thriving socialist country.

3. GREETING THE 90TH ANNIVERSARY OF THE BIRTH OF KIM IL SUNG

The year 2002 marked the 90th anniversary of the birth of Kim Il Sung.

He was an ideological and theoretical genius who threw bright light on the road ahead of mankind by evolving the Juche idea, a great statesman and ever-victorious iron-willed brilliant commander who glorified modern history through his outstanding leadership and gigantic revolutionary practice and a benevolent father of the people who was endowed with lofty virtues and personality.

From the days when he embarked on the road of revolution to the last moments of his life he devoted his all to the freedom and happiness of the people and performed undying exploits while leading the Korean and world revolution to victory, experiencing all sorts of trials and hardships.

The Korean people's yearning for him grew intenser with each passing day in the lead-up to the 90th anniversary of his birth.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the effort to greet the day with a high degree of political enthusiasm and labour feats.

To this end he paid primary attention to organizational and political work.

He said:

“Party organizations and primary information workers of the Party should conduct an intensive political campaign for greeting the 90th birth anniversary of the President with a high degree of political enthusiasm and labour feats.”

On January 10, 2001 he took measures to make preparations for celebrating the 90th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth in a meaningful way.

Pursuant to the measures the WPK Central Committee, the WPK Central Military Commission, the DPRK National Defence Commission, the Presidium of the DPRK Supreme People's Assembly and the DPRK Cabinet sent on June 6, 2001 to the WPK organizations at all levels and institutions a joint resolution, titled, *On Greeting the 90th Birth Anniversary of President Kim Il Sung with a High Degree of Political Enthusiasm and Labour Feats*. The resolution praised Kim Il Sung as the founding father of socialist Korea and the eternal sun of Juche and introduced his imperishable exploits, before setting forth the tasks and ways for greeting the next year's Day of the Sun (Kim Il Sung's birthday) with great political enthusiasm and brilliant labour feats.

On July 17 100 000-strong mass rally of Pyongyang citizens for implementing the resolution was held in Kim Il Sung Square, followed by similar rallies in provinces, cities, counties, institutions, enterprises, cooperative farms, universities, colleges and other organs.

Slogans including “Let us greet the 90th anniversary of the birth of President Kim Il Sung with high political enthusiasm and brilliant labour feats!” and “Let us hold up President Kim Il Sung in high esteem for all eternity!” were put up in streets, villages and workplaces across the country.

And the newspapers of the WPK, the KPA and the youth league carried on January 1, 2002 a joint editorial titled, *Let Us Make This Year of the 90th Birth Anniversary of President Kim Il Sung a Year in Which a Fresh Leap Forward*

Is Made in Building a Great, Prosperous and Powerful Country, calling on the Korean people to bring about a new revolutionary upsurge in all sectors of socialist construction under the slogan of “Let us glorify the greatest national holiday with brilliant successes in building an economic giant!”

Kim Jong Il led all the people to effect a fresh revolutionary upsurge in all sectors of socialist construction by displaying a high degree of enthusiasm.

In September 2001 he stressed to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee the need to complete the realignment of 100 000 hectares of arable land in South Hwanghae Province and Kaechon-Lake Thaesong Waterway project before the farming season of the following year, increase the production of light-industry goods and solve the food problem, thus putting into practice Kim Il Sung’s desire to make the country one whose people are well-off with nothing to envy in the world. In November 2001 he got acquainted with how the joint resolution was being implemented and instructed that the WPK organizations at all levels should help officials and working people unflinchingly attain the objects they had set in carrying out the resolution.

Under his leadership the land realignment in South Hwanghae Province was finished, the Taedonggang Brewery was commissioned and other projects were brought to completion to mark the 90th anniversary of Kim Il Sung’s birth.

As part of his effort to have the holiday greeted significantly, Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into adding eternal brilliance to Kim Il Sung’s revolutionary exploits.

In a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 3, 2001 he said: The history of the President’s revolutionary activities can be called the history of Songun-based revolutionary leadership; he pioneered the Korean revolution and led it to victory by dint of his Songun-based revolutionary leadership; Songun politics is a revolutionary political mode that makes it possible to carry out the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by him; the people should have a correct understanding of its justness and invincible might and fully meet its demands.

In his work titled, *Let Us Enhance the Role of the Primary Information Workers of the Party As Required by the Revolutionary Advance in the New Century*, published on April 12, 2001, he pointed out: By ceaselessly spreading information about the President’s greatness and immortal revolutionary exploits, we should encourage the people to cherish boundless pride and dignity of being members of Kim Il Sung’s nation and hold him in high esteem as the eternal sun of Juche; we should conduct information about his greatness without letup so as

to enable not only our generation but also the coming generations to carry forward forever the tradition of our people of being loyal to him.

And in the letter titled, *Journalists and Other Men of the Pen Are Ideological Standard-Bearers Who Staunchly Champion Our Ideology, Our System and Our Cause*, sent to the participants in the Eighth Congress of the Journalists Union of Korea on November 18, 2001, he pointed out that it was necessary to intensify in a comprehensive way the information work for giving wide publicity to the greatness of Kim Il Sung, who had founded the army before anything else, accomplished the cause of the country's liberation, the cause of Party building and the cause of state building by relying on the army, and led the socialist cause along the correct path on the basis of solid military foundations.

As a result, many books including anecdotes of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary career and reminiscences of anti-Japanese revolutionary veterans were published. And short courses and public lectures on his greatness were held throughout the WPK. A question-and-answer contest on his greatness was held and a TV programme of recollecting by the Koreans at home and abroad who were associated with his revolutionary activities was broadcast. The Kaechon Revolutionary Museum dedicated to the 1 000-*ri* journey for national liberation was built, followed by the erection of the statue of Kim Il Sung in Ranam District, Chongjin, a monument to on-site guidance by the three commanders of Mt. Paektu at the then Pyongyang Textile Mill and a monument to on-site guidance by Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il at the Mangyongdae Chicken Farm.

Kim Jong Il also paid close attention to the celebrations of the 90th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth.

He ensured that they marked a major occasion for highlighting the all-people sentiment that Kim Il Sung would always be with them and a meaningful festival in praise of Kim Il Sung as the sun.

To this end various political and cultural events were organized.

On April 2, 2002 a national symposium on the Juche idea was held in Pyongyang. A national meeting was held on the 14th, followed by similar meetings in provinces and army units. On the same day the fourth Kimilsungia show was held at the Kimilsungia-Kimjongilia Exhibition House which was built in the lead-up to the holiday.

On June 6 the previous year Kim Jong Il had examined the master plan of the exhibition house and gave instructions on accelerating its construction so that it could be open to the public to mark the Day of the Sun the following

year and the fourth Kimilsungia show could be held there. On March 7, 2002 he had inquired about how its construction and the preparations for the show were going on and solved problems arising in the construction.

A parade of the Worker-Peasant Red Guards, a soiree of youth and students, a national science and technology festival, a national contest of blue- and white-collar workers' families amateur art groups, a national photo show, a Pyongyang fine art festival, a national book show, and Mangyongdae Prize sports festival were held in Pyongyang. Colourful events were held also in provinces.

The mass gymnastics and artistic performance *Arirang* crowned the celebrations of the 90th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth.

Together with this the DPRK hosted various international events to mark the day.

On March 13, 2002 Kim Jong Il referred to the need to inform visiting foreign party and state delegations and delegates of the justness and viability of Songun politics and show them how the Korean people were working, so that they could be inspired with courage and confidence in victory of the cause of independence for the masses of the people, the cause of socialism.

Pyongyang hosted on April 16 a symposium of foreign political parties on the exploits of Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il and the ninth session of the Executive Committee of the Council of the International Institute of the Juche Idea. Saying that the name of the President who had illuminated a road for mankind in the era of independence would shine forever along with the immortal Juche idea, those attending the above meetings were determined to make greater efforts for the cause of independence.

Of particular note was the 20th April Spring Friendship Art Festival held in Pyongyang from April 14 to 20.

Attending the festival were more than 100 art troupes and jugglers' groups composed of international and national prize winners and famous artistes from 60 countries the world over, overseas Koreans' art troupes and Korean artistes.

Revolutionary peoples the world over celebrated the 90th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth as a common holiday of mankind.

Many heads of state and 110 progressive political parties sent messages, letters, flower baskets and gifts to Kim Jong Il on the occasion of the Day of the Sun. Some 70 political parties in 50 countries formed preparatory committees for celebrating the Day of the Sun involving high-ranking government officials and prominent figures from political and social circles and organized rallies, meetings for recollecting Kim Il Sung, public lectures,

symposiums, film shows, book and photo shows, artistic performances and other political and cultural events, totalling 280.

Grand celebrations of the 90th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth fully demonstrated to the world the iron will of the WPK and the Korean army and people to accomplish without fail the revolutionary cause of Juche pioneered by him under the Songun-based revolutionary leadership of the WPK.

4. CONSOLIDATING THE POLITICO-IDEOLOGICAL POSITION OF THE REVOLUTION

In building a thriving socialist country Kim Jong Il directed great efforts to further consolidating the politico-ideological position of the Korean revolution and thereby demonstrating the might of the country as a political and ideological power.

He strengthened the WPK into the guide of the Songun revolution.

He said:

“In order to build a great, prosperous and powerful country, we should effect a fresh change in Party work.”

He paid primary attention to establishing the WPK's monolithic leadership system.

He clarified important problems arising in establishing the WPK's monolithic leadership system on several occasions and in his works including *On Bringing About a Fresh Change in Party Work in Support of the Party's Songun-based Revolutionary Leadership*, a talk given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on June 9, 2004, *Let Us Accomplish the Revolutionary Cause of Juche to the Last by Carrying Forward the Traditions of DIU*, a talk to senior officials of the WPK and the KPA on October 17, 2006, *Let Us Victoriously Accomplish Comrade Kim Il Sung's Cause, the Revolutionary Cause of Juche, under the Great Banner of Songun*, a talk to senior officials of the WPK and the KPA on April 18, 2007 and *The Workers' Party of Korea Is a Great Party Which Victoriously Carries Forward and Accomplishes Comrade Kim Il Sung's Revolutionary Cause*, a work published on October 8, 2010 on the occasion of the 65th anniversary of the founding of the WPK.

He ensured that all the WPK organizations established discipline whereby

they bring important issues to the Party's attention and deal with them in accordance with its decision and a revolutionary habit of accepting its lines and policies without condition and implementing them to the letter. In addition, he made sure that revolutionary discipline and order was set up among the entire WPK, the whole KPA and all the people of acting as one under the WPK's unified leadership.

In those years it was essential to enhance the militant functions and role of the WPK organizations.

For this Kim Jong Il paid primary attention to building up Party ranks and bringing their might into maximum play.

For qualitatively building up the ranks of officials, the core and pivotal force of the WPK, and enhancing their sense of responsibility and role, the WPK organizations reinforced the ranks of officials with those who were ready to defend the leadership of the revolution and faithfully support the WPK's Songun politics and educated and helped them so that they could become standard-bearers in all undertakings. In particular, measures were adopted to boldly promote those who were tempered in military service and possessed of specialized skills.

Meanwhile, Kim Jong Il channelled efforts into building up the ranks of the WPK members and enhancing their leading role, particularly in defending and implementing the WPK's Songun-based revolutionary line and Songun politics. In February 2009 he stressed that the WPK members should fulfil their duties in the revolutionary upsurge for opening the gates of a thriving country by 2012 which would mark the 100th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth. To do so they should train themselves into revolutionaries faithful to the WPK and sharing the same ideology, intentions and destiny with it by intensifying their organizational life, he noted. He also ensured that the WPK adhered strictly to the principle of admitting into it those who were trained and tested through practice.

He led the WPK organizations to conduct their work in a creative and innovative way in keeping with the requirements of the prevailing situation and the developing revolution.

Under his guidance the WPK organizations strived to establish a revolutionary climate of Party life among officials and other WPK members and organized and guided their Party life in close combination with the implementation of their revolutionary tasks.

On January 1, 2000 and December 3, 2001 Kim Jong Il said that the WPK officials should incessantly improve their political and practical qualifications under the slogan **“Let us support the Party by virtue of real ability!”** and that the WPK organizations and officials should learn from the Party's

revolutionary leadership art and proactively apply it in the struggle for building a thriving nation.

In order to have the WPK organizations fulfil their mission and role as political leadership bodies, he paid special attention to strengthening the work of Party cells and ensured that all the WPK organizations waged the movement for creating loyal Party cells with proper methodology and in a substantial manner. In October 2007 he said that the WPK cells should elevate their functions and role with the Third Conference of WPK Cell Secretaries as a momentum.

In a talk titled, *On Enhancing the Sense of Responsibility and Role of Officials in Opening the Gates of a Great, Prosperous and Powerful Country by Bringing About a Fresh Revolutionary Leap Forward*, given to senior officials of the WPK, state and economic organs on July 29, 2009, Kim Jong Il pointed out that the WPK organizations and officials should conduct brisk organizational and political work for effecting incessant innovations in all sectors of the revolution and construction and quickening the ongoing general march, and bring into maximum play the spiritual strength of the WPK members and other working people in effecting a fresh revolutionary upsurge.

Kim Jong Il directed attention also to intensifying Party guidance over the revolution and construction.

He led the WPK organizations to exert themselves for the prompt and satisfactory solution of scientific and technical problems and strictly maintain the socialist principles in economic management.

Under his leadership the WPK's ideological work was conducted dynamically to bring the spiritual strength of all the people into fullest play.

Kim Jong Il said:

“In keeping with the development of the revolution and construction, we must conduct ideological work proactively so as to display to the maximum the inexhaustible spiritual strength of our soldiers and people and give fuller play to the dignity of socialist Korea as a political and ideological power.”

He clarified principles to be maintained in improving the WPK's ideological work in his several works including *Let Us Enhance the Role of the Primary Information Workers of the Party As Required by the Revolutionary Advance in the New Century*, a letter to the participants in the National Conference of the Primary Information Workers of the WPK on April 12, 2001, *On Some Problems Arising in Improving Party Ideological Work at Present*, a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on April 10,

2008 and *Let Us Stoke Up the Flames of a Revolutionary Upsurge in All Sectors of Building a Great, Prosperous and Powerful Country by Dint of the Great Spiritual Strength of Kim Il Sung's Nation*, a talk to officials of the WPK, the KPA, state and economic organs on June 25, 2009.

First, he underlined the need to direct the main effort of the WPK's ideological work to displaying the spiritual strength of officials, WPK members and other working people to the maximum in the general offensive to build a thriving country. To this end, he explained, education in the Juche idea and the Songun idea should be continuously intensified so as to train all the people into ones strong in ideology and faith.

In October 2002 he put forth disseminating the greatness and justness of Songun politics as the general direction and major task of the WPK's ideological work. And he ensured that all information and motivation work was permeated with the Songun idea and subordinated to the dissemination of the idea. And he saw to it that information work on the greatness and viability of Songun politics was conducted on the basis of materials on present realities so as to inspire the WPK members and other working people with firmer confidence in its invincibility.

In April 2008 he referred to the need to give precedence to theoretical education in the Juche idea and the Songun idea and efficiently conduct education through the history of the Songun-based leadership of the WPK which had won one victory after another under the banner of the Juche idea and the Songun idea.

Along with education in the Juche idea and the Songun idea, he paid heed to education in the revolutionary traditions.

In a talk titled, *On Intensifying Education in the Revolutionary Traditions through the Revolutionary Battle Sites and Historic Sites*, given to officials while looking round the revolutionary battle sites and historic sites in the Mt. Paektu area in March 2000, he said that to safeguard and carry forward the revolutionary traditions created by Kim Il Sung in the days of the anti-Japanese revolution and accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche on the basis of these traditions was an unshakeable will and determination of the WPK and that education in the revolutionary traditions should be conducted more proactively as the generations of the revolution were changed and the revolution was developed in depth. Later he visited many revolutionary battle sites and historic sites throughout the country and stressed the need to preserve them in their original state and conduct education through them in an efficient manner. In a talk titled, *Let Us Open the Way to a New Victory with the Same*

Revolutionary Faith, Will and Courage As Was Possessed by President Kim Il Sung, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on November 25, 2002, he said that the WPK members, soldiers, working people and youth should further study the history of Kim Il Sung's revolutionary activities. And in a talk titled, *The Korean Revolution Museum Is a Great National Treasure House and an Edifice for Education in the Revolutionary Traditions, Which Contains the Records of the Revolutionary Activities of the Great Leader and the Party*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on July 30, 2008, he emphasized that education should be efficiently conducted through historic revolutionary relics.

He also paid close attention to intensifying education in socialism.

In a talk titled, *Let Us Discharge the Obligations Proper to a Citizen of the DPRK with Consciousness of Civic Duty*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on September 5 and 8, 2002 and another talk titled, *Intensifying Education in Socialism Is an Urgent Demand of Our Times and Our Revolution*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on December 20, 2006, he clarified principles to be maintained in intensifying education in socialism, before pointing out the need to intensify among officials, WPK members and other working people education in faith in socialism, education in the spirit of defending socialism and education in socialist patriotism.

Kim Jong Il's attention was directed also to upgrading the forms and methods of Party work as required by the times and developing revolution.

He saw to it that efforts were focused on ensuring quality and efficiency in ideological work and the WPK's ideological work was turned into work with the minds of the people. Along with this he ensured that information and motivation means were modernized and new forms of materials such as multi-media presentations were extensively used in education in line with the requirements of the IT era.

Under his guidance the WPK ideological workers decisively enhanced their sense of responsibility and role.

Kim Jong Il consolidated the single-hearted unity of the revolutionary ranks to be rock-solid.

He said:

“It is very important in consolidating single-hearted unity to secure its firm centre. Unity without centre is not unity and nothing but a rabble. The centre, core, of the single-hearted unity of our Party, army and people is the leadership of the revolution.”

On several occasions including in a talk titled, *We Must Fully Demonstrate the Dignity and Might of Songun Korea on the Strength of Single-Hearted Unity*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on February 17, 2007 and another talk titled, *Let Us Victoriously Accomplish Comrade Kim Il Sung's Cause, the Revolutionary Cause of Juche, under the Great Banner of Songun*, given to senior officials of the WPK and the KPA on April 18, 2007, Kim Jong Il elucidated principles to be maintained in consolidating the single-hearted unity of the revolutionary ranks centred around the leadership of the revolution.

In a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 2, 2003 he specified that the leadership of the revolution, single-hearted unity and socialism share the same destiny.

He led all the service personnel and people to support the ideology and leadership of the WPK in good faith, firmly united around the WPK with one ideology and will and out of a sense of moral obligation.

In January 2001 and January 2005 he said that all officials should live and work like Kim Chaek and the officials in the years when the foundations for carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche were being laid, who had supported the leader of the revolution with a pure revolutionary conscience and obligation. And on October 8, 2009 he said that single-hearted unity means a unity of mind and thought in the true sense of the word and officials should support the thought and mind of their leader.

On February 3, 2002 he stressed the need to give a deep understanding of the greatness of the leader and the WPK to the WPK members and other working people so that the ideological feeling that their leader and Party were the best would prevail throughout society. In February 2007 he said that the entire WPK, the whole KPA and all the people should become their leader's true comrades who would trust and follow him alone and cast in their lot with him.

He channelled great efforts into further consolidating the single-hearted unity of the revolutionary ranks based on revolutionary comradeship.

On several occasions including in a talk titled, *Revolutionary Comradeship Is the Basis of Single-hearted Unity and the Driving Force of Our Revolution*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on April 7, 2004, he advanced principles to be adhered to in solidifying the single-hearted unity of the revolutionary ranks based on revolutionary comradeship.

Under his leadership benevolent politics was administered on a higher level resulting in the people being rallied around the WPK with a pure heart.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to carrying out the WPK's mass line. In a talk titled, *Officials Should Become Devoted Servants of the People*, given to senior

officials of the WPK Central Committee on October 28, 2003 he emphasized that all officials should be possessed of people-oriented style of work and become true servants of the people who are called “our so-and-so” by the people. And on several occasions including September 1, 2006, February 17, 2007 and September 2008 he instructed that the WPK organizations and officials should have a good grasp of the public sentiments and work efficiently with the people so as to rally them firmly around the WPK. And in a talk titled, *On Thoroughly Implementing the Party’s Mass Line in Line with the Requirements of the Developing Reality*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on December 1, 2010, he made clear important matters in implementing the mass line.

He led the country to keep highly vigilant against the enemy moves to undermine its politico-ideological position and single-hearted unity and resolutely counter them.

Thus a powerful drive against the imperialists’ schemes for ideological and cultural infiltration and smear campaign was launched to keep the slightest element of bourgeois ideology and lifestyle from sneaking in and root out non-socialist practices undermining single-hearted unity.

Kim Jong Il paid attention also to enhancing the role of the people’s government and working people’s organizations.

Attaching importance to elections of deputies to power organs at all levels in consolidating the people’s government, he sent an open letter to all voters for the elections of the deputies to the 11th and 12th Supreme People’s Assemblies in August 2003 and March 2009 and took part in the elections at the constituencies of Kim Il Sung Military University and Kim Il Sung University of Politics respectively, voting for the candidates. On July 29, 2007 he visited Chusang Cooperative Farm, Hamju County, which had been visited by Kim Il Sung, and voted for a sub-workteam leader of the farm, a candidate for a provincial people’s assembly, and the chairman of the farm, a candidate for Hamju County people’s assembly.

He ensured that the people’s government organs assumed full responsibility for administrative and economic affairs.

Under his guidance the people’s government organs performed their functions satisfactorily: efficiently organizing and guiding administrative and economic affairs for smooth fulfillment of economic tasks; establishing tight administrative discipline so that the laws, ordinances and directives of the state could be carried out accurately; solving problems arising in people’s livelihoods in a responsible manner.

Kim Jong Il ensured that they strived to establish a revolutionary habit of observing laws across society.

On September 5 and 8, 2002 he pointed out that it was necessary to intensify education in law observance among working people and make the law-abiding spirit prevail across society so that all members of society would respect the state laws and observe public norms of life and ennobling socialist way of life. In February 2007 he sent to the participants in a national conference of law-enforcement officials a letter titled, *Let Us Firmly Establish a Revolutionary Legal Order in the Songun Era by Intensifying Guidance over Law Observance*, which would serve as a guideline for intensifying guidance over law observance in the Songun era. With a view to enhancing the role of law-enforcement organs, he visited the judgement hall of the newly-built Central Court on January 23, 2010, clarifying principles to be maintained by judicial organs to fulfil their role in consolidating people's democratic dictatorship.

In a discourse titled, *The Democratic People's Republic of Korea Is a Juche-oriented Socialist State with Invincible Might*, published in *Rodong Sinmun*, organ of the WPK and *Minju Josen*, organ of the DPRK government on September 5, 2008, he emphasized that the people's government organs and their officials should perform their mission and tasks with credit and fulfil their duties as people's servants by improving their style and method of work as required by the times and developing revolution.

He led working people's organizations to enhance their role.

Consistently holding fast to the idea of attaching importance to young people, he directed great efforts to enhancing the role of the youth league.

He clarified the basic mission and tasks of the youth league and tasks and ways for young people to fulfil their honourable mission in a letter titled, *Let Us Further Enhance the Role of the Primary Organizations of the Youth League*, sent to those attending the Conference of Model Primary Officials of Kim Il Sung Socialist Youth League on September 29, 1999, a talk *Let Us Make This Year a Turning Point in Opening the Road of Advance in the New Century*, to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 3, 2001 and a talk *Young Men and Women Should Fully Demonstrate the Honour of Young Vanguard in the Songun Era by Inheriting the Traditions of Juche-oriented Youth Movement*, to officials in the sector of youth work on August 22, 2007.

Consequently, ideological education in the Songun idea and socialism was intensified among young people with the main emphasis put on education in loyalty so as to train them into dependable successors to the cause of the Songun revolution. Young people demonstrated the heroic mettle and merit of the Korean youth both in the struggle for building a thriving socialist country and national defence.

Kim Jong Il paid attention also to improving the work of the trade unions, union of agricultural workers and women's union.

Under his guidance the organizations of trade unions and the union of agricultural workers intensified education in loyalty among their members, at the same time as waging various kinds of brisk mass movements including socialist emulation movement for winning Songun torch prize, thus ensuring that they would creditably perform their mission and duties as the direct undertakers of the effort to build a prosperous country.

As part of his effort to enhance the role of women's union organizations and train women into revolutionaries of the Songun era, Kim Jong Il extended congratulations to all the women throughout the country on the occasion of the 100th anniversary of March 8 international women's day and advanced tasks to be tackled by women's union organizations in his talk titled, *Let Us Add Brilliance to the Proud Traditions of the Juche-oriented Korean Women's Movement in the Grand Struggle to Build a Great, Prosperous and Powerful Country*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on February 24, 2010.

5. CONSOLIDATING THE NATIONAL DEFENCE CAPABILITIES

To consolidate the country's national defence capabilities and thus demonstrate its might as a military power is a prerequisite for building a thriving socialist nation.

The prevailing situation urgently required consolidating the country's national defence capabilities. While incessantly escalating the moves for military aggression against the DPRK, the United States stigmatized the country as part of the "Axis of Evil" and grew more undisguised in its attempt for preemptive nuclear strike against it, bringing the situation of the Korean peninsula to the brink of war. The situation of the peninsula remained complicated and tense in the new century.

Kim Jong Il led the effort to strengthen the KPA into an invincible Paektusan revolutionary army.

He said:

"The People's Army is the main force of our revolution and the core

force of our national defence. In our Songun politics, military affairs are given top priority and strengthening the People's Army is the key element."

He attached great importance to establishing the WPK's command system in the KPA in a more thoroughgoing way.

On several occasions including January 1, 2000 he referred to the need to set up in the KPA a military discipline of obeying its Supreme Commander's orders unconditionally and acting as one. On May 20, 2003 he gave instructions on intensifying education among officials and service personnel to clearly inform them of the criminal attempts of anti-WPK counterrevolutionary elements to weaken the WPK's leadership over the building of revolutionary armed forces in the past and their harmful effects.

On October 13, 2009 he told senior officials of the WPK Central Committee that officials should perform their responsibilities and all sectors and units should faithfully support the leadership of Kim Jong Un as required by the developing reality when a historic change was being made in carrying forward the revolutionary cause of Juche. And on July 27 and October 8, 2010 he told KPA commanding officers to establish the command system of Kim Jong Un in the army and support his leadership with all sincerity and in good faith.

Kim Jong Il exerted himself to consolidate the politico-ideological might of the KPA.

Under his leadership the KPA trained the soldiers into persons strong in ideology and faith by intensifying among them education in loyalty, revolutionary traditions, class awareness, socialist patriotism and faith and education to emulate heroes Ri Su Bok, Kim Kwang Chol and Kil Yong Jo with the main emphasis put on education to arm them with the Songun idea and the spirit of becoming human bullets and bombs to defend the leadership of the revolution. The KPA made efforts to improve the form and contents of its political and ideological work: organizing armywide short courses and conferences of political officers in 2000; conducting information and motivation work in a front-line style; increasing the number of copies of its newspaper and sending desktop calendar-style educational materials good in contents and form to all the companies. It also transformed Party ideological work in it into work with feelings, emotional sentiments, of service personnel and laid out in units halls dedicated to their history and intensified education through them. And it widely used historic relics of the revolution and art performance in the education of service personnel.

Kim Jong Il made sure that the KPA displayed the noble traits of unity between officers and men and army and people on a higher level under the

slogans of “Let us help the people!” and “Let the entire army form an integral whole of comrades!”

He directed close attention to increasing the military and technological might of the KPA.

To this end he ensured that the KPA intensified combat training as the anti-Japanese guerrillas had done in Mt. Paektu.

Paying primary attention to the training of officers and staffs, he saw to it that the KPA decisively enhanced the qualifications and commanding ability of officers at all levels including staff officers so that they could satisfactorily perform their duties in any complex situations of modern warfare. And it staged trainings of various forms—training in real war atmosphere, marching, shooting, study of topography and training of arms, services and specialized units. Kim Jong Il guided the manoeuvres of arms, services and specialized units in the field.

He ensured that the KPA concentrated all its military and political work on strengthening the company and high-ranking officers went down to companies on a regular basis to help them, regarding the company as the main link of the whole chain in strengthening the entire army. He took a measure for the participants in the Conference of KPA Company Commanders held in February 1999 to listen to a recording of Kim Il Sung’s speech titled, *Let Us Strengthen the Companies of the People’s Army*, delivered on October 11, 1973. In October 2002 he sent a letter to the participants in the Conference of the Active Secretaries of Company Youth League Primary Organizations.

With a view to improving the commanding and management of units and establishing an ethos appropriate to the army, he led the KPA to set up a strict command system in units and enhance the sense of responsibility and role of officers.

Paying close attention to improving the living standards of soldiers, he ensured that the KPA built its own supply bases and regularly inquired into the diet of soldiers in detail, sometimes giving his opinions on how to improve it. He also took several measures to better the cultural life of soldiers. Greatly encouraged by his care for them, the KPA soldiers performed great innovations in major sectors of building a thriving country and took the lead in creating cultural living environment appropriate to such a country, setting examples for civilians to follow.

Attaching importance to military affairs, Kim Jong Il continued to direct great efforts to developing defence industry and fortifying the whole country into an impregnable fortress.

He paid close attention to making the climate of giving importance to military affairs prevail across society.

In reflection of the unanimous desire of younger generations, he ensured that

the WPK Central Military Commission issued on May 8, 2002 an order on enforcing compulsory military service system. The system came into effect from 2003 for the first time in the country's history.

He showed meticulous concern to the enforcement of the system so that its superiority and validity could be clearly proved. When he inspected KPA units on the frontline on May 30, 2003, he met soldiers newly recruited under the system and gave a pep talk to them.

He also energetically led the effort to arm all the people and fortify the whole country on a higher level.

Under his guidance paramilitary organizations further built up their ranks, intensified training and enhanced their preparations for action.

In fortifying the whole country in a thoroughgoing way, he put emphasis on building strong facilities for combat purposes and generalizing successes and experiences achieved in this regard. In January and April 1999 he took steps for completing the fortification of the rear and defending major factories and other important objects and in February 2009 gave instructions on raising the level of fortification of the country and air-raid precautions with an eye to the world trend of the development of military hardware.

He made sure that the climate of aiding the army prevailed throughout society.

The first national conference of activists in aiding the army held in November 2002 served as an occasion for stoking up the flames of aiding the army. The WPK's ideological work was conducted with the main emphasis put on information and motivation work for inspiring all the people to sincerely love and aid the army in support of the WPK's Songun politics. Kim Jong Il extended his thanks to officials and working people who were exemplary in aiding the army and took measures to give wide publicity to them through newspapers and radios.

He made continuous efforts to strengthen defence industry.

He inspired the officials and working people in the sector of munitions industry to work in the Kunjari spirit. The spirit is a spirit of implementing one's tasks at the cost of one's life. During the grim days of the Fatherland Liberation War the workers at a munitions factory in Kunja-ri moved machines into underground tunnels and produced sub-machine guns and mortars even by pulling lathe belts round with their hands during a power blackout with confidence in victory and do-or-die determination that as long as their country was led by Kim Il Sung it would surely emerge victorious.

On December 24, 2000 Kim Jong Il emphasized that the sector of munitions industry should work in the Kunjari spirit.

Later the spirit became a source of ideological and spiritual might and propellant for a fresh leap forward in the development of munitions industry.

Kim Jong Il paid attention to putting the production of munitions on a regular footing and raising their quality.

He ensured that overall state and economic affairs were geared to developing defence industry on a preferential basis and all sectors of the national economy supplied manpower, equipment and raw and other materials to defence industry as a top priority.

With normalizing munitions production and improving their quality set as its foremost task, the defence industry sector strived to fulfil its production plan without fail through scrupulous economic organization and by tapping all existing production potentials to the maximum and ensure the performance, durability and reliability of weapons and other combat equipment on the highest level.

Kim Jong Il directed concern to making defence industry self-sufficient, modern and IT-based. Thus, the country's defence industry came to rely entirely on domestically available raw and other materials and its own efforts and technology and further develop on a modern and IT basis in line with the world trend.

Under Kim Jong Il's leadership the country's military science and technology were rapidly developed in conformity with the world trend. Amid a brisk mass-based technical innovation movement, scientists and technicians proactively developed sophisticated combat and technical equipment based on cutting-edge technology.

6. ADVANCING THE LINE OF ECONOMIC CONSTRUCTION IN THE SONGUN ERA AND LAYING FOUNDATIONS FOR BUILDING AN ECONOMIC GIANT

Kim Jong Il advanced the line of economic construction in the Songun era on September 5, 2002 and in a talk titled, *Let Us Carry Out the Party's Line of Economic Construction in the Songun Era to the Letter*, given to senior officials of the WPK, state and economic organs on August 28, 2003.

He said:

“By reflecting the requirements of the Songun era, our Party advanced

the economic construction line of giving priority to defence industry and simultaneously developing light industry and agriculture.”

He clarified the tasks for carrying out the line: concentrating all efforts on developing defence industry on a preferential basis and radically improving the people's standard of living by giving equal importance to the development of light industry and agriculture; rapidly developing power, coal-mining and metal industries and railway transport and promoting heavy-industry sectors like machine-building and chemical industries.

The ways for implementing the line were to wage the struggle to carry out the line through Songun politics, maintain socialist principles in economic work, bring the superiorities of the socialist economy into full play and drastically improve the sense of responsibility and role of economic guidance organs, including the Cabinet, and their officials.

Under Kim Jong Il's guidance a dynamic struggle was waged to carry out the line of economic construction in the Songun era to the letter.

Primary efforts were directed to developing defence industry on a preferential basis, at the same time as promoting heavy industry related to it.

The sector of primary importance in this was machine-building industry.

In August and November 2001 Kim Jong Il visited the Ranam Coal Mining Machine Complex and kindled the torch of Ranam, a torch of the new century. As he inspected the Kusong Machine-Tool Factory in February 2001, May 2002, June 2004 and September 2006 he led the factory to become a national model for modernization effort. Following its example, the then Huichon Machine-Tool Factory, Ragwon Machine-Building Complex, Ryongsong Machine-Building Complex and other factories and enterprises upgraded their production lines and revitalized production.

The metal industry was put on a firmer modern and Juche basis.

Kim Jong Il visited the Kim Chaek Iron and Steel Complex, Songjin Steel Complex and other iron and steel plants and enterprises related to them, inquiring into knotty problems arising in their production and technological upgrading and taking necessary measures. Proceeding from the demands of the country's conditions and realities, he put forward the policy of modernizing the metal industry factories one by one without suspending production.

Meanwhile, an intensive drive was launched to make the metal industry Juche-based on a higher level by substituting major raw and other materials for the metal industry with domestically available ones.

Successes were also achieved in the effort to boost the electric power industry so as to ease the strain on electricity supply.

In January 1999 the DPRK National Defence Commission issued an order on stepping up construction of large-sized hydraulic power stations through an all-Party, all-army and all-people drive.

On the other hand a nationwide drive was launched to build small- and medium-sized power stations following the example set by Jagang Province and measures were taken to raise the existing generating capacity to the utmost.

Efforts were made to increase coal production.

Electric power, equipment and materials were supplied to coal mines on a preferential basis and efforts were concentrated on mines with large deposits and favourable conditions for digging as well as major mines assigned to supply coal to thermal power stations. Along with this, measures were taken to provide coal miners with good living and working conditions—supplying them with health-promoting and essential foods, work suits, shoes and items for labour protection in sufficient amounts.

Efforts were directed also to developing railway transport.

When he visited the then Kim Jong Thae Electric Locomotive Factory in January 2002 and the then June 4 Rolling Stock Factory in October the same year, Kim Jong Il stressed the need to increase the production of locomotive engines and rolling stocks and repair them promptly. Under his guidance measures were adopted to enhance the strength of railways and facilities so as to increase the traffic capacity of railways and ensure their safety, and supply steel and power sufficiently to the sector of railway transport. Meanwhile, the railway sector scrupulously organized traffic and transportation, introduced a uniform traffic control system and tightened discipline and order.

Kim Jong Il directed attention to the simultaneous development of light industry and agriculture in order to improve the people's standard of living.

In many works including *On Some Tasks Arising in Improving the People's Standard of Living*, a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 23, 2000 and *Improving the People's Standard of Living Decisively Is the Most Important Task in the Revolution Advanced by Our Party at Present*, a talk to senior officials of the WPK, state and economic organs on April 4, 2007, he clarified the tasks for improving the people's standard of living.

He led the country to develop light industry so as to increase the production of consumer goods.

Efforts were concentrated on solving the problem of daily necessities, increasing the production of consumer goods favoured by the people and enhancing their quality.

To modernize light industry, existing factories were upgraded and at the same time new ones equipped with latest technology were built and provinces, cities and counties modernized one or two locally-run factories in conformity with their conditions.

Kim Jong Il made painstaking efforts to carry out the WPK's policy on making a revolutionary change in agriculture.

In several works including *On Thoroughly Implementing Our Party's Policy on Agricultural Revolution*, a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on May 21, 2003, he clarified problems arising in maintaining the principle of sowing the right crop on the right soil at the right time as required by the Juche farming method.

He explained that it was necessary to redesign the country's structure of agricultural production in a bold manner on the principle of sowing the right crop on the right soil; it was reasonable to plant rice and maize in the areas suitable for their growth, but in the northern mountainous areas potatoes and other crops that grow well there should be cultivated; the opinion of farmers should be respected and they should be allowed to select the crops suited to the climatic and soil conditions of their regions.

He also ensured that each item of farm work was done in good time on the principle of cultivating the right crop in the right season.

In a talk titled, *The Key Point of Agricultural Revolution Is a Seed Revolution*, given to senior officials of the WPK and the KPA on October 12, 2004, he advanced tasks to be tackled in making a seed revolution.

In order to make a seed revolution, it was necessary to establish Juche principle in seed selection, breed various superior species suitable to the climatic and soil conditions of the country, bring in high-yield species from foreign countries and perfect techniques for cultivating the seeds of high-yield species and methods of tending them.

Seed selection and seed breeding were defined as major component parts of a seed revolution and seeds of high-yield species were collected and supplied to farms.

A radical change was effected in potato cultivation, opening a bright prospect for boosting agricultural production.

When he visited Taehongdan County, Ryanggang Province, in October 1, 1998, Kim Jong Il explained the need to make a revolutionary change in potato cultivation. In several works including *On Turning Taehongdan County into a Model in a Revolution in Potato Cultivation and a Communist Paradise Good to Live in*, a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on March

21, 2000 he resolved the problems arising in effecting a fresh turn in potato production.

A struggle was launched to turn Taehongdan County into a model in bringing about a radical change in potato cultivation, in the course of which scientific farming method of Taehongdan style was created.

Kim Jong Il visited the county on several occasions including in August 1999 and March 2000, leading it to realize comprehensive mechanization of farming and intensify research into potato cultivation. Then he ensured that farming machines were supplied to the county, all problems arising in its potato cultivation were resolved and the whole country helped the county in its potato cultivation.

When he visited the county in October 2002, he emphasized that potato should be cultivated on an extensive scale in mountainous areas like Paegam, Pujon and Jangjin counties by generalizing the scientific farming method created in Taehongdan County.

Under his guidance a change was made also in double cropping and soybean cultivation.

In his talks titled, *On Thoroughly Carrying Out the Party's Policy of Double Cropping*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on June 17, 2002 and *On Bringing About an Upturn in Soybean Farming*, to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on October 12 and December 10, 2004 he clarified problems arising in double cropping and soybean farming. When he gave on-site guidance at farms under the KPA on October 1, 2002, in June 2003 and on other occasions, he led the KPA to set an example in double cropping and soybean farming and generalize its experiences across the country.

Meanwhile, great efforts were made to build modern stock-breeding and fish farms.

Kim Jong Il ensured that socialist principles and principle of gaining real profits were strictly maintained in economic management.

He pointed out that what was essential in economic management was to find out an economic management method for gaining the greatest profits while holding fast to socialist principles and that it was important to apply socialist principles and the principle of gaining real profits and ensure quality on the highest level when building factories and dealing with economic affairs.

He led the effort to build an economic giant through a new revolutionary upsurge.

He kindled the torch of a new revolutionary upsurge and enlisted the entire WPK and all the people in the struggle.

He said:

“In order to open wide the gates of a great, prosperous and powerful country in 2012 which will be the 100th anniversary of the birth of the great leader, we should raise a strong wind of a new revolutionary upsurge on all fronts by inheriting the tradition of the grand Chollima upsurge created by him.”

He kindled the torch of Kangson, a torch of a new revolutionary upsurge.

In April and May 2008 and on several other occasions he advanced the task of completing the projects for building a UHP electric arc furnace and a ladle refining furnace in the Chollima Steel Complex by the 60th anniversary of the founding of the DPRK and encouraged the workers of the complex to fully display the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance as they had done in the days of the grand Chollima upsurge after the Fatherland Liberation War. And he ensured that the song *Glow over Kangson* produced 30 years before was re-presented and broadcast and the entire WPK and state rendered the complex a proactive help.

The officials and workers of the complex completed the UHP electric arc furnace project in a few months by displaying the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance.

When he visited the complex on December 24, 2008, Kim Jong Il called on the workers of the complex to raise the torch of another revolutionary upsurge in the spirit and mettle of the grand Chollima upsurge, saying that when the Chollima Steel Complex was fired with revolutionary enthusiasm the whole country could pulsate and that when the workers of the complex pitched into their work filled with vigour the working class of the whole country could move at a fast pace. On December 28 the workers of the complex held a rally in which they made a firm determination to stand in the vanguard of a new revolutionary upsurge and adopted a letter appealing for all other working people across the country to raise a strong wind of a revolutionary upsurge in hearty response to the WPK’s call. In response to their appeal, the whole country turned out in an effort to effect a fresh revolutionary upsurge.

The joint editorial of *Rodong Sinmun*, the organ of the WPK, *Joson Inmingun*, the organ of the KPA and *Chongnyon Jonwi*, the organ of the youth league, dated January 1, 2009 set forth for all the WPK members and other working people objectives, direction and tasks of the struggle for a new revolutionary upsurge.

From the start of the year 2009 Kim Jong Il provided on-site guidance at KPA units and various sectors of the national economy so as to make the

flames of the torch of Kangson spread across the country.

With the flames of a new revolutionary upsurge flaring up, he proposed waging 150-day and 100-day campaigns and led them to victory.

On March 28 and April 1, 2009, he said to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee that 150-day and 100-day campaigns should be launched one after another in order to stoke the flames of a new revolutionary upsurge and step up the building of an economic giant.

He paid close attention to bringing the spiritual strength of the people into full play throughout the campaigns.

To this end Party guidance teams were organized and dispatched to various units on a mission to play an active role in inspiring the masses to a new revolutionary upsurge. When giving on-site guidance at various sectors, Kim Jong Il would acquaint himself with the work of the teams and urge them to give efficient Party-oriented assistance to the production at the units under their charge and focus on carrying out the WPK's mass line.

In his talk titled, *Let Us Raise the Flames of a Revolutionary Upsurge More Fiercely on All Fronts of Building a Great, Prosperous and Powerful Country by Dint of the Great Spiritual Strength of Kim Il Sung's Nation*, given to officials of the WPK, the KPA and state and economic organs on June 25, 2009, he clarified the tasks and ways for bringing the people's spiritual strength into full play in the gigantic struggle to build a thriving country.

During the days of the campaigns great efforts were continuously directed to boosting the four vanguard sectors of the national economy, at the same time as making the flames of an upsurge flare up in machine-building, chemical, building-material, mining and all other sectors of heavy industry.

In September and December 2009 Kim Jong Il visited the Songjin Iron and Steel Complex and encouraged the complex to establish the Juche-based iron production system. And he also ensured that other factories and enterprises in the metal industry sector perfected the Juche-based iron production system and method in conformity with their own conditions by introducing the latest scientific and technological achievements, thus increasing their production.

In his talk titled, *Let Us Decisively Ease the Shortage of Electricity by Concentrating All Efforts*, given to senior officials of the WPK, state and economic organs on May 27, 2009, he advanced the tasks and ways for making innovations in the power industry sector during the campaigns.

Having proposed building the Huichon Power Station in January 2009, he visited its construction site in March and September, leading the builders to create the Huichon speed, a new version of the Chollima speed. When he gave

on-site guidance at the Pukchang Thermal Power Complex in August 2009 and the Suphung Power Station in October 2009, he called for a dynamic drive to ease the strain on electricity supply.

During his inspection of the Anju Area Coal Mining Complex in March 2009 and the February 8 Jiktong Youth Coal Mine in August that year he referred to the need to boost coal production. Meanwhile, he saw to it that the railway transport sector brought about a drastic turn in transportation through efficient organization and guidance, modernized railways and consolidated the material and technological foundations of railway transport.

His energetic guidance produced brilliant fruits in various sectors. The machine-building industry sharply increased the production of machine tools, oxygen plants, power generators, compressors, lorries and tractors and their parts, and the chemical industry brought the gasification line project at Namhung to completion and stepped up a similar project at Hungnam. The mining industry boosted production at the Taehung Youth Hero Mine, Komdok Mining Complex, Ryongyang Mine and other mines, and the building-materials industry built the Taedonggang Tile Factory as a comprehensive building-material production base and increased the production of cement, glass and other quality goods.

Thanks to Kim Jong Il's leadership the 150-day and 100-day campaigns were wound up with flying colours, resulting in the consolidation of the country's economic foundations.

Kim Jong Il led the country in its final charge for opening the gates of a thriving nation in the same mettle as was displayed to bring the campaigns to victorious completion.

He defined the construction site of the Huichon Power Station as a forefront of the struggle for building a thriving nation and visited it on January 3, 2010 as the first leg of his on-site guidance tour for the year. Since then he visited the site several times every year, leading the builders to work in the charging spirit and mettle of All at Once and thus complete in three years the project which had been estimated to take ten.

As the flames of Hamnam, the flames of an industrial revolution in the new century, kindled by Kim Jong Il flared up in the country, epoch-making events took place one after another and the country's economy took the course of becoming a knowledge-based one.

While giving on-site guidance at the then Huichon General Machine-Tool Factory in December 2010 and on several other occasions, Kim Jong Il led the factory to develop into the country's leading CNC machine-tool manufacturer (Later the factory was renamed the Huichon Ryonha General Machine-Building

Factory). Subsequently, even small locally-run factories, to say nothing of major sectors of the national economy including the metal, power, coal-mining industries and railway transport, proactively introduced CNC technology by following the example set by the factory which had achieved a rapid development in the production of the latest CNC machine-tools.

Kim Jong Il placed the workers and other people in South Hamgyong Province in the vanguard of the charge for building an economic giant, encouraging them to raise the flames of Hamnam.

To this end, he inspected the province almost every month every year. In this course the February 8 Vinalon Complex opened bright prospects for putting the production of vinalon on a regular footing and the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex completed the first-stage project for coal gasification line, resulting in fertilizers being mass-produced through Juche-based method. And the Taehung Youth Hero Mine and the Tanchon Magnesite Factory succeeded in making magnesite clinker industry Juche-based. Eye-opening innovations were made also in the construction of Tanchon Port. As a result, the flames of Hamnam flared up.

Reflected in the flames of Hamnam are the unflinching offensive spirit that one carries out the tasks given by the WPK at the earliest possible date and at the highest level, strong sense of national self-respect with which to beat the world by one's own effort and mettle of pioneer that one will make one's own village and workplace a model unit in opening the gates of a thriving country.

Thanks to Kim Jong Il's wise leadership the DPRK entered the epochal stage of opening the gates of a thriving country to mark the 100th anniversary of the birth of Kim Il Sung.

7. DRASTICALLY IMPROVING THE PEOPLE'S STANDARD OF LIVING TO MARK THE 100TH ANNIVERSARY OF THE BIRTH OF KIM IL SUNG

The Korean people were greeting the 100th anniversary of the birth of Kim Il Sung while on a grand onward march for glorifying the period of historic change in accomplishing the cause of building a thriving socialist country under Kim Jong Il's leadership.

Kim Jong Il advanced a grand objective of opening the gates of a thriving country to mark the day.

In his talk titled, *The Functions and Role of Party Cells Must Be Constantly Enhanced As Required by the Developing Revolution*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on October 27, 2007 and other talks to them on January 2 and 6, 2008 he set the objective of opening the gates of a thriving country to mark the 100th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth by launching a general offensive campaign from 2008.

He said:

“The year 2012 is a meaningful one which will be the 100th anniversary of the President's birth. By accelerating the building of an economic giant, we must open wide the gates of a great, prosperous and powerful country under the clear and blue sky over this land in the year of the 100th anniversary of his birth.”

He decided to drastically improve the people's standard of living to mark the day.

To this end he ensured that light industry and agriculture were decisively shored up.

In his talk titled, *Let Us Bring About a Radical Turn in Improving the People's Standard of Living by Focusing on Light Industry and Agricultural Production*, given to senior officials of the WPK, state and economic organs on March 31, 2010, he clarified the problems arising in drastically improving the people's standard of living by developing light industry and agriculture and took steps to focus the efforts of the entire WPK and state on this.

Priority was given to light industry and efforts were concentrated on it so as to solve the problem of consumer goods.

A drive was launched to upgrade outmoded and backward equipment and production lines at the existing light industry factories and build new factories equipped with the latest technologies.

In this course, fully-automated foodstuff factories were built and production lines and equipment of textile mills and daily necessities factories were modernized, laying foundations for increasing the production of consumer goods.

In April 2009 Kim Jong Il ensured that the Samilpho Speciality Factory kindled the flames of the development of foodstuff industry and its example was generalized across the country. He also gave on-site guidance at foodstuff, textile, knitwear, footwear, daily necessities factories and enterprises, urging

them to put production on a normal track and improve the quality of their products.

Meanwhile, he took measures to boost production at factories and enterprises related with light industry so as to supply the latter with sufficient amounts of raw and other materials and fund in time, and make the production of raw and other materials for light industry Juche-based.

In particular, he inspected the February 8 Vinalon Complex on several occasions including in May 2008 and February and November 2009, clarifying objectives of its renovation stage by stage and ways and means for their implementation and solving knotty problems arising in the project. As a result, the huge project of replacing almost all existing production lines with new ones and introducing CNC technology into the production lines was completed in a matter of two years.

When he visited the complex on February 7 and 9, 2010 he expressed great satisfaction to see vinalon cotton being mass-produced after 16 years of suspension. On March 5, 2010 he sent a message of his special thanks to the workers, technicians and officials of the February 8 Vinalon Complex who had produced great jubilation throughout the country by building a modern vinalon plant. And on March 6 he attended a mass rally of Hamhung citizens in celebration of the commissioning of the plant and extended warm congratulations to the workers of the complex and other Hamhung citizens.

And he visited the complex in August 2010, January, August, October and December 2011 and led it to renovate the horizontal spinning workshop, fibre workshop and all other production lines and ensure their normal operation.

Enormous efforts were channelled into developing locally-run industry.

When he inspected Changsong County in November 2010 he kindled the flames of the development of locally-run industry and referred to the need for all cities and counties to step up technological upgrading of the locally-run factories in conformity with their actual conditions and increase production by relying on locally available raw materials.

He ensured that the August 3 consumer goods production movement which holds a great share in the production of consumer goods was steadily pushed forward along with the development of state-run light industry and local industry.

Looking round the exhibition of consumer goods produced in South Hamgyong Province on August 3, 2010, he advanced the task of dynamically pushing ahead with the movement. In January 2011 when he examined *Sorikkot*-brand ice-shaver manufactured by a factory as an August 3 article he

stated that factories and enterprises should increase the production of consumer goods.

Under Kim Jong Il's leadership an upturn was effected also in agricultural production.

Primary efforts were directed to boosting the production of food grains so as to ease the country's food situation.

In his talks titled, *To Solve the Problem of Food by Effecting an Innovation in the Production of Grains Is the Most Pressing Task Arising in Socialist Economic Construction at Present*, given to senior officials of the WPK, state and economic organs on April 8, 2009 and *On Decisively Solving the Problem of Food by Bringing About a Great Innovation in Farming*, to senior officials of the WPK, state and economic organs on January 28, 2011, Kim Jong Il said that an innovation should be made in the production of grains by concentrating all efforts on farming.

The Migok Cooperative Farm in Sariwon, Samjigang Cooperative Farm in Jaeryong County, Sinam Cooperative Farm in Ryongchon County, Unhung Cooperative Farm in Thaechon County and Tongbong Cooperative Farm in Hamju County waged a socialist competition with one another and other farms across the country followed their examples to increase per-hectare yield.

The state increased investment in the agricultural sector and all other sectors and units supplied it with equipment and materials needed for farming prior to farming seasons and on a preferential basis and rendered active labour assistance to rural communities. Kim Jong Il gave on-site guidance at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex in February and November 2009, August 2010 and January and October 2011, and the Namhung Youth Chemical Complex in May 2009, June 2010 and May 2011 and led them to step up technological upgrading and modernization projects so as to boost the production of fertilizers.

He paid close attention also to developing livestock, fruit and fish farming which have a great bearing on the people's livelihood.

He ensured that newly-built poultry, pig, goat farms and rabbit-breeding farms operated at full capacity.

In 2009 he put forward a plan for building a large fruit farm in the Wonhung area. Later he visited thus-built Taedonggang Combined Fruit Farm on several occasions including in November 2009, June 2010 and July 2011, leading it to develop into a model fruit farm of the country.

Pursuant to the task given to them by Kim Jong Il, the soldier-builders of the Korean People's Internal Security Forces and members of the Construction

Shock Brigade 618 realigned more than 1 000 hectares of land, planted several million fruit trees in the area and built the Taedonggang General Fruit Processing Factory, Taedonggang Net Factory, Taedonggang Pig Farm, a dried sliced fruit factory, a fruit storehouse and all other facilities needed for producing and processing fruit, all in a little more than two years.

Kim Jong Il visited the Kosan Fruit Farm in June 2009 and June 2011 and Ryongjon and Toksong fruit farms in May 2011 and instructed that the modernization of the fruit farms should be pushed forward in a bold way.

Meanwhile, he inspected the expanded Kujang Fish Farm in August 2009 and May 2011, a salmon research institute in October 2009 and Ryongjong Fish Farm in November 2010 and urged them to introduce advanced fish rearing methods extensively so as to increase production and make the people enjoy the benefit of fish farming.

He led the effort to solve the housing problem for the people.

Of particular note in this effort was the renovation of Mansudae Street into a model in the Songun era.

On several occasions he advanced the task of pulling down all the old apartment blocks in Mansudae Street and building in their place new modern ones that would be representative of the 21st century and appropriate to the looks of a thriving nation.

When he examined on December 27, 2007 the sand table of the street to be renovated, he emphasized that its formation and the interior of flats should be laid out on the highest level, before proposing that the street be named Mansudae Street. Later, he organized a competent construction force, gave instructions about it scores of times and solved all problems arising in the construction.

Thanks to his leadership, the project was completed in a year and two months.

Consequently, many modern dwelling houses were built, modelled on those of Mansudae Street.

When he looked round the newly-built apartments in Mansudae Street on October 20, 2009, Kim Jong Il called on officials and builders to create new Pyongyang speed of the Songun era in the renovation of the capital city in the new century and thus usher in another Pyongyang heyday by following the example of the creators of Pyongyang speed in the 1950s and the pacesetters of Pyongyang heyday in the 1970-80s.

In his talk titled, *Let Us Dynamically Step Up the Construction of 100 000 Dwelling Houses Which Has Been Assigned by the Party*, delivered to senior

officials of the WPK, state and economic organs on May 26, 2010, he noted that the construction of 100 000 dwelling houses was the most important task advanced by the WPK and as the WPK had proclaimed to the world and promised the people, they should be built by the set date and without fail.

In April 2011 he proposed that Changjon Street be built to mark the 100th anniversary of the birth of Kim Il Sung. Later, he examined the master plan of the street several times and gave instructions on building it on the highest level as required by the new century. Thus the project was completed as planned.

Provinces and rural communities also built modern dwelling houses and villages suited to their characteristic features. Typical examples were Churi (plum) Village in Migok-ri, Salgu (apricot) Village and Hwangjin Onchon (spa) Village.

Kim Jong Il channelled efforts also into improving the work of supplying commodities and public welfare service.

He paid primary attention to having the people's demand for daily necessities met by improving supply work.

Thanks to his concern amenities including department stores were splendidly refurbished, commercial facilities and equipment modernized and the prices of commodities adjusted. And well-knit commodity supply networks were set up so as to sell commodities to the people on a regular basis, the form of showcasing and method of service improved and the spirit of service of attendants enhanced.

In 2011, the last year of his life, he visited many commercial organs, for example, the second commodity exhibition at Pyongyang Department Store No. 1 in July, Pothongmungori Meat and Fish Shop in September and Kwangbok Area Supermarket in December, and earnestly told the officials and attendants in the commercial sector to decisively improve their work by displaying the spirit of devoted service for the people.

Reflecting his love for the people, many modern public service establishments including Pothonggang Department Store and Pothonggang Shop were erected in Pyongyang. And Mansugyo Meat and Fish Shop and Mirae Shop were built and opened to the public to mark the 100th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth.

Kim Jong Il paid heed to improving public catering service.

For this he took measures to refurbish Okryu and Chongnyu restaurants into excellent public catering bases and renovate Hyangmanru Restaurant and other service centres in line with the daily-increasing cultural and emotional demands of the people.

Along with this Delicacy Restaurant of Okryu Restaurant specializing in world-famous terrapin, sturgeon and quail dishes as well as Korean traditional dishes was built as a “pedigree farm” of the development of the country’s culinary art.

Kim Jong Il visited various public catering establishments in the capital and provinces, encouraging them to improve their cooking skills, ensure the safety of food and ceaselessly enhance the level of their operation and service.

Under his guidance welfare service for the people was also improved.

In order to turn the country into a civilized socialist one and provide the people with better conditions for cultural and emotional life, he took measures to build new comprehensive service facilities and refurbish existing amenities. Thus Ryugyong Health Complex, a public welfare service centre of Changgwang Health Complex style, was erected in the eastern part of Pyongyang and hundreds of health complexes were renovated across the country.

The qualifications of those engaged in public service were raised, resulting in the organization and method of service work being improved on the principle of ensuring the interests and convenience of the people to the maximum.

Kim Jong Il paid attention to improving the people’s cultural and emotional life as required by the developing times and their ever-increasing cultural and emotional demands.

Under his leadership modern establishments for cultural and emotional life and cultural resorts were built in many parts of the country.

In Pyongyang many theatres and cinemas were facelifted and the People’s Theatre was built in the Mansudae area as a monumental structure representing the Songun era to mark the 100th anniversary of the birth of Kim Il Sung.

Theatres or halls of culture were newly built or renovated in provinces, cities, counties, factories and enterprises, a typical example being the Art Theatre of North Hwanghae Province.

Meanwhile, pleasure parks, recreational grounds and zoos were also newly built or spruced up.

In July 2008 Kim Jong Il proposed renovating Kaeson Youth Park into a comprehensive cultural resort. Looking round the renovated amusement park of Kaeson Youth Park in April 2010 and December 2011, he pointed out that it should be operated properly lest the visitors should find the slightest inconvenience.

And the pleasure parks in Mts. Ryongak and Myohyang were renovated, adding beauty to the mountains and a pleasure park composed of an amusement park, an alpa mare and a dolphinarium was newly built in Rungna Islet in Pyongyang. Kim Jong Il visited the Central Zoo in Pyongyang several times as part of his effort to renovate it into a major base for the cultural and emotional life of the working people and youth and students and their education.

He channelled efforts into building modern bases for developing and producing electronic facilities and equipment conducive to the people's cultural and emotional life.

As a DVD factory equipped with cutting-edge technology was built in Mokran Video Company, larger numbers of multimedia could be provided to the people. And the production of various kinds of electronic devices including LCD TV was increased. Hana Music Information Centre was built as a comprehensive base for collecting, editing and disseminating information related with music and dance of the country and the rest of the world. On December 15, 2011, a few days before his death, he visited the centre and presented musical pieces he had collected for scores of years.

Thanks to his leadership the people's material and cultural life was improved on a higher level to mark the 100th anniversary of Kim Il Sung's birth, resulting in a radical turn in their effort to open the gates of a thriving country.

8. SPRUCING UP THE APPEARANCE OF THE COUNTRY

Kim Jong Il led the effort to spruce up the appearance of the country.

He said:

“By better conserving and sprucing up the mountains and rivers of our country, we should turn it into a socialist golden tapestry of the Workers’ Party’s era, which is beautiful and rich in all kinds of resources.”

Covering Pyongyang and all other cities and regions across the country with trees and flowers was of importance in sprucing up the appearance of the country.

Kim Jong Il paid special attention to refurbishing the area of the then Kumsusan Memorial Palace.

As Kim Il Sung is kept in his lifetime appearance there, the palace is

regarded as the supreme sanctuary of Juche for the Korean people and all other progressive peoples of the world.

As part of an effort to add beauty to the landscape of the palace, large numbers of excellent species of trees and flowering plants were planted and lawns were created around it and in its arboretum.

Efforts were also directed to landscaping the revolutionary sites in Pyongyang including that at Mangyongdae and the parks, pleasure grounds and roadsides in the city.

On March 3, 2011 when Kim Jong Il visited the Pyongyang Floricultural Research Institute established in July 2000, he stressed the need to intensify research into flowers and put flower cultivation on a scientific and industrial footing so as to increase the production of flowers. To encourage the people to cultivate flowering plants, modern flower greenhouses were built and flower shops set up in many parts of Pyongyang.

Kim Jong Il led provinces, cities and counties to landscape their towns and villages.

To this end the Construction Shock Brigade 618 was formed charged with a mission to renovate the revolutionary battle sites in the Mt. Paektu area and spruce up Samjiyon into a county in forest and all cities and counties were encouraged to follow the examples of Riwon County, South Hamgyong Province, and Manpho, Jagang Province, in landscaping.

Kim Jong Il paid concern to the administration and protection of the land of the country.

Under his guidance large-scale land realignment project was carried out, changing the appearance of the land as befitting that of a socialist country. In pursuance of the plan Kim Jong Il unfolded on May 4, 1998, land realignment project was undertaken in Kangwon, North Phyongan, South Hwanghae, South Phyongan provinces and Pyongyang and Nampho in succession.

In his talk titled, *Improving the Layout of Fields Is a Great Transformation of Nature for the Prosperity of the Country, a Patriotic Work of Lasting Significance*, given to officials during his on-site guidance for the development of the layout of fields in North Phyongan Province on January 24 and 27, 2000 and on several other occasions he clarified the tasks to be tackled in realigning land. And he led the land realignment projects on site.

He pushed forward tideland reclamation.

While guiding the Taegyedo tideland reclamation project on site on June 13, 2008 and July 5, 2009, he stressed the need to complete the project at an early date.

As the reclamation project was completed, arable land as wide as a county was obtained.

When he visited the reclaimed tideland on July 15, 2010 he praised the reclaimers for their feats and noted that the slogan “When the Party is determined, we can do anything!” was advanced by the KPA in the 1980s and now it was time to uphold a new slogan **“Korea does what it is determined to do!”** Then he suggested awarding Order of Kim Il Sung to the North Phyongan Tideland Reclamation Complex for having completed the reclamation project and thus implemented the President’s instruction, and Kim Il Sung Prize to the design for the project.

He paid close attention also to protecting land and improving soil fertility.

In his talk titled, *On Taking Thoroughgoing Measures for Preventing Damage from Flooding*, delivered to senior officials of the WPK, state and economic organs on April 2, 2008 and on other occasions, he underlined the need to adopt measures to prevent arable land from being eroded or washed away by flooding or other sorts of natural calamities, and to improve land by putting on humus soil, spreading large amounts of slaked lime and organic fertilizer and planting cover crops.

Under Kim Jong Il’s guidance, headway was also made in planting forests and conserving them.

In his talk titled, *Let Us Build Our Country into a Beautiful Land of the Age of the Workers’ Party through Effective Forest and Water Conservation*, given to senior officials of the WPK, the state and the KPA on March 6, 2002 and on several other occasions he said that it was a plan and determination of the WPK to turn the land on which the Korean nation had lived through generations into a socialist earthly paradise, a beautiful land of the age of the WPK, which was beautiful and abundant in everything, by better conserving and sprucing them up in the present time and clarified all matters arising in creating and maintaining forests.

Forest planting was conducted in a prospective and planned way.

In order to ensure that precedence would be given to saplings production, Kim Jong Il provided on-site guidance at the central and provincial nurseries.

When he visited the nursery workshop of the Riwon County Forestry Management Station on August 8, 2008 and the Central Nursery under the Ministry of Land and Environment Protection on October 2, 2009 and October 9, 2011, he referred to the need to build up nurseries so as to increase their

production capacity and put saplings production on a scientific, industrial and intensive basis.

Tree planting was conducted in a mass drive and due attention was paid to tending the trees. The entire WPK, the whole country and all the people were encouraged to plant trees during the general mobilization periods in every spring and autumn and tree-planting seasons. Kim Jong Il himself planted a tree with soldiers during his inspection of a KPA unit in March 2004.

Efforts were made to turn all the mountains of the country into “gold mountains” and “treasure mountains” by planting many trees of excellent species on the principle of planting the right tree on the right soil and in the orientation of creating mixed forests. Emphasis was put on planting trees as required by technical regulations and taking good care of them, so as to raise their survival rate.

Remarkable successes were registered in reforestation and forest protection.

On July 1, 2008 when he visited the Ogasan Nature Reserve in Hwaphyong County, Jagang Province and on several other occasions, Kim Jong Il reiterated the need to intensify education and control so that people would not fell trees at random, solve the problem of firewood for them and take thoroughgoing measures to prevent damage from forest fire and pests.

The ranks of forest rangers were reinforced and a campaign launched to emulate the forest ranger in charge of Taeri Workers’ District of the Kangdong County Forestry Management Station, who was a hero of the era, was launched.

Efforts were exerted to step up gravitational waterway projects and improve rivers.

Gravitational waterway projects were forcefully pushed forward.

On January 23, 2000 Kim Jong Il instructed senior officials of the WPK Central Committee that the WPK, KPA and all the people should be enlisted in the Kaechon-Lake Thaesong Waterway project and ensured that the DPRK National Defence Commission issued an order with this regard on February 24. Under his guidance, the gigantic Kaechon-Lake Thaesong Waterway project was brought to completion in a little more than two years.

In November 2002 he initiated the Paekma-Cholsan Waterway project and led it to be carried out with success. When he inspected the completed waterway on December 4, 2005, he unfolded a plan for building a waterway project for irrigating the Miru Plain.

After the completion of the project many small- and medium-scale

waterways were built in many parts of the country, greatly improving the irrigation system and the appearance of the country.

Close attention was paid also to improving rivers.

On several occasions including in his talk to senior officials of the WPK, state and economic organs on April 2, 2008 and in his talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on February 9, 2011, Kim Jong Il stressed the need to dredge the Chongchon, Pothong and other major rivers and repair their embankments on a regular basis. While acquainting himself in January 2011 with the structures, operation principles and functions of newly-manufactured dredgers, he said that dredging work should be mechanized on a higher level.

Under his concern roads were modernized and railways were improved.

More motor roads, highways, industrial roads, roads for revolutionary battle site expedition and tourist roads were built and relief roads constructed around cities. Along with this, roads was enhanced in technical state and newly paved, thereby raising the quality of the overall road network of the country.

When Kim Jong Il met the members of the family workteam on Kubong Pass of the Road Repair and Maintenance Company of Songgan County, Jagang Province, in August 2000, he highly appreciated their patriotic deeds and said that the whole country should follow their example.

Meanwhile, a brisk campaign to improve the railways of the country was waged.

Persistent efforts were made to step up the construction of railways and raise their strength.

In September 2009 Kim Jong Il gave instructions on building a firm base for producing rails at the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex. He ensured that the entire WPK and the whole country assisted the complex in heavy rails production and relevant units supplied equipment and materials needed for their production on a preferential basis. And he took other measures to step up the production of heavy rails. Afterwards, he visited the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex several times and stressed that the complex should put the heavy rails production line into operation at an early date.

When he gave on-site guidance at the Rahung Concrete Sleeper Factory in September 2001, he underlined the need to upgrade the factory and increase its capacity. At the same time he ensured that the Sunghori Concrete Sleeper Factory was expanded to mark the 60th anniversary of the founding of the WPK so as to solve the problem of sleeper and state measures were taken to supply

raw and other materials including cement and steel needed for improving railways on a preferential basis.

Meanwhile, a societywide drive was launched to construct and maintain railways in a responsible manner.

A well-knit system was set up under which provinces repaired and maintained the railways within their boundaries by their own effort.

The youth league repaired and renovated the northern railways and a mass drive was waged to better lay out railway stations and the areas around railways.

Successes were also registered in laying out the west and east coasts.

Efforts were made to build strong protective facilities including embankments and maintain them well and create windbreak forests in a prospective way so as to prevent damage from tidal wave and typhoon.

Thanks to Kim Jong Il's wise leadership, the appearance of the land of the country was spruced up and the whole country was turned into a socialist golden tapestry of the WPK's era, which was beautiful and rich in all kinds of resources.

9. USHERING IN A HEYDAY OF SONGUN CULTURE

Kim Jong Il led the effort to usher in a heyday of Songun culture in keeping with the requirements for building a thriving socialist country.

First of all, he paid close attention to thoroughly implementing the WPK's policy of attaching importance to science and technology and thus rapidly developing the country's science and technology.

He said:

“Science and technology are a propellant for the building of a thriving country, and this goal can successfully be attained only when the efforts to that end are supported scientifically and technologically.”

In a talk titled, *On Making a Decisive Advance in the Building of a Great, Prosperous and Powerful Socialist Country*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on January 1, 2000, he defined science and technology as one of the three pillars in building a thriving nation. And in a talk titled, *On Thoroughly Implementing the Party's Policy on Attaching Importance to Science and Technology*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on October 15, 2003 and several other works, he threw light on the basic requirements of the policy and tasks to be tackled in carrying it out.

The basic requirements of the policy were to rapidly develop cutting-edge science and technology in a short period of time, raise the country's science and technology to the world standard and provide a firm scientific and technological guarantee for the building of a thriving socialist country.

In order to carry out the policy to the letter, it was essential to correctly define the basic orientation of the development of science and technology and concentrate efforts on it, and go beyond the cutting edge by bringing about a great leap forward in the development of science and technology. It was also important to bring science and technology close to production, enhance the role of scientists and technicians and enlist the entire WPK, the whole country and all the people in developing science and technology.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the climate of giving importance to science and technology prevailed throughout society.

He defined 1999 as a year of science and led officials to have a right view of science and technology and stand in the vanguard in learning advanced science and technology. He also saw to it that all units complied with the requirements of science and technology and that scientists and technicians were treated on a preferential basis and provided with all conditions for work and life. The National Conferences of Scientists and Technicians in March 1999 and October 2003, National Conference of Pioneers of the Scientists and Technicians Shock Brigade Movement in October 2005, National Conference of Intellectuals from late November to early December 2007 and National Conference of the Scientists and Technicians in the Songun Era in late March 2010 served as major occasions for greatly inspiring scientists and technicians to turn out in building a thriving nation and for establishing the climate of giving importance to science and technology across society.

Kim Jong Il paid close concern to effecting a great leap forward in the development of science and technology and thus going beyond the cutting edge.

While giving on-site guidance at the State Academy of Sciences in January 1999, Hamhung Branch of the academy, Potato Institute of the Academy of Agricultural Science, Biological Engineering Branch of the State Academy of Sciences and many other scientific research institutes, he aroused scientists and technicians to a campaign to go beyond the cutting edge.

Primary efforts were directed to developing IT, nano and biological technologies, which are core and basic fields, priority being given to IT and programming technology in particular.

Remarkable success was chalked up in establishing the operating system of

the Korean style which is the main link in the whole chain in developing programming technology, the core of IT.

Considerable concern was paid also to developing material, space and other cutting-edge technologies and solving scientific and technological problems arising in building an economic giant.

Under Kim Jong Il's leadership, the DPRK's science and technology were rapidly developed, a living proof of which was its successful launch of artificial earth satellite Kwangmyongsong 2.

Kim Jong Il led the educational sector to bring about a drastic turn in line with the demands of building a thriving nation.

On several occasions including a talk titled, *Kim Chaek University of Technology Is a Powerful Base of Our Country for Training People Talented in Science and Technology*, given to the teaching staff of Kim Chaek University of Technology while giving on-site guidance at the university on September 19, 2001 and a talk *On Bringing About a Revolutionary Turn in Education in Line with the Demands of Building a Thriving Socialist Country*, to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on May 7, 2008, he clarified the main tasks of the educational sector in the Songun era, principles to be adhered to in bringing about a radical turn in education in line with the demands of building a thriving country as well as the ways for implementing them.

For a turn in education he visited many universities, colleges and other schools across the country, encouraging workers in the educational sector to devote their wisdom and energy to their responsibilities.

When he visited Kim Chaek University of Technology in September 2001 and January 2006, Pyongyang Kim Won Gyun Conservatory, Hamhung University of Chemical Engineering, Chongjin University of Mining and Metallurgy, Hamhung University of Medicine, Wonsan University of Agriculture, Huichon University of Technology, Kim Jong Suk University of Education, Hamhung University of Hydraulic Engineering and other universities and colleges, he stressed that they should train larger numbers of people talented in science and technology, who would undertake the sectors of the building of a thriving nation, in conformity with their missions and duties. When he visited Mubong Secondary School, Samjiyon County, Ryanggang Province, in October 2002, Kanggye Jangjasan Hero Secondary School No. 1 in July 2003, Hoeryong Kim Ki Song Secondary School No. 1 in February 2009, Sojung Secondary School, Ragwon County, in April 2009 and Munchon Secondary School in Kangwon Province in August 2009, he encouraged teachers to dedicate their zeal to their work, sometimes attending a class as an observer.

The National Conference of Educational Workers held in October 2004 to mark the 20th anniversary of the publication of Kim Jong Il's work titled, *On Further Developing Educational Work*, was a milestone in mobilizing educational workers to carry out the WPK's educational policy.

Meanwhile, the country's educational system was rearranged and improved on a higher level.

The systems of prodigy training and university and college education were rearranged and the study-while-you-work system of higher education was improved.

Always attentive to all-people education and social education, Kim Jong Il pointed out the important mission of the Grand People's Study House in establishing a revolutionary habit of studying across society and intensifying social education in his talk titled, *The Grand People's Study House Is a Priceless Legacy Bequeathed by President Kim Il Sung and a Grand Palace for All-People Education*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee and the Cabinet on April 11, 2007.

Education at all the universities and colleges was enhanced with Kim Il Sung University as a model.

In his talk titled, *Kim Il Sung University Should Be Built Up into the Highest Institute of Juche-oriented Education and Science and the World's First-class University*, given to senior officials of the WPK and educational sector on December 11, 2009 and on several other occasions including on July 24, 2009 and in a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on September 11, 2009, Kim Jong Il unfolded a grand plan for building up Kim Il Sung University into the world's first-class one. When he visited the university several times in 2009 and the following year, he illumined the orientation and ways for doing so.

Contents and methods of education were enhanced, making it possible to train larger numbers of revolutionary talents who would contribute to building a thriving country.

The contents of education at all levels were formulated in the orientation of intensifying scientific and technical education while giving precedence to political and ideological education, and continuously enhanced and supplemented as suited to the reality when the science and technology were rapidly developing and their level had been raised beyond comparison.

As part of an effort to enhance the methods of education, stress was placed on the thorough application of the heuristic method of education put forward by Kim Il Sung and the use of visual and presentation means such as computer, media player and multimedia were encouraged as required by the IT era. The

title of October 8 Exemplary Educationist and certificate of invention of new educational method were instituted to award to excellent lecturers and teachers exemplary in creating and disseminating new educational methods. And schools at all levels were encouraged to properly combine theory and practice and education and productive labour and improve methods of examining students and assessing their level of knowledge.

Kim Jong Il paid much heed to inspiring the teachers to enhance their sense of responsibility and role and the students to raise enthusiasm for studying.

Teachers were encouraged to improve their politico-ideological traits as career revolutionaries and raise the level of their scientific and theoretical qualification, i.e., practical ability. Along with this, a climate of treating teachers on a preferential basis was set up across society and Order and Medal of Teacher's Honour were instituted in 2008.

Meanwhile, students were encouraged to study hard for the WPK and the revolution, the country and the people, upholding the study-first slogan advanced by the WPK. By sending on December 17, 2009 to Kim Il Sung University an autographed letter reading **“Keep your feet firmly planted on this land and look out over the world! Become dependable pillars of the Songun revolution possessed of ennobling spirit and profound knowledge! Make redoubled efforts to make the great Party and Kim Il Sung’s Korea admired by the world! December 17, 2009. Kim Jong Il,”** Kim Jong Il set clear-cut objective and right view of studying for students.

State backing for and social interest in educational work were strengthened. Primary attention was directed to supplying the educational sector with necessary materials in a preferential and responsible manner. Modern educational equipment was supplied to Kim Il Sung University and other major universities and an e-library and gymnasium were built in Kim Chaek University of Technology. Following this, an e-library and swimming pool were built in Kim Il Sung University. Kim Jong Il visited them four times in 2009 and 2010. Hamhung University of Chemical Engineering, Kim Hyong Jik University of Education and other educational institutes at all levels were also refurbished. A brisk campaign to win the title of model county in educational work was waged and an education fund was founded in 2005 as the first of its kind in the country, facilitating national and international support for education.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the effort to attain a new height of the art and literature in the Songun era.

A strong drive was waged to produce larger numbers of literary and artistic works which embodied the requirements of the Songun era.

Writers were encouraged to go deep into the reality to create literary and artistic works which reflected the reality and the demands of the times. In September 2001 Kim Jong Il went over many works including full-length poem *Lightning Flashes over Mt. Osong*, poems *To Historians in the Distant Future*, *Stars on the Front-Line Post* and *Story of a Soldier on Mt. Osong*, giving his opinions on how to perfect them. And he ensured that writers were provided with adequate conditions for work and life.

Moved by his concern, writers produced many literary and artistic works including full-length novels *Lake Chon*, *The Parade Ground*, *West Sea Campaign* and *Kanggye Spirit*.

A fresh upturn was made also in filmmaking in the Songun era.

Attentive to the creation of fine feature films conducive to educating the service personnel and people, who turned out in building a thriving country, in the spirit of defending socialism and revolutionary awareness, Kim Jong Il inspected newly-produced films, encouraging the creative workers and other artistes in the sector of filmmaking to create excellent films that reflected the Songun era.

Paying much heed to the creation of documentary, science and children's films, Kim Jong Il illuminated the principles to be maintained in making them.

Thanks to his guidance, the country's filmmaking sector registered a fresh success in the new century following the late 1990s by turning out feature films *Pyongyang Nalpharam* and *White Gem* as model works and many documentary, science and children's films.

A new heyday of Juche-based performing arts was ushered in.

In order to bring about a fresh development in musical art, Kim Jong Il led creative workers to produce many excellent pieces, often showing them the direction and methods of their creative work with his extraordinary musical talent. Recognizing the importance of the National Symphony Orchestra, he saw its performance more than 20 times from 2004 to 2011 and set tasks to be tackled in further developing the Juche-oriented symphony orchestral music. And he took measures to renovate Moranbong Theatre, its base of operation.

The troupe staged artistic performance in concert form *The Blue Sky over My Country*, *The Glow over Kangson* and orchestral piece and chorus *The Snow Is Falling* and many other excellent works in 2005 and 2008, greatly contributing to the development of the Juche-oriented musical art.

Kim Jong Il paid due concern to the creation of mass gymnastics and artistic performances.

Under his guidance the mass gymnastics and artistic performance

Ever-Victorious Workers' Party of Korea was created as a masterpiece and staged to greet the 55th anniversary of the WPK. Then he proposed creating a mass gymnastics and artistic performance under the title of *Arirang* to greet the 90th anniversary of the birth of Kim Il Sung and the 70th anniversary of the founding of the KPA and gave meticulous guidance to all the processes of its creation ranging from its seed and content, composition and form to songs.

On August 15, 2007 the mass gymnastics and artistic performance *Arirang* was registered in The Guinness Book of Records.

Meanwhile, many light comedies and dramas that reflected the spirit of the times were created and the *Sea of Blood*-style operas and famous foreign works were re-presented as required by the new century. Light comedy *An Echo among the Hills* was re-presented in 2010 and opera *We Will Recollect Today* was created in 2011. The two theatricals were awarded Kim Il Sung Prize. Korean artistes re-presented many foreign operas and dramas including *A Dream of Red Mansions*, *Eugene Onegin*, *The Butterfly Lovers* and *The Soldier under the Neon Lamp* in 2009 and 2010.

Mass-based cultural and artistic activities were briskly conducted in line with the demands of building a thriving country.

Kim Jong Il ensured that civilians were encouraged to follow the KPA's example of mass-based culture and arts and the guidance system of mass-based cultural and artistic activities was upgraded in March 2003 and October 2007. As part of an effort to have broad masses involved in cultural and artistic activities, he saw to it that art performance contests were organized for the families of workers and office employees like the KPA did for its officers' wives and the April Spring People's Art Festival began to be held from 2008. In April 2010 he saw a performance given by amateur art groups participating in the second festival. And he inquired into the state of mass-based cultural and artistic activities in the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex, universities and colleges in Pyongyang and many other units and led them to conduct artistic activities in a revolutionary way in conformity with the WPK's idea and demand.

He also led the country to bring about a fresh turn in sports and public health.

He paid due attention to the development of sports, especially of the skills of professional sports.

He directed primary efforts to the ideological education of the officials in the sports sector and athletes and in January 2001 referred to the need for them to bring about a new turn in their way and style of work by following the revolutionary spirit of the KPA soldiers.

In February 2001 and on several other occasions he instructed that the sports sector should focus on sports events in which the Korean athletes could excel, so as to gain world supremacy.

In his talk titled, *Let Us Drastically Raise the Level of the Country's Sports by Applying Our-style Principles and Methods of Playing Games*, given to senior officials of the WPK and the KPA on September 12 and 30, 2006, he stressed the need to consistently adhere to the principle of competing with a high degree of ideological awareness, fortitude, speed and skill.

For the rapid development of the country's sports science, he acquainted himself with the progress of the construction of a sports library in February 2002 and took measures to build it on a high standard and convened a national conference of sports scientists in July the same year. And in his talk titled, *On Rapidly Developing Sports Science*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on June 25, 2008, he threw light on the problems in developing the country's sports science.

As part of an effort to implement the policy of making sports mass-based, he watched a sports meeting of artistes at Kim Il Sung Stadium one day in October 2000 and encouraged the participants.

As the country's sports developed rapidly, it produced a marathon queen and a four-time world women's judo champion and its women's football team registered remarkable successes at international games.

Under Kim Jong Il's leadership a fresh turn was made also in public health services.

A dynamic struggle was waged to implement the WPK's policy of preventive medicine on a higher level and improve health services, medical scientific research and the material and technical foundations of the public-health sector. Kim Jong Il visited a newly-built medicine research institute and a syringe factory in December 2000 and the Kanggye Koryo Medicine Factory and Hungnam Pharmaceutical Factory in December 2001 and September 2005, respectively, urging them to boost the production of over-the-counter medicines and medical appliances. The state adopted measures to conserve Kangso and other mineral waters and provide the people with easier access to them.

Kim Jong Il directed heed to establishing a socialist cultured way of life across society and inheriting and developing national cultural heritage.

He led the effort to establish a cultured socialist way of life appropriate to the Songun era.

In a talk titled, *On Establishing a Cultured Socialist Way of Life Appropriate to the Songun Era*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central

Committee on February 10 and July 2, 2003, he underlined the need to launch a powerful drive to establish a cultured way of life across society, as required by the times.

Accordingly, the entire population were encouraged to keep their villages, streets, houses, workplaces and overall living environment clean, dress themselves neatly and enhance the cultural level of their speech and diet, as demanded by the new era.

Kim Jong Il paid attention also to inheriting and developing national cultural heritage.

In order to conserve and maintain historical and cultural relics in their original state and intensify education through them, he visited many historical and cultural relics including Ryangchon Temple in Kowon County in June 2002 and Simwon Temple in Pakchon County and Anbul Temple in Kumya County in February and April 2003, respectively.

In talks titled, *On Positively Sustaining the Fine National Traditions of Our People*, given to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on September 8, 2002 and January 2, 2003 and *The Songs in the Enlightenment Period Are a Precious Musical Legacy of Our Nation*, to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee and in the sector of art and literature on March 20 and 31, 2007 and on other occasions he clarified principles to be adhered to in sustaining the fine manners, customs and traditions of the Korean nation. In December 2008 he proposed building a folk park in the Mt. Taesong area in Pyongyang and gave detailed instructions on its location, size and content, and the direction of its construction.

10. THIRD CONFERENCE OF THE WPK AND BRILLIANT SOLUTION OF THE PROBLEM OF INHERITANCE OF THE CAUSE OF THE SONGUN REVOLUTION

In 2010 when the WPK and the Korean revolution had reached a historic turning point in their development, the WPK convened its third conference to elect its supreme leadership.

Kim Jong Il said:

“At the forthcoming conference we will hold the election of the supreme

leadership of the Workers' Party of Korea in line with the new requirements of the Party itself and the developing revolution as an epochal turn is being made in the effort to accomplish the revolutionary cause of Juche and the cause for building a great, prosperous and powerful socialist country."

On June 23, 2010 the Political Bureau of the WPK Central Committee adopted a resolution titled, *On Holding a Conference of the Workers' Party of Korea*.

The resolution said that the third conference of the WPK to elect its supreme leadership would be held in September 2010 reflecting the new requirements of the Party and the developing revolution as an epochal turn was witnessed in the effort to accomplish the cause for building a thriving socialist country.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the people to greet the third conference of the WPK with high political enthusiasm and brilliant labour feats.

He channelled primary efforts into the organizational and political work to this end.

Accordingly, organs, factories, enterprises, cooperative farms, universities and colleges across the country held meetings. Public lectures were held and such slogans as "Let us greet the conference of the Workers' Party of Korea with high political enthusiasm and brilliant labour feats!" and "Let us greet the conference of the Workers' Party of Korea as a significant event that will shine forever in the history of our Party and country!" were put up in streets, villages and workplaces.

Radios, *Rodong Sinmun* newspaper and other publications carried on intensive information work of imparting the greatness of the WPK to the people and inspiring them to stoke up the flames of a revolutionary upsurge.

Central and local art troupes, mobile artistic motivational teams and amateur artistic groups gave brisk performances enlivening the whole country.

Meanwhile, external information work was also conducted in a proactive way.

Kim Jong Il paid close attention to giving full scope to the political and ideological might of the revolutionary ranks rallied closely behind the WPK.

Ideological education was conducted in various forms and by various methods to implant in the minds of the people an absolute revolutionary faith in the WPK.

The spirit of defending the leader unto death, the nucleus of the spiritual power of single-hearted unity, was fully displayed among the WPK members

and other working people and the WPK's mass line was implemented consolidating the might of single-hearted unity.

Kim Jong Il ensured that a stronger spur was given to the grand onward march for greeting the WPK conference with brilliant labour feats.

He gave on-site guidance to various sectors of the national economy, solving knotty problems in production and construction and encouraging the WPK members and other working people to perform greater labour feats.

On July 15, 2010 he visited the reclaimed Taegyedo tideland and praised the reclaimers saying that they had prepared a proud gift to the conference and it was the greatest and best gift to the conference. While giving on-site guidance at a complex on July 31, 2010, he spoke highly of the workers there for having put the complex on a modern and scientific basis in a short span of time, developed new technologies and produced state-of-the-art electronic equipment and said that they had thus prepared an excellent gift to the 65th founding anniversary of the WPK and its conference.

On August 2, 2010 he visited the February 8 Vinalon Complex and praised the workers at the complex for having chalked up another great success of completing an important project in a short time and increasing the production of vinalon and improving its quality through a mass-based drive for technical renovation.

Under his guidance the country finished more than 250 construction projects and major factories and enterprises fulfilled their yearly plans before the WPK conference and the 65th anniversary of the WPK. The light-industry sector increased production by indices by 1.2 times as compared with the same period of the previous year and numerous workers overfulfilled their yearly plans.

Preparations for the conference were vigorously pushed forward.

On several occasions including in a talk to senior officials of the WPK Central Committee on July 13, 2010 Kim Jong Il stressed the need to make the conference a success.

The prevailing situation when a historic turn was being made in the effort to carry out the revolutionary cause of Juche and the revolutionary cause of Songun demanded that the WPK revise its Rules in such a way as to make it possible to strengthen itself in every respect and further enhance its leadership role.

Reflecting this demand, the revised Rules of the WPK newly provided that Kim Il Sung would be held up as the eternal leader of the WPK and the revolution and accounted for the exploits he had performed for founding and

developing the WPK and the WPK's achievements. It stipulated the composition of the WPK's supreme leadership and its position and role in conformity with the characteristics of the Party as an organizational and ideological integral whole centred around the leadership of the revolution. It defined that the WPK's immediate objective was to build a thriving socialist country in the northern half of Korea and carry out the tasks of national-liberation democratic revolution throughout the country while its ultimate one was to completely realize the independence of the masses of the people by modelling the whole society on the Juche idea. And as required by a new era of the Juche revolution, the duties of the WPK members and the overall contents of work of the WPK organizations at all levels were amended and supplemented, new chapters titled "WPK and the People's Government" and "WPK's Emblem and Flag" were added and the need to intensify the WPK's leadership over the people's government and the youth league and enhance the role of the WPK organizations in the KPA was supplemented.

The drafts of the opening address and resolution of the conference and speeches to be made at the meeting fully reflected the faith and will of the service personnel and people to brilliantly accomplish the cause of building a thriving socialist country under the WPK's leadership.

Conferences of the KPA, provinces and political bureaus were held to elect representatives to the WPK conference. A conference of the KPA Committee of the WPK was held on August 25, 2010, followed by similar meetings of provinces, the Korean People's Internal Security Forces, the Cabinet and ministries of Railways and Culture. The participants in the meetings acclaimed Kim Jong Il as a representative to the WPK conference, reflecting the unanimous will of all the WPK members, KPA service personnel and people. They also elected as representatives to the WPK conference soldiers, working people and officials who were boundlessly faithful to the WPK and the revolution and had displayed patriotic devotion in the struggle for a fresh revolutionary upsurge.

The third WPK conference was held in Pyongyang on September 28, 2010 amid great interest and expectation of all the WPK members, KPA service personnel and other people of the country.

The conference was attended by 1 653 representatives and 517 observers elected at the above conferences of the KPA, provinces and political bureaus.

The conference discussed as the first item of the agenda "On Invariably Holding Up Comrade Kim Jong Il, the Great Leader of the Workers' Party of Korea and Our People, as General Secretary of the Party" and adopted a resolution with this regard.

The second item was the revision of the WPK Rules and the third one, the election of the WPK central leadership.

Reflecting the unanimous will and desire of all the WPK members, KPA service personnel and other people, the conference proclaimed that President Kim Il Sung, the founder of the WPK, would be held up as an eternal member of the WPK's supreme leadership. It also proclaimed that Kim Jong Il, General Secretary of the WPK, was acclaimed as a Member of the Presidium of the Political Bureau of the WPK Central Committee, Member of the Political Bureau of the WPK Central Committee, Member of the WPK Central Committee and Chairman of the WPK Central Military Commission in accordance with the WPK Rules and the regulations for the election of the supreme leadership of the WPK.

The conference elected the central leadership of the WPK.

While leading the effort to build a thriving socialist country, Kim Jong Il paid special attention to solving the problem of inheritance of the revolutionary cause of Songun.

Solving this problem was an urgent demand of the period of a historic turning point when a new century of the Juche era began and people of new generation emerged as leading participants in the revolution and construction.

Those days the WPK, the KPA and the people put absolute trust in Kim Jong Un who possessed outstanding political ability and qualifications and traits of a leader and were unanimous in their desire to acclaim him as the sole successor to Kim Jong Il.

Fascinated by his great personality and exploits, all the WPK members, KPA service personnel and people regarded him as the successor to Kim Jong Il. They called him "General Kim" and "Our General" out of their absolute trust in and respect for him and composed and sang *Footsteps* and many other songs in praise of him.

He was selected as one of the top ten influential people around the world in 2010, which showed the ardent reverence of the world's progressive peoples for him.

Many WPK organizations, KPA service personnel and people across the country sent to the WPK Central Committee letters expressing their determination to hold him in high esteem and carry forward the revolutionary cause of Juche and the revolutionary cause of Songun down through generations under his guidance. In particular the number of letters requesting that he be assigned to an official position in charge of the overall affairs of the WPK, the KPA and the state sharply increased in the lead-up to the third WPK conference.

With this against the background, the third WPK conference was held in September 2010.

According to the unanimous approval of the participants and the organizational will of the WPK, the KPA and the people, the conference acclaimed Kim Jong Un as a member of the WPK's central leadership and a vice-chairman of the WPK Central Military Commission.

On December 30, 2011, a meeting of the Political Bureau of the WPK Central Committee appointed Kim Jong Un as Supreme Commander of the KPA in pursuance of the behest of Kim Jong Il. On April 11, 2012 the fourth WPK conference acclaimed Kim Jong Il as the eternal General Secretary of the WPK and elected Kim Jong Un First Secretary of the WPK, and the Fifth Session of the 12th Supreme People's Assembly of the DPRK held on April 13 acclaimed Kim Jong Il as the eternal Chairman of the DPRK National Defence Commission and elected Kim Jong Un First Chairman of the commission.

In this way the DPRK held Kim Jong Un up in the leadership of the WPK, the state and the KPA and established his leadership system, thereby brilliantly solving the problem of inheriting the revolutionary cause of Songun.

This resulted in the revolutionary cause of Juche and the revolutionary cause of Songun pioneered by Kim Il Sung and led by Kim Jong Il entering a new, higher stage of development under Kim Jong Un's leadership.

11. FOR ACHIEVING THE COUNTRY'S REUNIFICATION ON THE PRINCIPLE OF BY OUR NATION ITSELF

With an unshakable will to realize Kim Il Sung's instructions on national reunification without fail, Kim Jong Il led the effort to achieve the country's reunification on the principle of By Our Nation Itself.

National reunification was Kim Il Sung's lifelong cause and ardent wish as well as the Korean nation's greatest desire and supreme task.

Kim Jong Il paid concern to achieving the tripartite solidarity and alliance of the Koreans in the north and south and abroad.

The visit to Pyongyang by the delegates of the Federation of Democratic Trade Unions of south Korea in April 1999 marked a major occasion in

realizing organizational solidarity between the workers in the north and south.

To create an environment favourable for free travel from the north to the south, Kim Jong Il took measures to accord the trade unions delegates a hearty welcome and hold a football match between workers' teams of the north and the south which was proposed by them.

The south Korean guests arrived in Pyongyang on April 27 and during their stay held working-level talks with their north Korean counterparts at which a joint agreement was adopted.

The agreement recognized that the visit of the delegates of the south Korean trade unions to Pyongyang, the first of its kind since the national division, marked a significant occasion in achieving national reconciliation and unity and reunification cause by applying the three principles of national reunification agreed upon by the north and south and stated that both sides agreed on holding football matches of workers' teams of both sides in Pyongyang and Seoul in August 1999 and in August the following year, respectively.

In April and May 1999 Kim Jong Il emphasized that the reunification movement organizations of the north, the south and abroad should further develop their solidarity and alliance while promoting through joint efforts the preparations for a meeting in memory of the Rev. Mun Ik Hwan who had devoted his all to the patriotic work for national reconciliation and reunification throughout his life and the Tenth Pan-National Rally.

A meeting in memory of the Rev. Mun was thus held in Longjing, China, on June 1 that year, attended by the north's Council for National Reconciliation, the south's National Coalition and many other reunification movement organizations and individual persons from the north, the south and abroad.

At the meeting the reunification movement organizations reached a consensus on co-sponsoring a grand August 15 reunification festival with the Pan-National Alliance for Korea's Reunification (Pomminryon), and the National Coalition expressed its determination to defend the South Headquarters of Pomminryon and achieve solidarity and alliance with Pomminryon.

Under Kim Jong Il's guidance the Tenth Pan-National Rally-99 Grand Reunification Festival for the Independence and Great Unity of the Nation, became a pan-national political and cultural festival which was attended by broad sections of pro-reunification, patriotic forces from the north, the south and abroad and contributed to achieving tripartite solidarity and alliance.

Nurturing a plan for raising the tripartite solidarity and alliance on a new higher level with the August 15, 1999 Grand Reunification Festival as a momentum, he suggested naming the tenth pan-national rally in such a way as

to make it reflect the requirements for the tripartite solidarity. Then he reiterated the need to arrange for all the major reunification movement organizations of south Korea to attend the rally.

The Tenth Pan-National Rally-99 Grand Reunification Festival was held as an all-nation political, cultural and sports festival which was attended by broad sections of pro-reunification, patriotic forces from the north, the south and abroad including almost all the major reunification movement organizations of the south such as the National Coalition, Federation of University Student Councils and Federation of Democratic Trade Unions, to say nothing of the South and Overseas Headquarters of Pomminryon, and at which the tripartite solidarity and alliance was achieved.

Kim Jong Il exerted himself to adopt the June 15 north-south joint declaration and implement it, so as to open an epoch-making phase of the country's reunification movement.

He said:

“Songun politics, which is imbued with the principle of national independence and the spirit of love for the country and the people, our policies for national reunification based on it and our positive efforts gave rise to the historic Pyongyang summit, followed by the adoption of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration, and the further development of inter-Korean relations of reconciliation and cooperation in several sectors.”

The year 2000, the last year of the 20th century, saw new developments in the Korean people's movement for national reunification and in the situation in and around the Korean peninsula.

The DPRK had been turned into a strong bulwark of national reunification under the great banner of Songun and the Korean people's movement for national reunification had become more organized and invigorated, tipping the balance between patriotic forces aspiring to reunification and anti-reunification forces in favour of national reunification. Jumping on the bandwagon, south Korea's conservative politicians and even its leadership advocated improved inter-Korean relations.

With a keen insight into this trend of situation, Kim Jong Il, early in 2000, unfolded a plan for opening up an epoch-making turn in the movement for the country's reunification by holding an inter-Korean summit meeting.

On April 8, 2000 the north and south agreed on holding a summit meeting and talks in Pyongyang.

The summit meeting and talks were held in Pyongyang from June 13 to 15

for the first time in the 55-year-long history of national division, drawing the attention of the whole nation.

Kim Jong Il personally went to Pyongyang Airport and received the south Korean president and his party with compatriotic hospitality. From June 13 to 15 he spent much time on ten occasions in working with the south Korean authorities. On the 14th he had one-on-one talks with the south Korean president.

In the one-on-one talks he took the initiative in outlining the important issues related to reunifying the country. He said that it would be best, as they were meeting for the first time, for them to adopt a declaration that would inspire the 70 million Korean people with the hope of national reunification and optimism for the future. His proposals were the independent reunification of the country through a concerted effort by the Korean nation, issues related to the ways for reunifying the country, the repatriation to the north of the unconverted long-term prisoners in the south, the exchange of visits by separated family members and relatives, and the resumption of the inter-Korean dialogue.

On June 15 the north and south adopted and made public a joint declaration.

The North-South Joint Declaration signed by Kim Jong Il and the south Korean president stipulated that the north and south would settle the issue of national reunification independently through a concerted effort by the Korean nation, its master; the north and south, recognizing that there is a common ground in the north's proposal for a federation system at a low level and the south's proposal for a commonwealth system, would work for national reunification on the basis of the common ground; the north and south would exchange visiting groups of separated families and relatives and settle the issue of repatriating the unconverted long-term prisoners and other humanitarian issues at the earliest possible date; the north and south would promote the balanced development of the national economy through economic cooperation and build confidence by activating cooperation and exchanges in all fields—social, cultural, sports, public health, environmental and the like; the north and south would hold official dialogue at the earliest possible date to put into speedy operation the agreed proposals.

Embodying the principle of By Our Nation Itself, the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration was a milestone for developing inter-Korean relations and a great programme for the country's reunification.

Subsequent to the historic Pyongyang meeting and summit talks, efforts were made to implement the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration.

Constructive talks in various fields, including the ministerial-level talks, were held contributing to improving the north-south relations and achieving the country's reunification.

Scores of rounds of ministerial-level talks and talks and contacts in various fields were held up to June 2007 since the adoption of the joint declaration.

Cooperation and exchanges between the north and south were invigorated, dramatically putting an end to distrust and confrontation between the north and south and ushering in the era of reconciliation and cooperation.

In the bracing atmosphere of reconciliation and cooperation, a temporary road was opened to traffic between Kaesong and Munsan in February 2003, and ceremony for relinking the railways on the east and west coasts and trial running of a train between the east and west coasts were held in June 2003 and May 2007, respectively. Along with this the Kaesong Industrial Park was created through the joint efforts of the north and south and tourism of Mt. Kumgang made a successful start.

Sports and cultural exchanges also gained momentum.

The north dispatched its athletes and cheerleaders to the 14th Asian Games in Pusan in the autumn of 2002 and the 22nd Universiad in Taegu in south Korea in August 2003. A north-south sports festival for national reunification and peace was successfully held in Jeju Island in October 2003, with the participation of a large delegation including Taekwon-Do practitioners from the north. During the 15th Asian Games held in Doha, Qatar, in December 2006 the athletes from the north and south entered the venue of its opening ceremony under the flag bearing the map of Korea, clearly demonstrating the Korean people's will for national reconciliation and cooperation.

After the performance by the north's National Symphony Orchestra in Seoul in August 2000, the south's KBS Orchestra and MBC art troupe visited Pyongyang in September 2002 and staged performances. There were also joint performances and recitals by north and south Korean artistes. A national costume exhibition was held in Pyongyang in June 2001. Taekwon-Do practitioners gave demonstrations in Pyongyang and Seoul in September and October 2002, respectively. Historians from the north and south held a seminar, a joint exhibition of historical materials and a photograph exhibition in Pyongyang, Seoul and Mt. Kumgang.

Meanwhile, visits and contacts between the north and south were conducted in a brisk way.

In August 2000 a delegation of the south Korean mass media visited Pyongyang.

Kim Jong Il met the delegation on August 12, hosted a luncheon in their honour and had a photograph taken with them.

After the delegation's visit the south Korean pressmen intensified

information work introducing the great personality of Kim Jong Il and advocating alliance with communism and the north.

Representatives of south Korean political parties and public organizations and about 40 prominent figures from all walks of life attended the celebrations of the 55th anniversary of the WPK and in 2005 June 15 and August 15 (the day of Korea's liberation from Japanese military occupation-Tr.) were jointly celebrated by the north, south and abroad with the participation of both governmental and non-governmental persons for the first time since Korea's division. And separated families and their relatives from the north and south met each other on ten occasions in Pyongyang, Seoul and Mt. Kumgang. Following the repatriation of Ri In Mo to the north, 63 other unconverted long-term prisoners who had been subjected to persecution for scores of years in south Korea were brought back to the north, to the embrace of Kim Jong Il, in September 2000.

Kim Jong Il paid close concern to removing confrontation between the north and south and achieving reconciliation and unity of the nation by dint of national independence.

While ensuring that the principled stand of holding fast to and implementing the historic north-south joint declaration was consistently adhered to in any circumstances, he took positive measures to ease the military tension between the north and south and promote multilateral cooperation and exchanges. In January 2002 a joint meeting of the government, political parties and public organizations of the DPRK issued an appeal containing three proposals and three appeals to the entire Korean nation as an epoch-making proposal for Korea's reunification.

The appeal called for thorough implementation of the June 15 North-South Joint Declaration, improving inter-Korean relations and invigorating the movement for the country's reunification, and removing the elements threatening peace in the country and hindering its reunification and proposed designating the year 2002 as a year for promoting unity and reunification on the principle of By Our Nation Itself, June 15 as a day for opening the gates of reunification on the principle of By Our Nation Itself and the period from May to August through July, when the July 4 joint statement was published, as a period of the movement for joining efforts on the principle of By Our Nation Itself. The appeal won wholehearted support and positive response of all the Korean compatriots in the north, south and abroad as well as of many foreign political parties and public organizations.

Thus, the June 15 era of hastening national reunification through concerted

effort of the Korean nation dawned on the inter-Korean relations of confrontation and distrust.

Against this background, another inter-Korean summit meeting was held.

In July 2007 Kim Jong Il accepted the south Korean president's request to visit Pyongyang. On October 2, 2007 he went to the April 25 House of Culture in Pyongyang to receive his guest warmly. On October 4 the leaders of the north and south adopted the Declaration for the Development of North-South Relations, Peace and Prosperity, which embodied the principle of By Our Nation Itself.

The declaration was an action programme which fully demonstrated the Korean people's will for the country's reunification and clarified concrete objectives and tasks for developing the north-south relations onto a new higher level and achieving the peace and prosperity of the nation through concerted effort of the Korean nation.

A historic milestone in developing the inter-Korean relations and achieving national peace and prosperity, the Pyongyang summit meeting and October 4 declaration heightened the atmosphere of reconciliation and cooperation between the north and south and opened up a bright prospect for national reunification.

However, a stumbling block was laid on the road ahead of the north-south relations when Lee Myung Bak ascended to power in February 2008.

From the early days of his presidency he backpedaled on the June 15 joint declaration and October 4 declaration and whipped up confrontation with the north, driving the north-south relations into worst catastrophe.

Kim Jong Il led the country to foil the Lee regime's anti-DPRK and anti-reunification schemes and advance the movement for national reunification, the supreme desire of the Korean nation, by relying on the invincible political and military might of the country.

Harbouring an illusion about the change of the DPRK's system and reunification through absorption, the south Korean puppet cliques widely advertised such absurd plans as "No Nukes, Opening and 3 000 Dollars" and "Contingency Rule Plan-Prosperity" and staged north-targeted Key Resolve and Foal Eagle military exercises with the US imperialists, severely aggravating the situation in the Korean peninsula.

The DPRK countered south Korea's anti-DPRK, anti-reunification moves with hard-line policies.

It exposed and scathingly condemned the south Korean authorities who were obstinately rejecting dialogue and negotiations between the north and south and putting a spoke in the wheel of humanitarian cooperation between the north and south.

Meanwhile, it waged a dynamic struggle to safeguard and implement the

June 15 joint declaration and October 4 declaration under the unfurled banner of By Our Nation Itself.

A joint editorial by the newspapers of the WPK, the KPA and the youth league on January 1, 2008 emphasized implementing the October 4 declaration that is a banner for promoting the independent development and reunification of the nation and an action programme for applying the June 15 joint declaration in an all-round way, so as to remove the remnants of the era of confrontation, turn the north-south relations into those for applying the principle of By Our Nation Itself and thus write a new chapter of peace and prosperity in history.

The joint editorial called upon all the Korean compatriots in the north, south and abroad to launch a more brisk movement for national reunification under the slogan "Let us open up a new era of independent reunification, peace and prosperity through concerted effort of our nation!"

In January 2008 Kim Jong Il instructed that as was pointed out in the joint editorial, a drive should be waged to secure international support for and solidarity with Korea's reunification with the main stress put on creating an external environment favourable for ushering in a new era of independent reunification, peace and prosperity through joint effort of the Korean nation.

In August 2009 he met the president of the Hyundai Business Group of south Korea and complied with her requests. When Kim Dae Jung, former president of south Korea, died, he sent a letter of condolence and dispatched a high-ranking delegation to Seoul.

Under Kim Jong Il's wise guidance, all the Korean compatriots in the north, south and abroad energetically turned out in a nationwide struggle to frustrate vicious schemes of anti-reunification forces and build a reunified and prosperous nation on this land on the principle of By Our Nation Itself.

12. DEVELOPING THE MOVEMENT OF THE OVERSEAS KOREAN COMPATRIOTS

Kim Jong Il paid close concern to bringing about a new turn in the movement of the Koreans in Japan as required by the new century.

Entering the new century, the Japanese reactionaries' moves to disband Chongryon, an organization of overseas Korean citizens of the DPRK, grew

more vicious in terms of their content and method and the first and second generations of the Korean residents in Japan were replaced by the third and fourth ones. Affected by protracted depression of Japan's economy and the change of its structure, the number of Korean businesspeople decreased while that of those living on their salaries increased.

Availing themselves of the change of generations in the society of the Korean residents, the Japanese reactionaries intensified their schemes to naturalize and assimilate Koreans, resulting in a radical change of their aspiration, lifestyle and outlook of value.

Kim Jong Il clarified problems arising in effecting a fresh turn in Chongryon's work method.

He said that Chongryon should maintain the principle of dealing with all affairs in line with its actual conditions. He instructed that Chongryon should reinforce its hard-core ranks, change its method of working with the masses of compatriots, those of new generations in particular, as suited to their characteristics and improve its organizational system and work system in such a way as to rally broad sections of compatriots more firmly around it.

Under Kim Jong Il's guidance Chongryon brought about a new turn in its work.

In order to consolidate its hard-core ranks, it trained its officials into competent leading personnel of the movement of Korean compatriots in Japan and increased the proportion of young people in its ranks of officials, while directing greater efforts to the education of officials.

It also solidified its mass foundation by educating and winning over broad sections of compatriots including those of younger generations.

It rearranged the structural system of its central and local organizations and the guidance system of its central committee in keeping with the changed situation so as to rally broad sections of compatriots including those of third and fourth generations. It also improved its ideological education of its members to be suited to their requirements, levels and its actual conditions and conducted mass-based movements with the main emphasis put on the movement for championing national rights in conformity with its characteristics as an organization for defending the rights of Korean compatriots.

Meanwhile, it paid close attention to promoting the livelihood and rights of Koreans in Japan and rallying them through brisk educational, cultural, art and sports activities.

The Second Session of the 19th Central Committee of Chongryon held in May 2002 defined national educational and cultural activities and welfare

service for the Korean compatriots in Japan as two major thrusts and decided on converting all its patriotic work into a movement involving all the Korean compatriots in Japan.

The celebrations of the 45th anniversary of the founding of Korea University and the 55th anniversary of the enforcement of secondary education of Koreans in Japan in 2001 marked a significant occasion in creating a heated atmosphere of national education and developing Chongryon's national education as required by the new century. In 2002 the DPRK provided Korea University with a million dollars and stuffed animals from the Taedong River and a guidebook illustrated with their pictures and in December 2004, on the occasion of the 50th anniversary of its founding, articles with which to supplement the exhibit of the history museum of the university.

Kim Jong Il ensured that a large sum of educational aid fund and stipends were sent to Chongryon every year for the development of national education under Chongryon and that students from Korea University and higher schools of Koreans visited their motherland so that they could witness its reality vibrating with struggle for building a thriving country.

He led the struggle to safeguard the legitimate position of Chongryon and the national rights of Korean compatriots in Japan.

To defend Chongryon and the democratic national rights of the Koreans in Japan posed as a particularly important matter in this period because the Japanese reactionaries grew extremely vicious in their moves against Chongryon and Koreans.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the legal status of the Korean nationals in Japan was explicitly defined in an article of the DPRK-Japan Pyongyang Declaration. And whenever Japan persecuted Koreans in Japan, the DPRK would take powerful measures to stir up public accusation against it, thus giving courage and strength to Chongryon's officials and members.

Chongryon waged a staunch struggle to thwart the Japanese reactionaries' unjustifiable political intervention, financial persecution and discrimination against and obstruction to Koreans' national education and business activities. In particular, large-scale protest meetings and demonstrations held in various parts of Japan in March and October 2007 fully demonstrated the might of the unity of Chongryon and the justness of its struggle to the Korean compatriots and Japanese people and dealt a heavy blow to the Japanese ultra-rightist reactionaries.

Kim Jong Il held up Chairman Han Tok Su and other Chongryon's officials of the first generation as the veterans of the revolution and true patriots who

had formed Chongryon, rallied Korean compatriots in Japan around it and devoted their all to the reunification and prosperity of their homeland.

When an earthquake hit the Chuetsu region in Niigata Prefecture, Japan, in October 2004 and a great earthquake and tidal wave struck east Japan in March 2011, Kim Jong Il ensured that the DPRK sent to Chongryon and Korean compatriots a message of sympathy and relief money.

Meanwhile, he led broad sections of overseas Korean compatriots along the patriotic road.

In his efforts to reenergize the overseas Korean compatriots' organizations around the world, he attached primary importance to developing the movement of Korean residents in China and building up the General Federation of Korean Residents in China into a mighty patriotic organization that took root deep among the broad masses of compatriots. To encourage the federation, the DPRK government hosted grand banquets in honour of its congratulatory delegations during their visit to the homeland on the occasion of the Day of the Sun (Kim Il Sung's birthday-Tr.) and other major anniversaries and arranged birthday parties for those members greeting their 60th or 70th birth anniversaries.

Kim Jong Il channelled great efforts into promoting Korean compatriots' movement in the countries of the Commonwealth of Independent States.

Branch organizations in the republics of the Commonwealth of Independent States under the International United Confederation of Koreans took root deep among the masses of Korean compatriots from all walks of life in the direction of consolidating their independence and in conformity with the characteristic features of their resident countries and regions. And Korean compatriots in the region of the Commonwealth of Independent States and their organizations united under the banner of patriotism and national reunification, transcending the differences in the interests of class and stratum.

Paying close attention also to the movements of Koreans in America and Europe, Kim Jong Il led them to turn out in the patriotic work for the prosperity of their homeland.

Efforts were made to put across the WPK's Songun politics among overseas Koreans.

As part of an effort to disseminate Songun politics among them and rally them under the banner of patriotism by means of musical art, a collection of famous songs titled *Long Journey of the Songun Revolution* and video film *Military Song for Defending the Nation* were distributed among overseas Koreans in 2006 and Mansudae and other art troupes were dispatched abroad to give performances for them.

13. RAISING THE DPRK'S INTERNATIONAL PROFILE

Kim Jong Il wisely led the struggle to raise the country's international profile.

The international political situation was very complicated during the period from the late 1990s to the early 2000s.

The United States, in an attempt to realize its ambition to build a unipolar world, resorted to reckless moves for aggression, interference, domination and plunder against other countries and nations, mercilessly violating their rights to independence and existence.

The prevailing international political situation demanded that countries and nations foil the US hard-line policy and safeguard their sovereignty and dignity by dint of powerful military deterrent and independent diplomacy relying on it, and strive to make international relations independent and democratic.

Kim Jong Il led the DPRK to frustrate the US and Japanese policy hostile towards it.

After it concluded a framework agreement with the DPRK, the United States kicked up a new fuss over "suspicious nuclear facilities" in the latter. The DPRK scathingly denounced it as a ruthless attempt to isolate and stifle the nation and demanded that the United States make political and economic compensations for its despicable abuses and slanders against it if it sincerely wanted to allay its suspicion.

With a keen insight into the aggressive nature and danger of the US clamour about "missile threat" from the DPRK, Kim Jong Il ensured that the DPRK adopted a hard-line stand in the DPRK-US negotiations.

At the talks held in Berlin in September 1999, the United States had no choice but to give up its demands. After the missile talks, the United States started lifting its economic sanctions against the DPRK in June 2000.

Backpedaling on all agreements its precedent had concluded with the DPRK and branding it as part of the "Axis of Evil" and an "outpost of tyranny," the Bush administration opted for hard-line policy towards the DPRK.

The DPRK countered the US hard-line policy with harder-line policy: On January 10, 2003 its government issued a statement on its withdrawal from the NPT; on February 10, 2005 its Foreign Ministry declared the DPRK's

possession of nuclear weapons in a statement; in July 2006 the KPA test-fired missiles; and in October that year and in May 2009 it carried out two successful underground nuclear tests.

Kim Jong Il wisely led the DPRK's diplomacy towards Japan to crush its machinations to isolate and stifle the DPRK in collusion with the United States.

Historically, Japan had clung to hostile policy towards the DPRK, taking its cue from the United States. However, entering the new century the Japanese authorities advocated changes in their policy towards the DPRK.

The ninth round of DPRK-Japan talks was held in Pyongyang in April 2000, eight years after the recess of the eighth round, followed by 10th and 11th rounds. With this against background, the Japanese prime minister came to Pyongyang in September 2002.

In his answers to the questions raised by the president of Kyodo News Service on September 14, 2002, Kim Jong Il pointed out that it was the DPRK's will and consistent standpoint that as Asian nations, Korea and Japan should live in friendship as near neighbours, not as near and distant neighbours, and promote coexistence and coprosperity and that the basic problem that must be solved to normalize DPRK-Japan relations was to clean up the past unpleasant events that had taken place between the two countries.

On September 17 he met the Japanese prime minister and had talks with him.

The two leaders confirmed the shared recognition that cleaning up the disgraceful past, settling the pending issues and establishing fruitful political, economic and cultural relations between the DPRK and Japan accords with the basic interests of both sides and greatly contributes to regional peace and stability.

The resultant DPRK-Japan Pyongyang declaration said that Japan admitted, in a spirit of humility, the facts of history that it had caused tremendous damage and suffering to the Korean people during its military occupation of Korea in the past, and expressed deep remorse and heartfelt apology, and that both sides would observe international laws, refrain from threatening the other's security and cooperate with each other in the maintenance of peace and security in the northeast Asian region.

In May 2004 the Japanese prime minister visited Pyongyang again and reaffirmed that to implement the DPRK-Japan Pyongyang declaration with good faith was important and the declaration was a basis of the normalization of the relations between the two countries.

Kim Jong Il ensured that the DPRK developed friendly and cooperative

relations with all the countries that respected its sovereignty and were friendly to it.

Thanks to the might of Songun politics, the countries that hoped for good relations with the DPRK increased in number day by day. In line with this trend the DPRK strived to establish and develop diplomatic relations with all the countries that respected its sovereignty.

It developed friendly and cooperative relations with China and Russia on the principle of independence.

Kim Jong Il consolidated friendship between the DPRK and China through his energetic external activities.

He visited Chinese embassy in Pyongyang on March 5, 2000, March 4, 2007 and March 1, 2008, and China in May 2000, January 2001, April 2004, January 2006, May and August 2010 and May and August 2011. During these visits he met leading officials of Chinese party and state and had talks with them. At the talks both sides informed the other side of the successes and experiences achieved by their parties and states in their socialist construction, exchanged opinions on the issues of common interest including those of further developing the traditional friendly relations between the two countries and securing stability and peace in the Korean peninsula and reached a consensus over all the discussed issues. And they reaffirmed support for and solidarity with the struggle of the two parties and peoples for socialist construction and national reunification.

In October 2000 he met a high-ranking military delegation from China which visited the DPRK on the occasion of the 50th anniversary of the participation of the Chinese People's Volunteers in the Korean war. The official visits to the DPRK of President Jiang Zemin in September 2001, of President Hu Jintao in October 2005 and of Premier Wen Jiabao in October 2009 marked occasions in raising the friendly and cooperative relations between the two countries onto a higher level.

The two countries consolidated mutual understanding and friendship through exchange visits of party, state, military and other delegations and the celebrations of the 60th anniversary of the establishment of the DPRK-China diplomatic relations in October 2009 and the 60th anniversary of the participation of the Chinese People's Volunteers in the Korean war in October 2010.

An epoch-making turn was witnessed also in the DPRK-Russia relations.

A noteworthy event in this regard was the visit of President V. V. Putin of the Russian Federation to the DPRK from July 19 to 20, 2000, which was the first visit of the head of state of Russia.

Kim Jong Il and Putin met each other and had sincere talks, at which they exchanged opinions on the bilateral relations and international issues of common concern and signed the DPRK-Russia joint declaration.

After the visit of the Russian leader, Kim Jong Il paid close attention to consolidating friendship between the DPRK and Russia.

When the *Kursk*, a latest-type submarine belonging to the Russian North Fleet, sank, the West and the anti-Putin forces made a fuss about it, even making personal attacks on him. Kim Jong Il sent a message of condolence to Putin on August 22, 2000.

And authoritative art troupes of Russia were invited to give performance in Pyongyang contributing to solidifying the ties of friendship between the peoples and artistes of the two countries.

In order to raise the DPRK-Russia friendly relations onto a new high, Kim Jong Il visited Russia several times.

On July 24, 2001 he described the relations of the two countries and the prospect of its development in his answers to the questions raised by ITAR-Tass of Russia. Then he paid an official visit to the Russian Federation from July 26 to August 18, 2001. During his stay in Russia he had talks with Putin several times and signed the DPRK-Russia Moscow Declaration which would serve as a milestone in promoting friendship between the two countries and the cause of independence in the 21st century. And he visited the Lenin Mausoleum and the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier, making a great impact on Russia and the rest of the world. Many people around the world including personages from social and media circles praised Kim Jong Il as a world's veteran statesman and great leader in the era of independence and his visit to Russia as an event of international significance in 2001.

Kim Jong Il visited the Far East region of the Russian Federation in August 2002, and Siberia and Far East region again in August 2011.

Meanwhile, he ensured that the DPRK launched brisk diplomatic activities to expand and develop its relations with the countries in the Asia-Pacific region and European and other Western countries.

The country revived diplomatic relations with Australia in May 2000, 25 years after they had been severed. It established diplomatic relations with the Philippines and Kuwait in July 2000 and April 2001, respectively, and entered in the ASEAN Regional Forum in July 2000. It restored its relations with Myanmar in April 2007 and developed its friendship with Viet Nam, Indonesia, Laos and Cambodia. In January 2000 Italy established diplomatic relations with the DPRK for the first time among the Western European countries. It was

followed by Great Britain, the Netherlands, Turkey, Belgium, Spain, Germany, Luxemburg and Greece.

In May 2001 Kim Jong Il had talks with the highest-level delegation from the European Union in Pyongyang at which he explained the DPRK's principled stand towards the development of the relations between it and the EU and towards various international affairs. The DPRK established diplomatic relations with the EU on May 14.

The DPRK also set up diplomatic relations with the countries of other regions like Canada and Brazil.

It directed efforts to consolidating the long-standing cooperative and friendly relations between African countries and building up its prestige among them. It established diplomatic relations with all the African countries and many of them supported the DPRK in the international arena.

THE GREAT LEADER COMRADE KIM JONG IL WILL ALWAYS BE WITH US

Kim Jong Il, who had devoted his all to the accomplishment of the revolutionary cause of Juche, prosperity of socialist Korea, happiness of its people, Korea's reunification and independent world, passed away from a sudden illness at 08:30 on December 17, 2011 during a trip for on-site guidance.

His sudden death was the greatest loss and the bitterest grief ever experienced by the WPK, the Korean revolution and the Korean nation that had entered a turning point in their struggle for the cause of building a thriving socialist country.

At noon on December 19, the sad news of his passing was reported in a special radio and TV broadcast. It came like a bolt from the blue to the whole of Korea and the rest of the world, casting a universal pall of sadness.

All the Korean people revered the memory of the late Kim Jong Il with the bitterest grief and wailed over his death, beating the ground and their chests, for they could not suppress their bitterest sorrow.

During the 10-day mourning period, all the Korean people from various walks of life, including the KPA service personnel, totalling 260 million expressed their deep condolences. On December 28 a funeral ceremony was solemnly held in Pyongyang. Several million Pyongyang citizens and KPA service personnel lined up along the 40-km-long snowy route and burst into wailing, bidding their last farewell to Kim Jong Il. On the 29th national memorial ceremony took place in Pyongyang, followed by memorial ceremonies in all provinces, cities and counties.

Korean compatriots in the south and abroad, too, were overwhelmed by grief at the loss of the father of the nation.

The whole world expressed deepest condolences at the death of Kim Jong Il, a peerless veteran statesman and banner of the cause of independence of mankind.

Over 190 countries, including even those hostile towards the DPRK, and international organizations including the UN expressed condolences and hoisted flags half-mast. Heads of state and government and political parties visited DPRK missions in their countries to offer their condolences. More than 3 000 messages of condolence were sent to the DPRK from heads of party, state and government, and prominent personages from political, social, military and economic circles in 120 countries, Juche idea study organizations and organizations

for friendship and solidarity with the Korean people. Many heads of state, government and ruling parties as well as political parties, public organizations and prominent figures presented over 4 100 wreaths and floral baskets before the bier of Kim Jong Il and the portrait of Kim Jong Il in Kim Il Sung Square and DPRK missions in their countries. The UN hoisted flag half-mast in front of its headquarters, Geneva-based secretariat and other office buildings and the World Food Program in the garden and over the roof of its headquarters, for the first time in its history. Former US President Jimmy Carter sent a letter of condolence and former Japanese Prime Minister Koizumi visited Chongryon's central hall and presented a flower before expressing sincere condolence and recollecting him. A country which had not established diplomatic relations with the DPRK took a measure of canceling scheduled firing of guns and missiles as an expression of its condolence.

During the mourning period, 10 000-odd mass media organs in over 150 countries broadcast the events related with Kim Jong Il's death as a flash new, against all precedents for dealing with the news on the heads of foreign countries.

This period was one during which the Korean people keenly realized what a great leader they had had, and how much they had been blessed by having him as their leader.

Though Kim Jong Il passed away, he still lives in the hearts of all the people of Korea and the rest of the world as the sun of Songun.

Throughout the long course of leading the revolution, he loved his people most, shared weal and woe with them and was always on his intense on-site guidance tour for building a thriving country and improving the people's livelihood. He visited 14 290 units across the country, travelling more than 669 844 km, about 17 times as long as the circumference of the earth, of which he visited 12 790 units, covering 629 992 km during the period of his Songun-based revolutionary leadership.

Upholding the banner of anti-imperialist independence he conducted energetic external activities for the victory of socialist cause, global peace and stability, and friendship and unity of peoples, thereby raising the country's international profile and prestige onto an unprecedented high and rendering undying services to the cause of independence of mankind.

He had visited foreign countries on 18 occasions till August 2011 since his visit to the Soviet Union in January 1959, travelling a total of more than 98 000 km—64 000 km by train and 34 000 km by air.

Kim Jong Il is immortal thanks to the ennobling revolutionary moral obligation of Kim Jong Un, the great successor to the revolutionary cause of Juche.

Kim Jong Un said:

“The General lives forever in my heart and in the hearts of our service personnel and people.”

Reflecting the faith and will of all the Korean service personnel and people to uphold Kim Jong Il in high esteem for all eternity and put his plan for building a thriving country into reality without fail, Kim Jong Un advanced the slogans **“The great Comrades Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il will always be with us,”** and **“Let us arm ourselves firmly with the revolutionary ideas of the great Comrades Kim Il Sung and Kim Jong Il!”**

Under his guidance the Kumsusan Memorial Palace, supreme sanctuary of Juche, was renamed the Kumsusan Palace of the Sun and refurbished into the eternal sanctuary of the sun, where Kim Jong Il is preserved in his lifetime appearance.

Kim Jong Il was awarded the title of Generalissimo of the DPRK on February 14, 2012 in accordance with a joint resolution of the WPK Central Committee, the WPK Central Military Commission, the DPRK National Defence Commission and the Presidium of the DPRK Supreme People’s Assembly. And he was held up as an eternal leader of the Korean revolution, eternal General Secretary of the WPK and eternal Chairman of the DPRK National Defence Commission at the Fourth Conference of the WPK and the Fifth Session of the 12th Supreme People’s Assembly of the DPRK held in April 2012.

At the instance of Kim Jong Un, the WPK defined Kimilsungism-Kimjongilism as its guiding ideology and proclaimed modelling the whole society on Kimilsungism-Kimjongilism as its ultimate programme.

Kim Jong Un led the Korean people to staunchly safeguard Kim Jong Il’s ideas and exploits and solve all the problems arising in the revolution and construction in line with his ideas and intentions and in his way. He ensured that they, holding fast to his instructions as guiding principles, carried them out to the letter and with no compromise, so as to splendidly realize his plans and wishes.

Reflecting the unanimous wish of all the Korean people, statues of Kim Jong Il and murals portraying his beaming image were set up in various parts of the country including Mansu Hill and Mansudae Art Studio. February 16, Kim Jong Il’s birthday, was designated as the Day of the Shining Star and Order of Kim Jong Il, Kim Jong Il Prize, Kim Jong Il Youth Honour Prize and Kim Jong Il Children Honour Prize were instituted.

Thanks to Kim Jong Un’s seasoned leadership Kim Jong Il is always with the Korean service personnel and people, encouraging them to new victory, and the history of his revolutionary activities will continue forever along with the prosperity of Kim Il Sung’s nation and Kim Jong Il’s Korea.

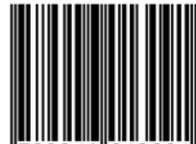
Printed in the Democratic People's Republic of Korea

No. 5835064

E-mail: flph@star-co.net.kp

<http://www.naenara.com.kp>

ISBN 978-9946-0-1309-1



9 789946 013091 >